

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	Before driving	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.
2	When driving	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.
3	Interior features	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.
4	Maintenance and care	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.
5	When trouble arises	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.
6	Vehicle specifications	Detailed vehicle information.
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.

TABLE OF CONTENTS | Index

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual” for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system

- Audio/video system

<p>1 Before driving</p> <hr/> <p>1-1. Key information</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Keys 34</p> <p>1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Smart entry & start system... 41</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Wireless remote control 60</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Doors 66</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Trunk 72</p> <p>1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Front seats 79</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Power rear seat 83</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Driving position memory 87</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Rear seat position memory... 93</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Head restraints..... 95</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Seat belts 98</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Steering wheel..... 104</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 105</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Outside rear view mirrors .. 107</p>	<p>1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Power windows 109</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Moon roof 112</p> <p>1-5. Refueling</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Opening the fuel tank cap .. 116</p> <p>1-6. Theft deterrent system</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Engine immobilizer system 119</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Double locking system..... 123</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Alarm 124</p> <p>1-7. Safety information</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Correct driving posture 135</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">SRS airbags 137</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Child restraint systems 147</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Installing child restraints.... 156</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Airbag manual on/off system 164</p>
---	--

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle.....	168
Engine (ignition) switch.....	177
Automatic Transmission (without paddle shift switches)	181
Automatic Transmission (with paddle shift switches)	187
Turn signal lever	195
Parking brake	196
Brake Hold	199
Horn	202

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters	203
Indicators and warning lights.....	206
Multi-information display..	210

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch	215
Automatic High Beam	218
Fog light switch.....	223
Windshield wipers and washer	224
Headlight cleaner switch....	227

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control	228
Dynamic radar cruise control	232
Adaptive cruise control with full-speed range.....	246
Lexus parking assist-sensor	263
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)	272
Electronically modulated air suspension.....	279
Lexus parking assist monitor/ Intelligent parking assist ..	281
Driving assist systems.....	340
Pre-Crash Safety system	346
Rear Pre-Crash Safety system	359

2-5. Driving information

Cargo and luggage	364
Winter driving tips	366
Trailer towing.....	370

1

2

3

4

5

6

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the touch screen

- Touch screen 374
- Set up screen 381
- Information screen 385

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

- Front air conditioning system 387
- Rear air conditioning system 402
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers 408
- Windshield wiper de-icer ... 409

3-3. Using the audio system

- Audio system types 411
- Using the radio 415
- Using the CD/DVD player. 420
- Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs 424
- Playing DVD video/audio.. 429
- Playing a video CD 442
- CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information 445
- Listening to Bluetooth® audio..... 454

- Listening to a USB memory/iPod 467
- Optimal use of the audio/video system..... 478
- Using the AUX port 480
- Using the rear seat audio controls..... 481
- Using the steering wheel audio switches 485

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

- Rear seat entertainment system features..... 489
- Using the radio 496
- Using the DVD player..... 497
- Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs 498
- Playing a DVD video/audio 499
- Playing a video CD 509
- DVD player and DVD video disc information 513
- Using the video mode 515
- Changing other setting 517

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)		
Hands-free system (for cellular phone)	519	
Using the Bluetooth® phone.....	526	
Setting the hands-free system	540	
3-6. Using the interior lights		
Interior lights list.....	569	
• Interior lights.....	570	
• Personal lights.....	571	
3-7. Using the storage features		
List of storage features	573	
• Glove box.....	574	
• Coin holder.....	575	
• Door pockets	575	
• Cup holders	576	
• Console box	577	
• Non smokers boxes	578	
• Cool box/auxiliary box	579	
• Auxiliary boxes.....	581	
3-8. Other interior features		
Sun visors	583	
Vanity mirrors	584	
Clock	585	
Outside temperature display	587	1
Ashtrays	588	
Cigarette lighters	589	
Power outlets.....	591	2
Heated steering wheel	593	
Climate control seats/seat heaters	595	3
Armrest.....	598	
Rear sunshade	599	
Rear door sunshades.....	601	
Trunk storage extension	604	4
Coat hooks.....	606	
Floor mat	607	
Trunk features	608	5
4 Maintenance and care		
4-1. Maintenance and care		6
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior.....	612	
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior	616	

TABLE OF CONTENTS | Index

<p>4-2. Maintenance Maintenance requirements . 619</p> <p>4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance Do-it-yourself service precautions 622 Hood..... 625 Positioning a floor jack 626 Engine compartment 628 Tires 643 Tire inflation pressure 652 Wheels..... 654 Air conditioning filter 656 Electronic key battery 659 Checking and replacing fuses 662 Light bulbs 667</p>	<p>5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 687 If a warning message is displayed 696 If you have a flat tire (with a spare tire) 699 If you have a flat tire (with an emergency tire puncture repair kit)..... 709 If the engine will not start .. 723 If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P” 725 If the parking brake cannot be released..... 726 If the electronic key does not operate properly 731 If the battery is discharged. 735 If your vehicle overheats.... 739 If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 742 If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency.. 743</p>
<p>5 When trouble arises</p>	
<p>5-1. Essential information Emergency flashers 678 If your vehicle needs to be towed 679 If you think something is wrong 685 Fuel pump shut off system. 686</p>	

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications

- Maintenance data
(fuel, oil level, etc.)..... 746
- Fuel information..... 760

6-2. Customization

- Customizable features..... 762

Index

Abbreviation list 770

Alphabetical index.....772

What to do if... 785

FarmaSOS.com

1

2

3

4

5

6



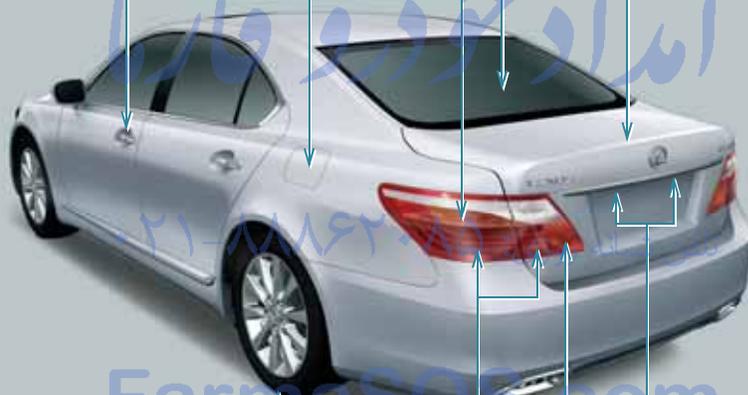
Fuel filler door P. 116

Doors P. 66

Turn signal lights P. 195

Rear window defogger P. 408

Trunk P. 72



Tires

- Rotation P. 643
- Replacement P. 699
- Inflation pressure P. 757

License plate lights P. 215

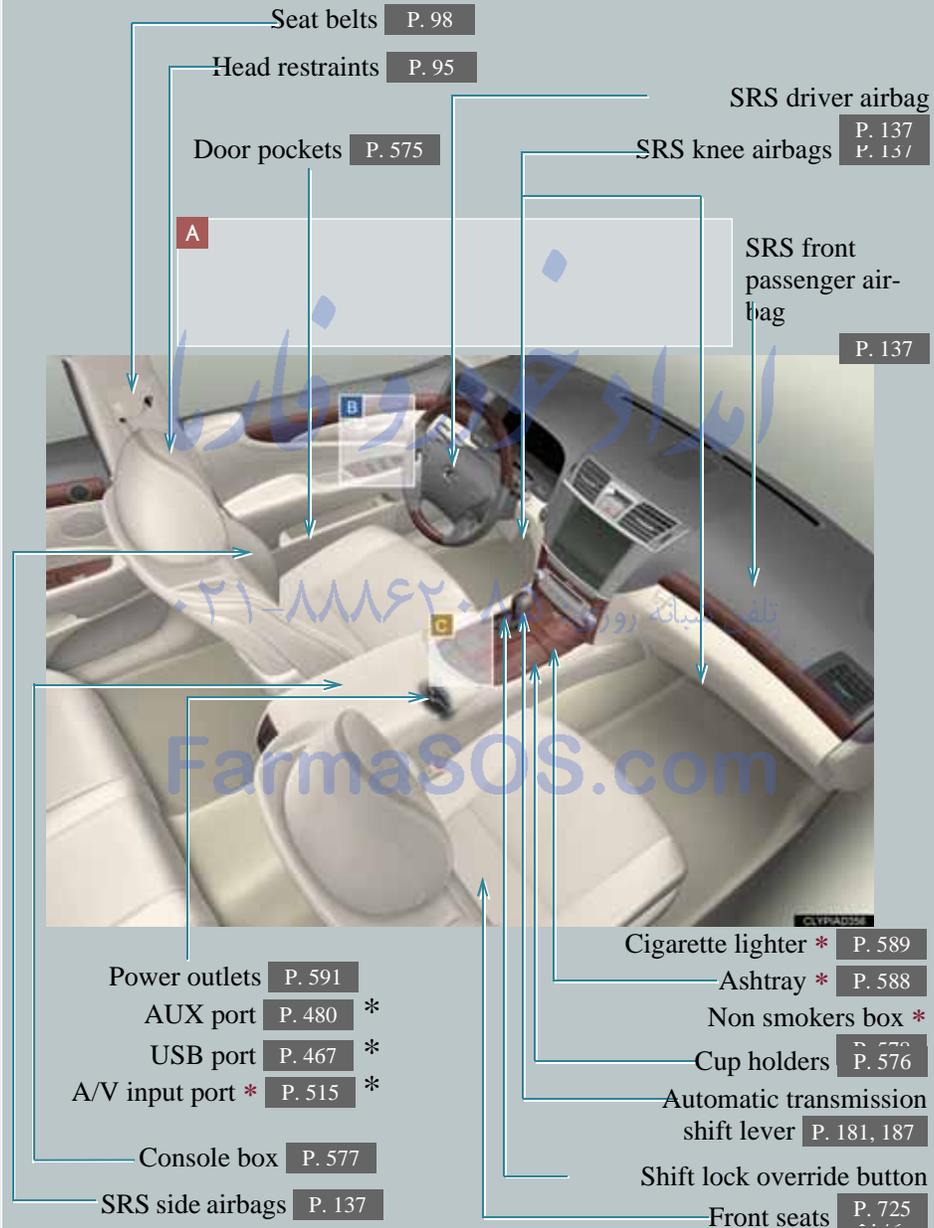
Fog lights P. 223

Tail lights P. 215

*: If

Pictorial index

Front interior
(Left-hand drive vehicles)





*: If equipped

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "Navigation System Owner's

B



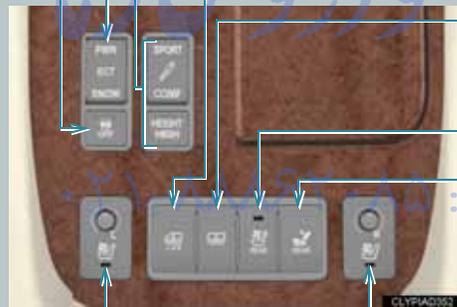
C

VSC off switch P. 342

Driving pattern selector switch P. 183, 189

Electronically modulated air suspension switches P. 279

Rear door sunshade switch * P. 601



Rear sunshade switch P. 599

Rear seat heater switch *

Rear climate control P. 595

P. 595

Rear seat return switch * P. 83

Front climate control seat switches P. 595

*: If

Pictorial index

Instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)

Headlight switch

P. 215

Turn signal lever

P. 195

P. 223

Paddle shift switches * P. 190, 192

Gauges and meters P. 203

Multi-information display

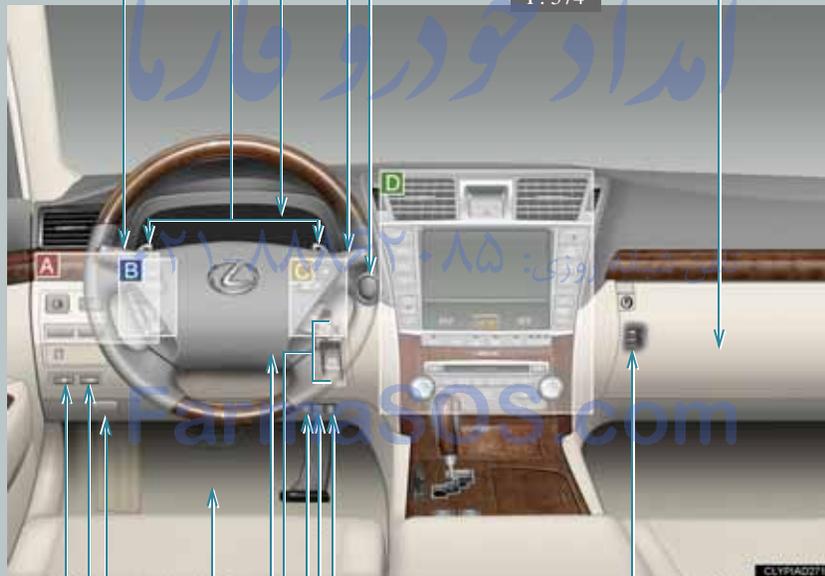
P. 210

Windshield wiper and washer switch

Engine (ignition) switch P. 177

Glove box

P. 574



Trunk opener
main switch

V P. 72 Adjust knob P. 45

Tire pressure warning reset switch * P. 645

Pre-crash braking off switch * P. 346

Parking brake switches P. 196

Horn P. 202

Trunk opener P. 72

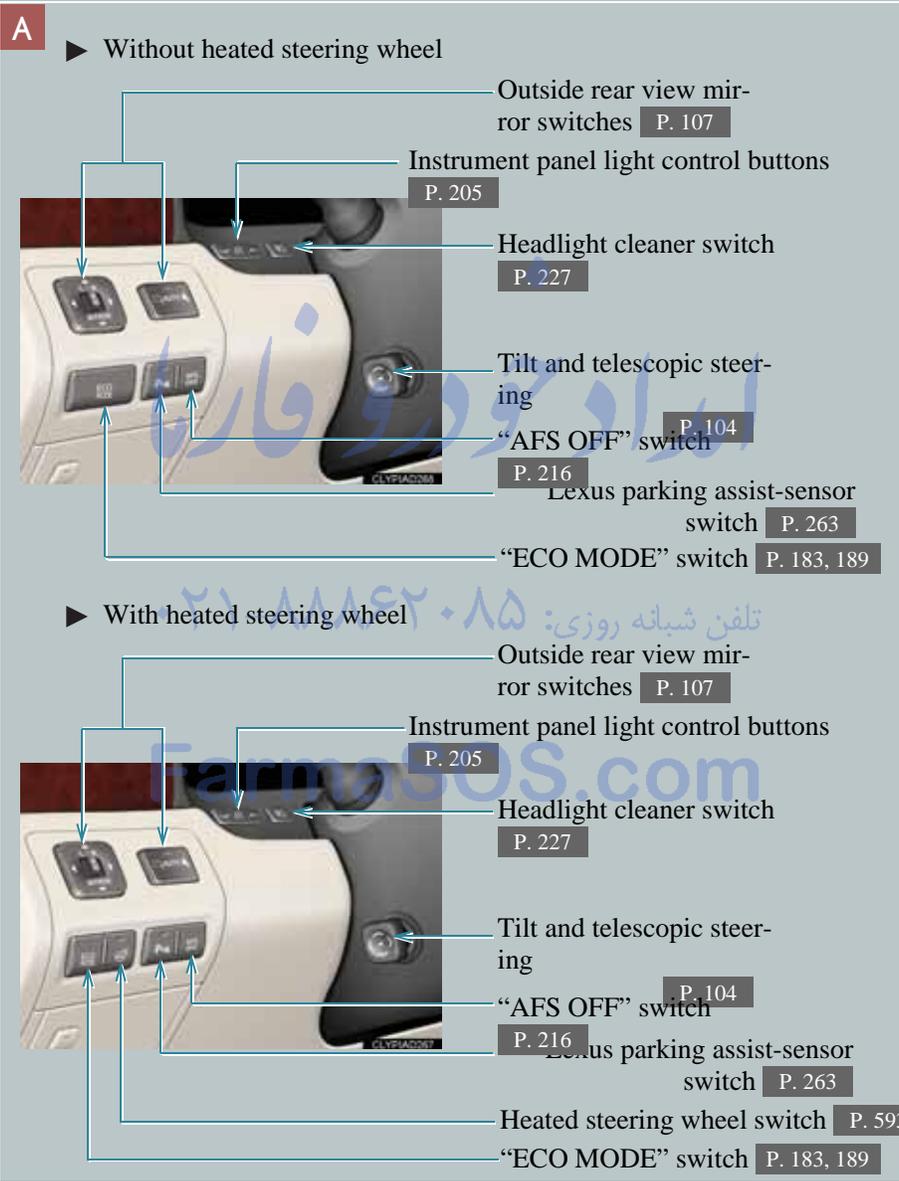
Fuel filler door opener P. 116

Floor
mat

P. 607

Hood release

lever P. 625



*: If

Pictorial index

Instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)

B ▶ Without intelligent parking assist ▶ With intelligent parking assist

Audio remote control
Type B P. 485

Audio remote control
Type B P. 485

Talk switch P. 389, 534 *

Talk switch P. 389, 534 *

Brake hold switch P. 199

Brake hold switch IPA pre-support switch P. 286

C ▶ Without LKA ▶ With LKA

Telephone switch P. 519 *

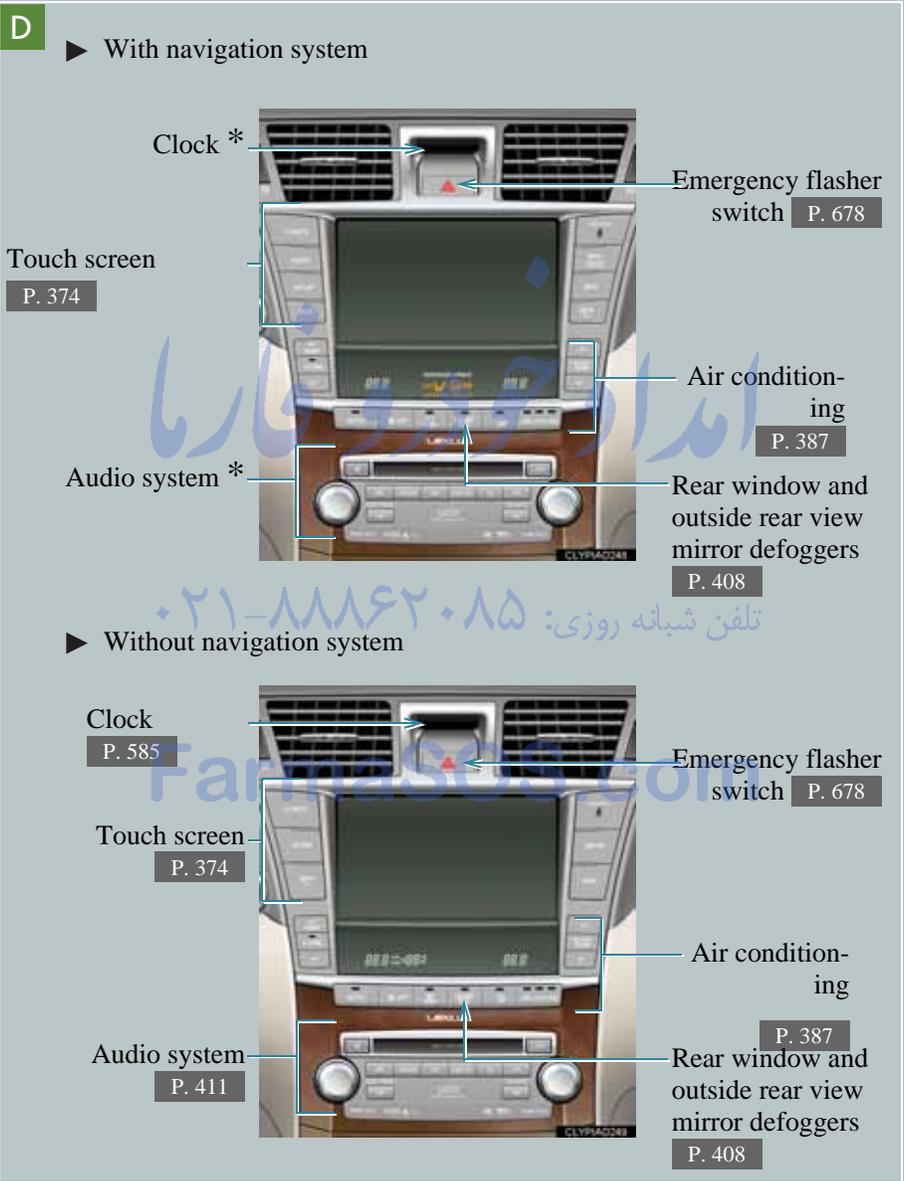
"DISP" switch P. 211

"RESET" switch P. 211

Distance switch * P. 232, 246

"LKA" switch P. 372

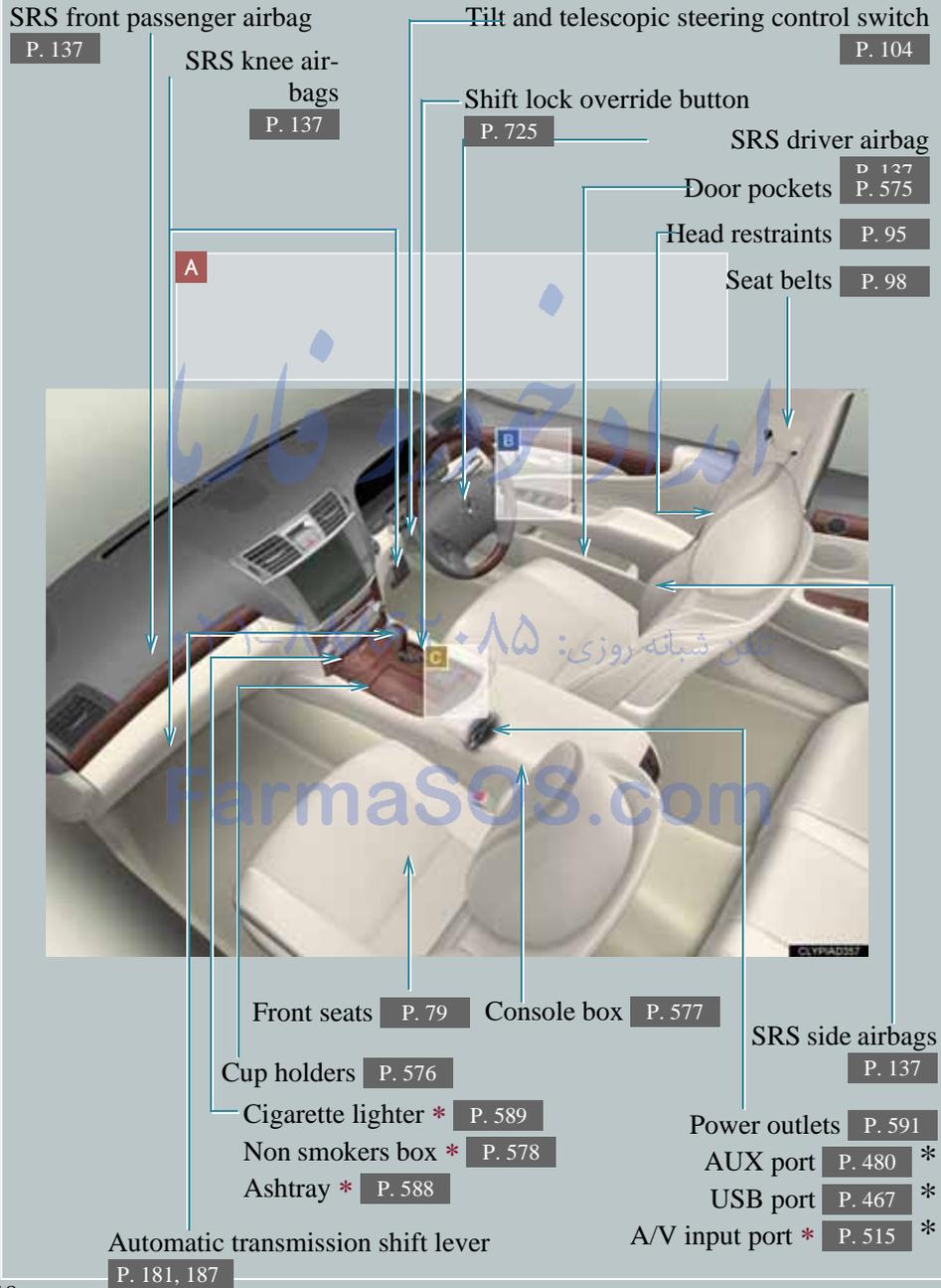
Cruise control switch P. 228, 232, 246



*: If equipped
 *: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to “Navigation System Owner’s

Pictorial index

Front interior (Right-hand drive vehicles)

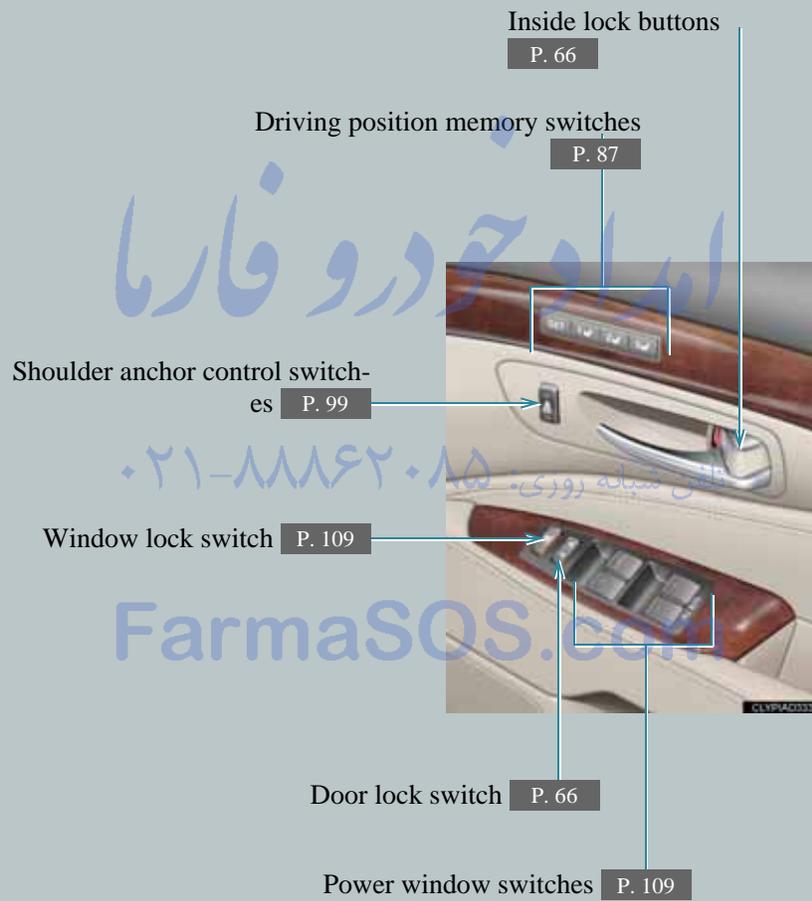




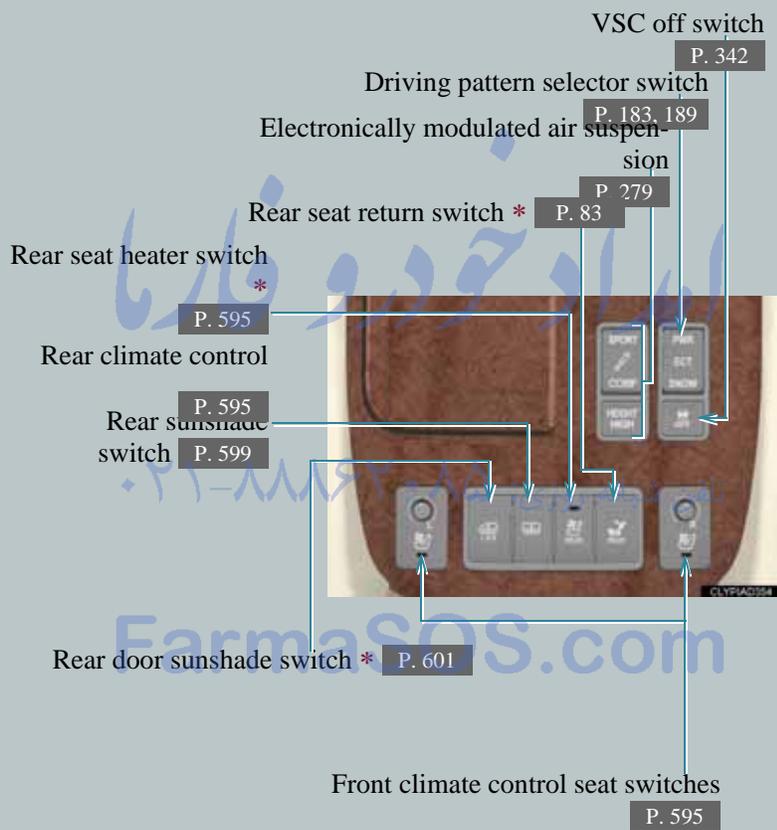
*: If equipped

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "Navigation System Owner's

B



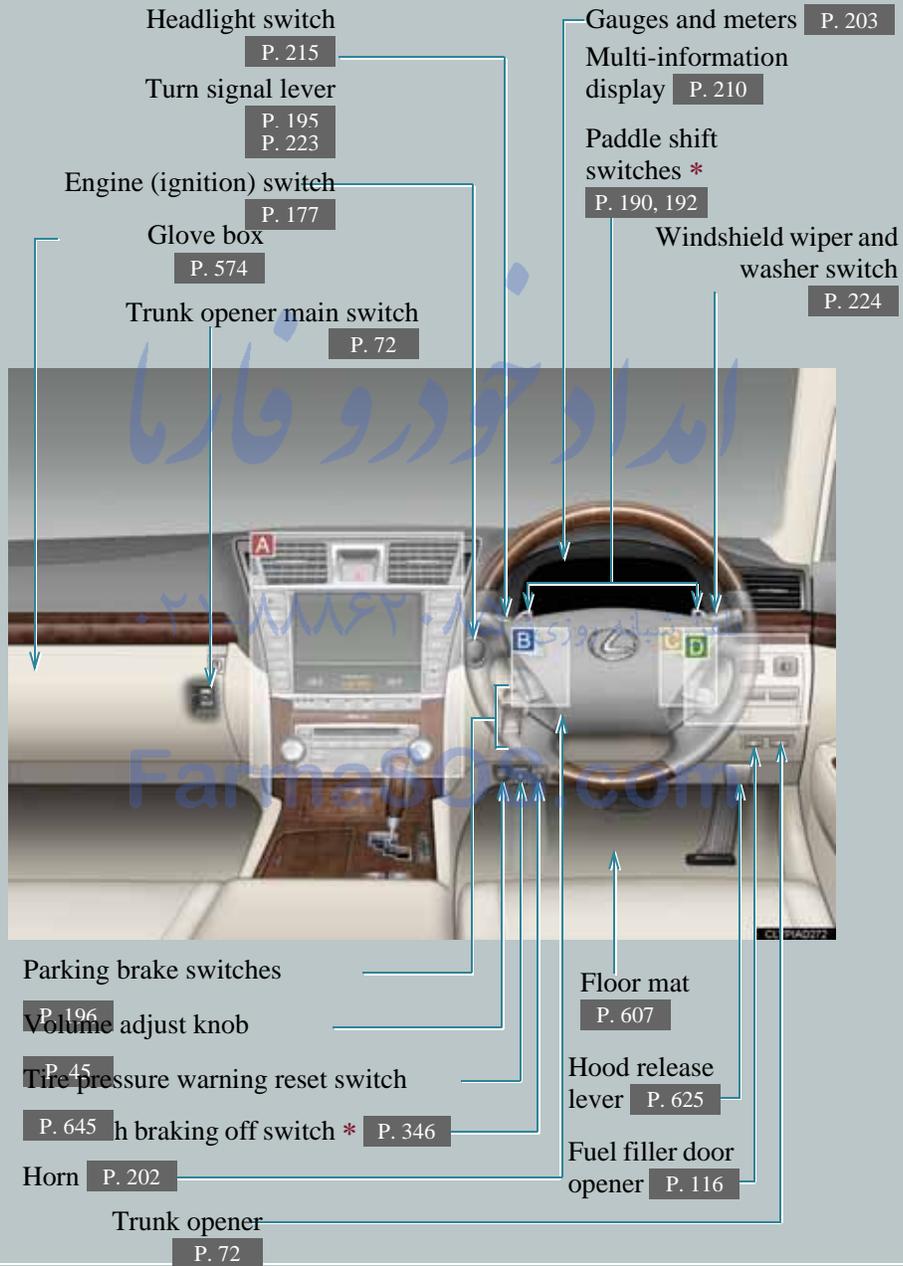
C

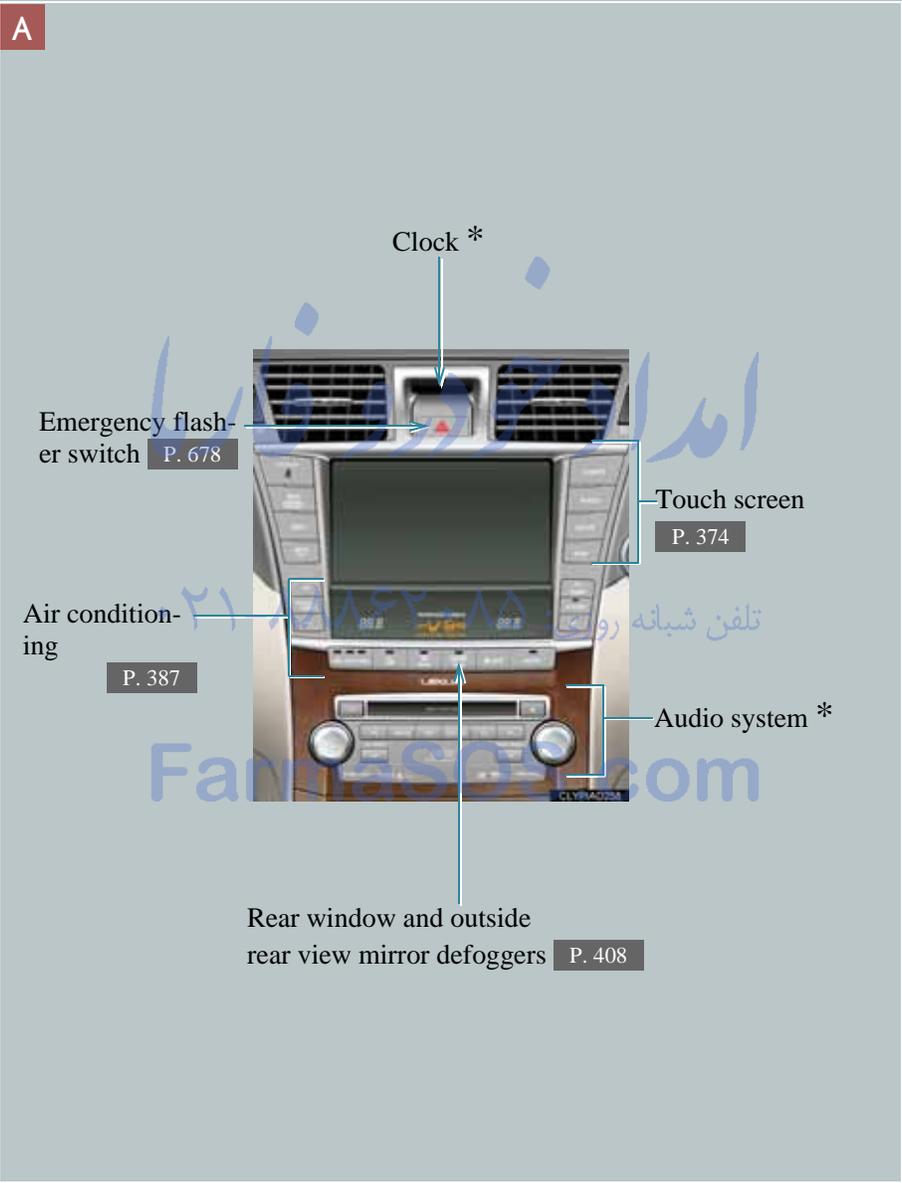


*: If

Pictorial index

Instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)





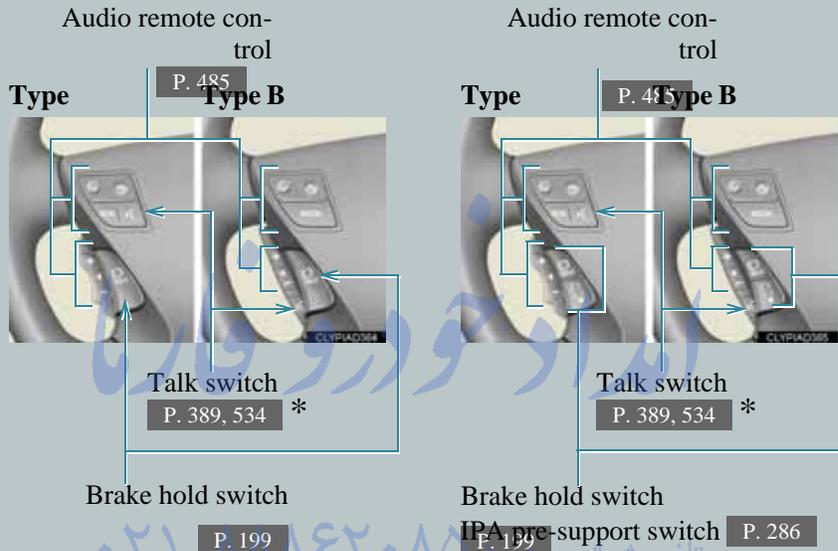
*: If equipped

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "Navigation System Owner's

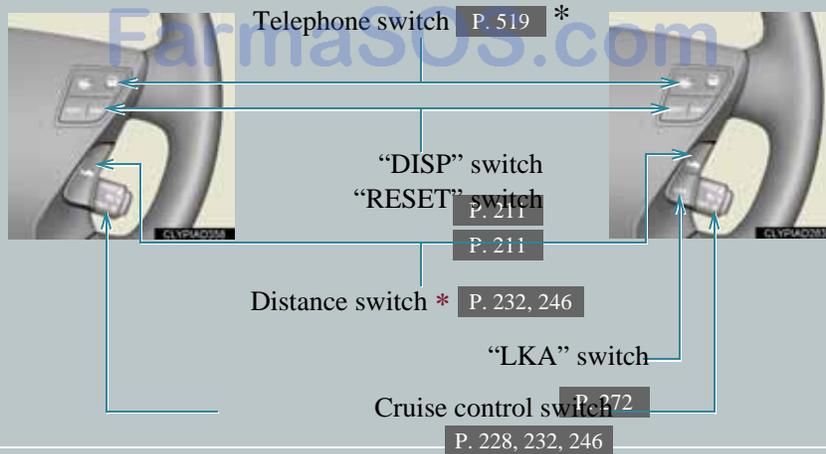
Pictorial index

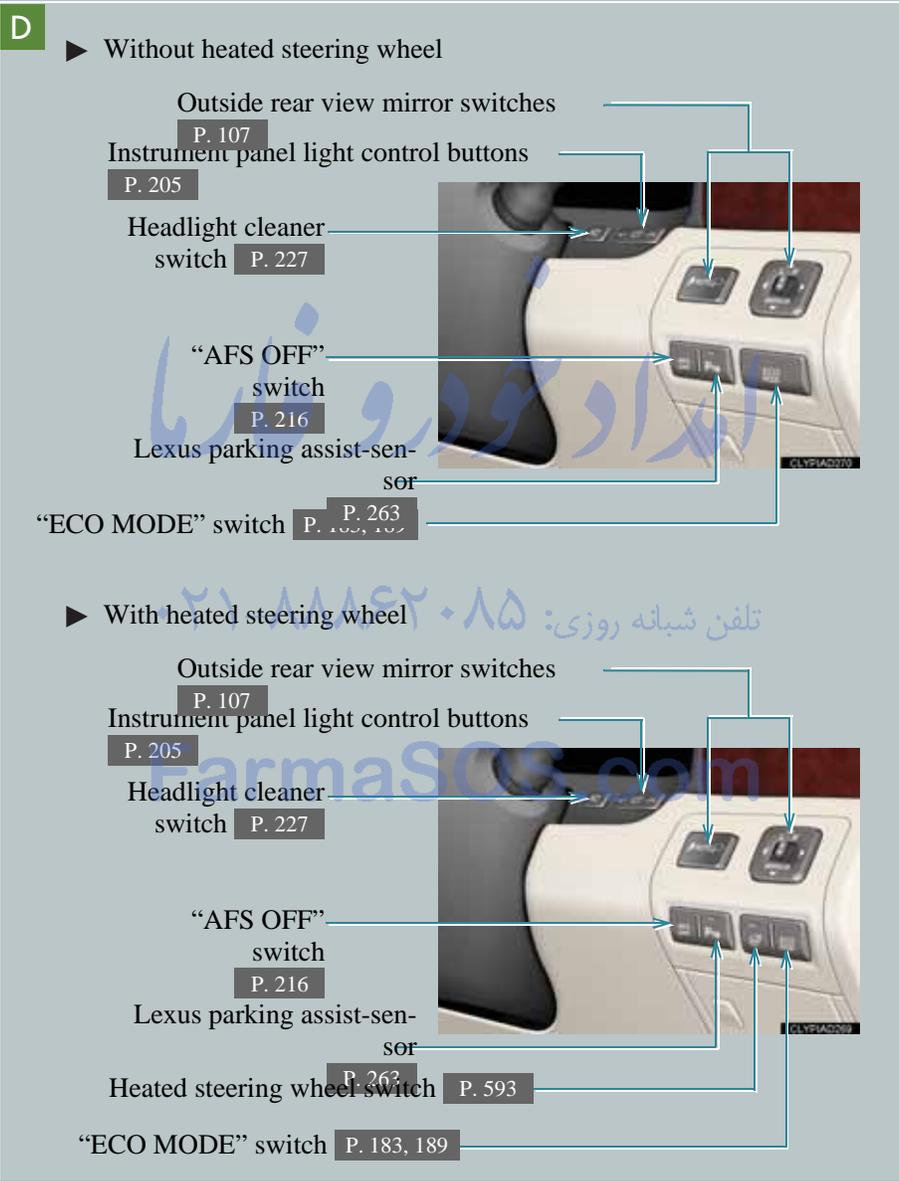
Instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)

B ▶ Without intelligent parking assist ▶ With intelligent parking assist



C ▶ Without LKA ▶ With LKA





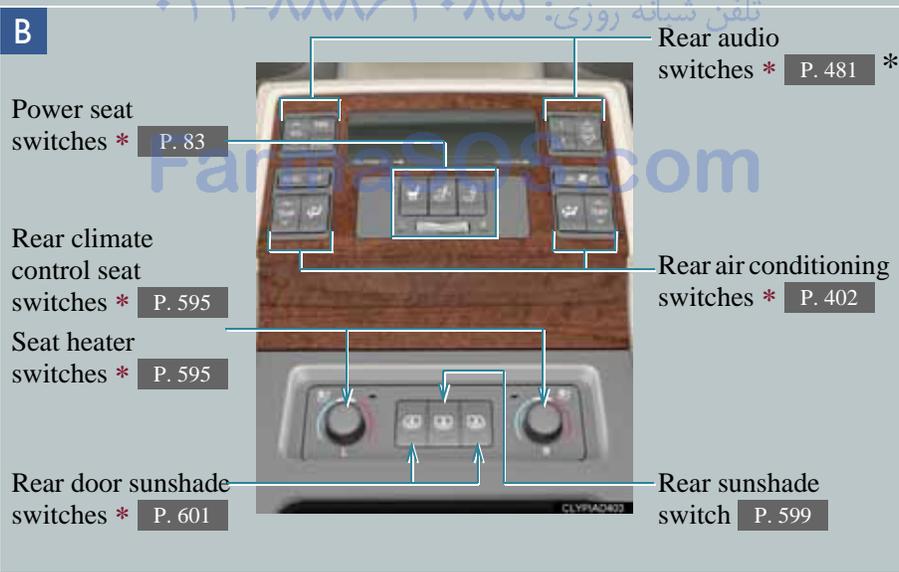
*: If equipped

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Man-

Pictorial index

Rear interior





*: If equipped
 *: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to "Navigation System Owner's

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual covers all models and all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

Both genuine Lexus and a wide variety of other spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available on the market. Should it be determined that any of the genuine Lexus parts or accessories supplied with the vehicle need to be replaced, Toyota Motor Corporation recommends that genuine Lexus parts or accessories, be used to replace them. Other parts or accessories of matching quality can also be used. Lexus cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine Lexus spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system (except Morocco)

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Dynamic radar cruise control
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system (Morocco)

The installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of a mobile two-way radio system.

Scrapping your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, before you scrap your vehicle.

CAUTION

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.



Your vehicle contains batteries and/or accumulators. Do not discard them into the environment but cooperate with separate collection (Directive 2006/66/EC).

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

CAUTION

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause injury to people. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

NOTICE

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Symbols used in illustrations



Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen.”



Arrows indicating operations

 Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

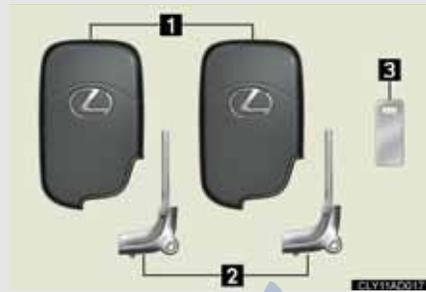
 Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

1-1. Key information	1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof
Keys 34	Power windows..... 109
1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk	Moon roof 112
Smart entry & start system. 41	1-5. Refueling
Wireless remote control 60	Opening the fuel tank cap . 116
Doors..... 66	1-6. Theft deterrent system
Trunk..... 72	Engine immobilizer system 119
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)	Double locking system 123
Front seats 79	Alarm 124
Power rear seat 83	1-7. Safety information
Driving position memory... 87	Correct driving posture 135
Rear seat position memory 93	SRS airbags..... 137
Head restraints 95	Child restraint systems..... 147
Seat belts 98	Installing child restraints . 156
Steering wheel..... 104	Airbag manual on/off system 164
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 105	
Outside rear view mirrors 107	

1-1. Key information

Keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



1 Electronic keys

- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 41)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 60)

2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

■ Card key (if equipped)



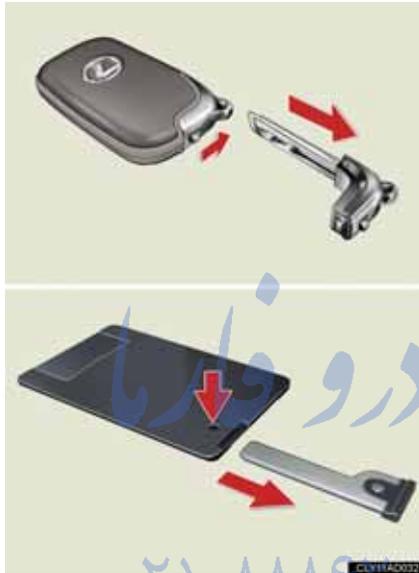
1 Electronic key

Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 41)

2 Mechanical key

FarmaSOS.com

Using the mechanical key



Take out the mechanical key.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key.
(→P. 731)

1
Before driving

■ Card key

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.



- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it inside while pressing the lock release button.

1-1. Key information



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.

- The card key is not waterproof.
- When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant
Turn the trunk opener main switch off and lock the glove box and the trunk storage extension as circumstances demand. (→P. 73, 574, 604)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.
- Key number plate
Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. To have a new key made, the key number is required.
- To have a new key made
New genuine Lexus keys can be made by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional using the keys provided with your vehicle; the electronic keys, card key and key number plate.
- When riding in an aircraft
When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc, ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Certification for the card key

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 14AEC is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 14AEC tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 14AEC in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 14AEC est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 14AEC står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 14AEC overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION dass sich das Gerät 14AEC in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 14ΑΕC ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ. تلفن شیشه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۶۲-۲۱
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 14AEC è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 14AEC cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 14AEC está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION jiddikjara li dan 14AEC jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 14AEC vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

1

Before driving

1-1. Key information

Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 14AEC megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto vyhlasuje, že 14AEC splňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 14AEC je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 14AEC v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 14AEC atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklārē, ka 14AEC atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 14AEC jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 14AEC er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 14AEC er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
İşbu belge ile DENSO CORPORATION bu 14AEC in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
С настоящия документ DENSO CORPORATION декларира, че 14AEC е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION declară că acest 14AEC este conform cu cerințele principale și cu celelalte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 14AEC je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ To prevent key damage

Observe the following.

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the electronic keys.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, glass top ranges, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

■ When a vehicle key is lost

If the key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that was provided with your vehicle.

■ Precautions for handling the card keys

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key to the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may rust and the smart entry & start system become inoperable.
If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp it and pull.) If the battery is rusted, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery.
Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.

1-1. Key information

NOTICE

- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations.
 - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins or keys.
 - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as a tip of mechanical pencil.
 - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinners or benzene.

امداد خودرو فارما

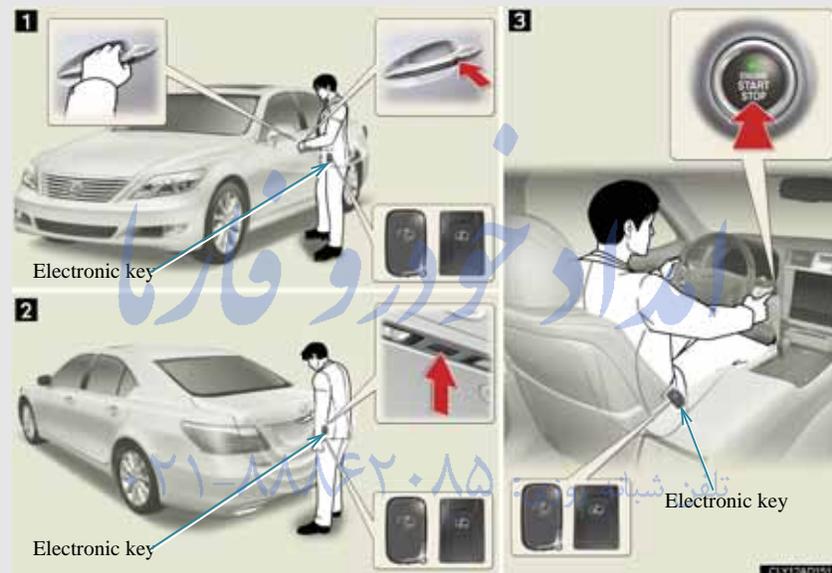
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket.

(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



1 Unlocks and locks the doors (→P. 42)

2 Opens the trunk (→P. 42)

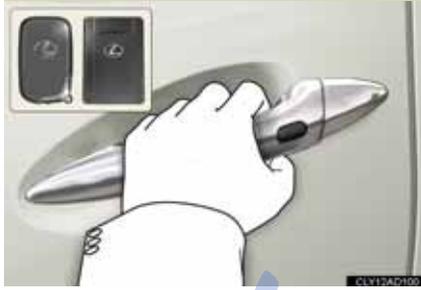
3 Starts and stops the engine (→P. 177)

1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Unlocking and locking the doors



Grip the handle to unlock the door.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.



Press the lock button to lock the door.

Pressing and holding the button closes the windows.

The moon roof will also close. (if equipped)

Opening the trunk

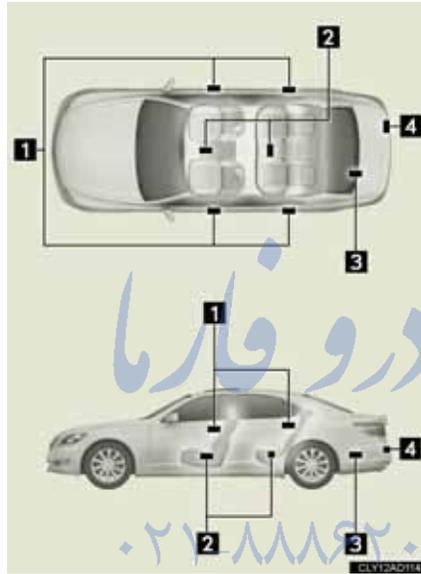


Press the button.

If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk lid, the trunk lid automatically opens fully.

Antenna location and effective range

■ Antenna location



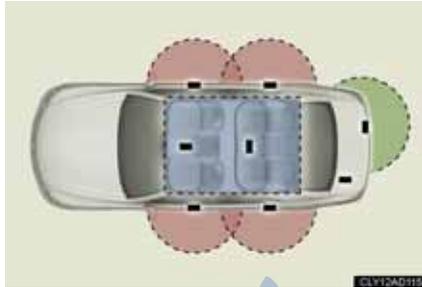
- 1 Antennas outside cabin
- 2 Antennas inside cabin
- 3 Antenna inside trunk
- 4 Antenna outside trunk

1
Before driving

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱ ۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

- Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



- When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 70 cm (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

- When unlocking the trunk

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 70 cm (2.3 ft.) of the trunk release button.

- When starting the engine or changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ Operation signals

Doors: The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

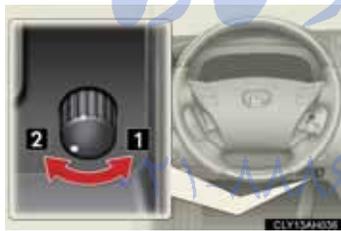
Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ Adjusting the volume of the buzzer

The operation signal buzzer and door lock buzzer can be set to the desired volume.



1 Increases the volume.

2 Decreases the volume.

The buzzer can be turned off by turning the knob fully clockwise.

1

Before driving

FarmaSOS.com

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly: (Ways of coping: →P. 731)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
 - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
 - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
 - Metallic wallets or bags
 - Coins
 - Hand warmers made of metal
 - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When another wireless key (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
 - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
 - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
 - Digital audio players
 - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

■ Switching the door unlock function

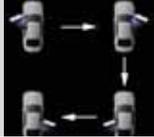
It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using wireless remote control.

STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

STEP 2 Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm during the setting change. (→P. 124)

STEP 3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold either  or  for about 5 seconds while pressing and holding  on the key.

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 3.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking doors	Beep
	Hold a door handle to unlock all doors	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Rings once
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door Hold a passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors	Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold the door handle to unlock the front and rear doors on your side	Exterior: Beeps 4 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold the door handle to unlock the door	Exterior: Beeps once Interior: Rings once

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after  is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 124)

■ Battery-saving function

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging and the electronic key battery from depleting.

- When the entry function has not been used for 30 days or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch when carrying the electronic key on your person.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function. (→P. 63)
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the mechanical key. (→P. 731)

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 52)
- The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used because the key always receives radio waves. If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 659)
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field.
 - TVs
 - Personal computers
 - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
 - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
 - Glass top ranges
 - Table lamps

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
 - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
 - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is unlocked.
 - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray, floor or door pockets, or in the glove box when the engine is started or “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The door will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

- A sudden approach to the effective range of door handle operation may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods
To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- Security feature
If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the anti-theft system automatically locks the vehicle again.
- Alarms and warning indicators
A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Perform the appropriate correction procedure described in the following table.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds.	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key was still inside the passenger compartment.	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again.
	The trunk was closed with the electronic key inside and all doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 60 seconds.	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle and lock the doors while carrying the electronic key without first turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.	Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and lock the doors again.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings continuously.	The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver’s door was open (or the driver’s door was opened while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver’s door.
	The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned OFF while the driver’s door was open.	Close the driver’s door.
Interior alarm sounds continuously. *1	When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, an attempt was made to open the door and exit the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in “P”.	Shift the shift lever to “P” and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.
Interior and exterior alarms sound continuously. *1	When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, the driver's door was closed	Shift the shift lever to “P”, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings once. *1	The electronic key has a low battery.	Replace the electronic key battery.
	An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally.	Start the engine with the electronic key present. *2
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds 3 times. *1	The driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned OFF.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again.
	An occupant carried the electronic key outside the vehicle and closed the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

1
Before driving

*1: A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

*2: If the engine does not start when the electronic key is inside the vehicle, the electronic key battery may be depleted or there may be difficulties receiving the signal from the key. (→P. 46)

- If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly
 - Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 731)
 - Starting the engine: →P. 733
- When the electronic key battery is fully depleted
→P. 659
- Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional
Settings (e. g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 762)

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Certification for the smart entry & start system

TOYOTA
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571 (Head Office)
or 471-8572 (Research & Development Group) JAPAN
TEL. +81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: TMLF-4

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

- Health & safety requirements: EN60950-1: 2001
- EMC requirements: EN301 489-1 V1.5.1 & EN301 489-3 V1.4.1
- Effective uses of radio spectrum: EN300 330-2 V1.1.1

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: January 31, 2006

Signature: Hiroshi Honda
Hiroshi Honda

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMLF-4 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMLF-4 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMLF-4 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMLF-4 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMLF-4 står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMLF-4 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMLF-4 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΤΜΛF-4 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMLF-4 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMLF-4 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMLF-4 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMLF-4 jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMLF-4 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMLF-4 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto vyhlasuje, že TMLF-4 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMLF-4 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMLF-4 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMLF-4 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMLF-4 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMLF-4 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMLF-4 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMLF-4 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
İşbu belge ile Toyota Motor Corporation, bu TMLF-4 in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
С настоящия документ Toyota Motor Corporation декларира, че TMLF-4 е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation declară că acest TMLF-4 este conform cu cerințele principale și cu celelalte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMLF-4 je uskladen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

TOKAI RIKA

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

1

Before driving

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Tokai Rika Co., Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 260, Toyota 3-chome, Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun, Aichi-ken,
480-0195, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Tuner
Product Model: B82UA

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

Safety: EN60950-1
EMC: EN301 489-1 & -3
Spectrum: EN300 220-2
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵ +۸۸۵۳۳۳۳۳

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA
* Member states with restrictive use	None

Date:

7 January 2009

Signature:



Position of the signatory:

Tadashi Wakiya
General Manager,
Electronics Engineering Div.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this B82UA is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että B82UA tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dat het toestel B82UA in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. déclare que l'appareil B82UA est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. att denna B82UA står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr B82UA overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erkläre Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., dass sich das Gerät B82UA in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ Β82UA ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dichiara che questo B82UA è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que el B82UA cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que este B82UA está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., jiddikjara li dan B82UA jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. seadme B82UA vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Alulírott, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a B82UA megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto vyhlasuje, že B82UA splňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento B82UA je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta B82UA v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis B82UA atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklarē, ka B82UA atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. oświadcza, że B82UA jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. yfir því að B82UA er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret B82UA er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
İşbu belge ile Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., bu B82UA in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
С настоящия документ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. декларира, че B82UA е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declară că acest B82UA este conform cu cerințele principale și cu celelalte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavlja da ovaj B82UA je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

CAUTION

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P. 43) The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of emitting the radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- User of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

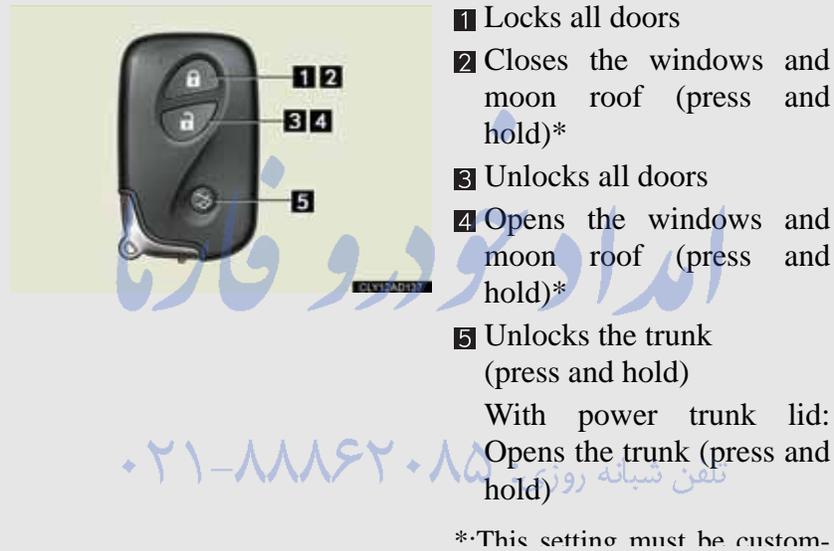
Ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for disabling the entry function.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle and the trunk from outside the vehicle.



1

Before driving

■ Operation signals

Doors: The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Adjusting the volume of the buzzer

The operation signal buzzer and door lock buzzer can be set to the desired volume. (→P. 45)

■ Alarm

Using the wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system.

(→P. 124)

■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 49

■ Security feature

→P. 52

■ If the wireless remote control does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 731)

- Starting the engine: →P. 733

■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 659

■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 46

■ Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional Settings (e.g. trunk unlocking function) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 762)

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Certification for the wireless remote control



1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this B74EA is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. vakuuttaa täten että B74EA tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dat het toestel B74EA in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. déclare que l'appareil B74EA est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. att denna B74EA står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr B74EA overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., dass sich das Gerät B74EA in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ Β74ΕΑ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. dichiara che questo B74EA è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que el B74EA cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declara que este B74EA está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., jiddikjara li dan B74EA jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. seadme B74EA vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Alulírott, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. nyilatkozom, hogy a B74EA megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto vyhlasuje, že B74EA splňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. tímto prohlašuje, že tento B74EA je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. izjavlja, da je ta B74EA v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklaruoja, kad šis B74EA atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. deklarē, ka B74EA atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. oświadcza, że B74EA jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. yfir því að B74EA er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. erklærer herved at utstyret B74EA er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
İşbu belge ile Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., bu B74EA in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
С настоящия документ Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. декларира, че B74EA е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd. declară că acest B74EA este conform cu cerințele principale și cu celelalte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., izjavlja da ovaj B74EA je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

CAUTION

■ When closing the windows or moon roof using wireless remote control

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window or moon roof is being operated.
 - To prevent inadvertent power windows and moon roof operation, never let a small child have and use the wireless remote control.
- #### ■ Jam protection function
- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
 - The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window or moon roof fully closes.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

■ Entry function

→P. 42

■ Wireless remote control

→P. 63

■ Door lock switch



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Unlocks all doors

■ Inside lock button



- 1 Locks the door
- 2 Unlocks the door

Pulling the door handle can open the driver's door even if the lock button is in the lock position.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Locking the driver's door from the outside without a key

STEP 1 Move the lock button to the lock position.

STEP 2 Close the door while holding the door handle up.

The door cannot be locked if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

FarmaSOS.com

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or cancelled:

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of “P” locks all doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to “P” unlocks all doors.
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

1

Before driving

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Setting and canceling the functions

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below.

STEP 1 Close all the doors and switch the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode. (Perform the step 2 within 10 seconds.)



Shift the shift lever to “P” or “N”, press and hold the driver's door lock switch ( or ) for about 5 seconds then release.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set are shown as follows.

Use the same procedure to cancel the function.

Function	Shift lever position	Driver's door lock switch position
Shift position linked door locking function	P	
Shift position linked door unlocking function		
Speed linked door locking function	N	
Driver's door linked door unlocking function		

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

■ Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ Door closer

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- The door closer will operate regardless of “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode.
- The door closer will not function if the door has been closed while pulling the inside or outside door handle.
- The door can be opened by pulling the inside or outside door handle, even when the door closer is operating (except when the lock button is in the lock position or the child-protector lock is set).
- The motor sound may be heard for several seconds after the door closer closes the door. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 731)

- Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 762)

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle. Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
The door may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.
Be especially careful for the driver's door, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock button is in locked position.
- Set the rear door child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

■ Door closer

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

If the child-protector lock is set, the door closer will not stop during operation even if an attempt is made to open the door from inside the vehicle. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the door. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To prevent door closer malfunction

Do not frequently repeat opening and closing of doors, or apply excessive force to a door while the door closer is operating.

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, entry function or wireless remote control.

■ Opening the trunk from inside the vehicle



Press the opener switch.

If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk lid, the trunk lid automatically opens fully.

■ Opening the trunk from outside the vehicle

▶ Entry function

→P. 42

▶ Wireless remote control

→P. 63

1

Before driving

FarmaSOS.com

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

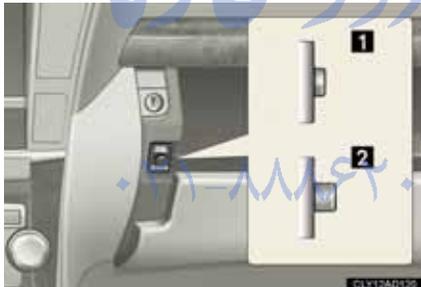
Trunk closer switch (with power trunk lid)



Pressing the switch closes the trunk lid automatically. (A buzzer sounds.)

Pressing the switch while the trunk lid is closing opens the trunk lid again.

Canceling the trunk opener feature

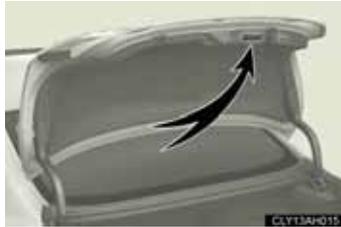


Turn the main switch in the glove box off to disable the trunk opener.

- 1 On
- 2 Off

The trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or the entry function.

■ Trunk handle



Use the trunk handle when closing the trunk.

■ Trunk easy closer

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

■ Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside (when all the doors are locked)

Closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm. In this case, the trunk lid can be opened by pressing the button on the trunk lid.

■ Overload protection function (with power trunk lid)

The trunk lid will not operate when excessive load is present on the top of the trunk lid.

■ Fall-down protection function (with power trunk lid)

While the trunk lid is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the trunk lid from rapidly falling down.

■ Jam protection function (with power trunk lid)

While the trunk lid is closing automatically, the trunk lid will stop closing and open if something gets caught.

■ Using the mechanical key

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P. 731)

■ Which key to the vehicle is to leave with a parking attendant after disabling the trunk opener main switch

→P. 36

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the trunk

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to fall closed again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.



- The trunk lid may fall if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk handle is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.

- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to fall closed again after it is opened.

 CAUTION

■ Trunk easy closer



In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the trunk easy closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.

■ Power trunk lid

Observe the following precautions when operating the power trunk lid. Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- If the trunk closer switch is pressed while the trunk lid is opening during automatic operation, the trunk lid stops opening. Take extra care when on an incline, as the trunk lid may open or close suddenly.
- On an incline, the trunk lid may fall after it opens automatically. Make sure the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- In the following situations, the power trunk lid may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the trunk lid has to be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the stopped trunk lid may suddenly fall, causing an accident.
 - When the trunk lid contacts an obstacle
 - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. The power trunk lid may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the trunk lid may fall closed again after it is opened.

 CAUTION

■ Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the trunk lid fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

 NOTICE

■ To prevent trunk easy closer malfunction

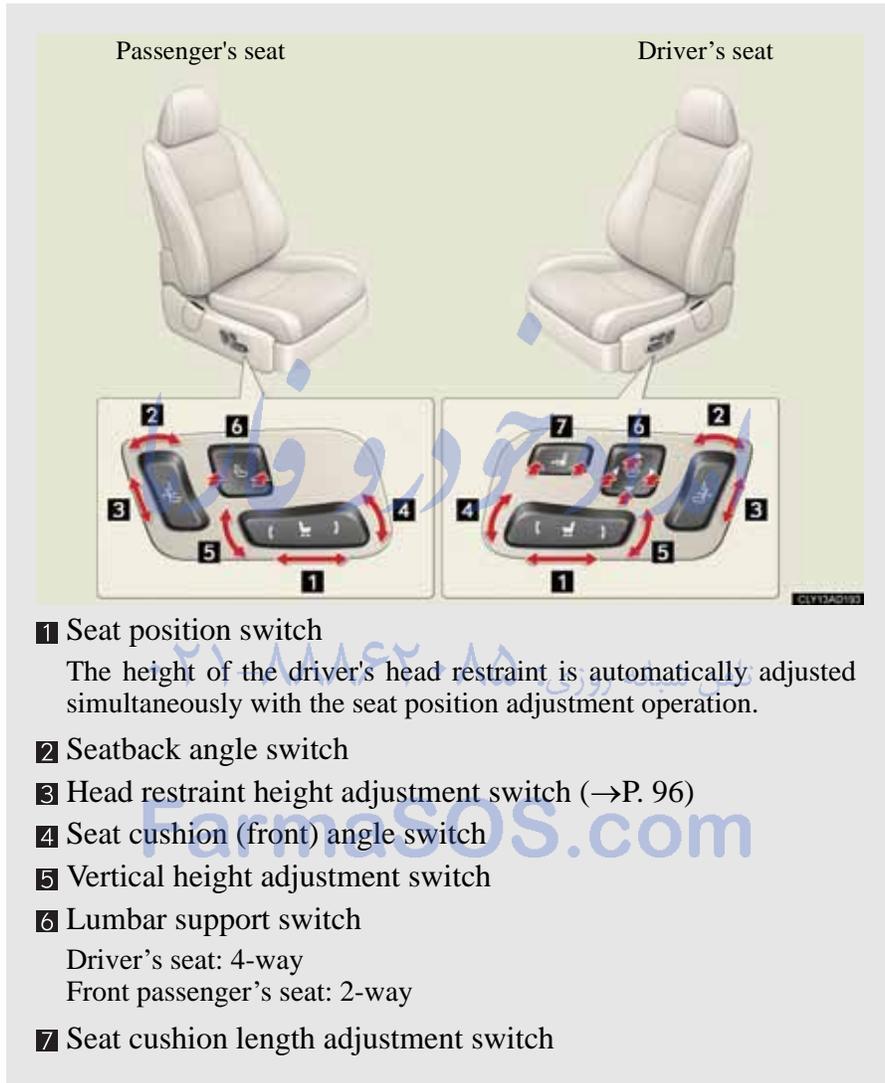
Do not apply force to the trunk lid while the trunk easy closer is operating.

■ To prevent damage to the power trunk lid

- Make sure that there is no luggage or snow on the trunk lid before operating the power trunk lid. In addition, make sure that there is no ice between the trunk lid and frame that prevents movement of the trunk lid. Operating the power trunk lid when excessive load is present on the trunk lid may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the trunk lid while the power trunk lid is operating.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats

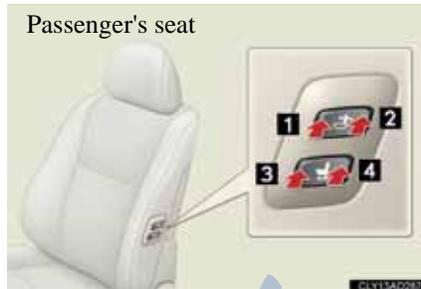


1

Before driving

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Seat operation switches on the side of the front passenger's seat



- 1 Tilts the seatback forward
- 2 Tilts the seatback backward
- 3 Moves the seat forward
- 4 Moves the seat backward

Active head restraints (without rear pre-crash safety system)



If the vehicle detects an impact during a rear-end collision, the front part of the head restraint moves forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash to the seat occupant.

When reversing, even a small amount of force applied from the rear, such as a minor rear impact, may cause the head restraints to move.

Pre-crash intelligent head restraints (with rear pre-crash safety system)

When the system determines that there is a high possibility of a rear-end collision, the headrests will be moved to an appropriate position before the collision. (→P. 359)

■ Seat cushion automatic length adjustment (driver's seat)

If the front of the cushion gets too close to the area around the instrument panel when the seat position is being adjusted, the seat cushion will automatically retract.

■ Active head restraints

- The active head restraint on the front passenger seat will not activate if the seat is unoccupied. However, it may activate during a rear-end collision if luggage is in the seat or the seat belt is fastened.
- Once the active head restraint has activated, the head restraint remains protruded forward and upward. After it has operated, have it repaired at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

 CAUTION

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.

If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat

Do not operate the front passenger's seat when a passenger is seated in it. In addition, do not let anyone sit down in the front passenger's seat while the seat is being operated. The front passenger may catch their legs between the instrument panel and seat, resulting in injury.

■ The active head restraint on the front passenger seat

Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which may prevent the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the active head restraint may not activate in the event of an accident.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

CAUTION

■ Active head restraint precautions

- Do not put head restraint covers.
- For removal, installation, modification, disassembly or disposal of the active head restraints, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Inappropriate handling of the active head restraints may prevent them from operating properly during an accident.

NOTICE

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat

Before operating the front passenger's seat, make sure that there is no luggage or any other objects on the seat or in the footwell that could prevent its operation.

Failure to do so may result in excess force being applied, causing damage to the seat and/or the luggage.

تلفن شبانه روزی: +۸۵-۸۸۶۲-۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Power rear seat*



1
Before driving

*: If equipped

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Returning the rear seat from the front seats



The seat will return to the neutral position while the button is pressed and held.

Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator

Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator, which feature a support plate mounted in the seatback and a vibration function, are equipped on each outside rear seat. The support plate position and vibration speed can be adjusted according to the occupant's preferences.



1 Support plate position adjustment switch

2 Vibration switch

Press  to operate the vibration function. Vibration will start in the same speed level as when previously operated. Each time  is pressed, the speed changes between 3 levels. Pressing "OFF" stops the vibration function.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

1

Before driving

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

■ Seat return function linked to the door opening operation

● Operating conditions

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

● Canceling operation partway through

During the seat return operation, performing either of the following actions cancels the operation:

- Pressing the “SET”, “M” or “C” button
- Pressing any of the seat adjustment switches

● Disabling the seat return function



Pressing the “C” button will disable the seat return function.

The indicator light comes on when the seat return function is disabled.

Pressing the button again will enable the seat return function.

● Seat return operation after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The seat will automatically return to the neutral position if the door is opened within approximately 45 seconds of the “ENGINE START STOP” switch being turned OFF.

■ Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator

● Operating conditions

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

● Automatic stop function

- Vibration will automatically stop approximately 15 minutes after starting.
- Vibration will automatically stop if the adjacent rear door is opened.

● Pelvic support seat return function

- The position of the support plate will automatically return to the neutral position within approximately 5 seconds of the “ENGINE START STOP” switch being turned OFF.
- The position of the support plate will automatically return to the neutral position if the adjacent rear door is opened.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

CAUTION

■ Power rear seats

● Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.

If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may come into contact with the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

● When returning the rear seats from the front seats

To avoid injuring the rear passengers, wait until they have gotten out of the vehicle before returning the rear seats to the neutral position.

● When adjusting the seat position

Keep sufficient footwell space to prevent your feet from being caught by the front seat.

■ Using the pelvic support seat with seat vibrator

● Those who are pregnant, have recently given birth, or suffer from ailments requiring rest (heart disease etc.) should consult a doctor before use.

● Do not allow children to use the pelvic support seat vibration function.

● Do not use immediately after consuming a meal or alcohol, or for an extended period of time.

● If you feel sick while using the pelvic support seat vibration function, immediately discontinue use.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat and steering wheel, angle of the outside rear view mirrors, and height of seat belt shoulder anchor) can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.

Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

The same buttons are found on the front passenger's side, allowing the front passenger's seat position and seat belt shoulder anchor height to be memorized.

■ Entering a position to memory

STEP 1 Check that the shift lever is in "P".

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and seat belt shoulder anchor height to the desired positions. (When memorizing the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the desired positions.)

STEP 4



Press the "SET" button, then within 3 seconds press button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position

■ Recalling the memorized position

STEP 1 Check that the shift lever is in “P”.

STEP 2 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 3



Press button “1”, “2” or “3” to recall the memorized position.

1
Before driving

■ Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation (driver's seat)

One memorized driving position can be registered to each electronic key. This driving position will then be recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the electronic key's entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

► Using the wireless remote control

STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver's door.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)



While pressing the desired button (“1”, “2” or “3”), press  on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, open and close a door once after a driving position has been recorded. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after  is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 124)

► Using the door lock switch

Carry only one of the keys (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked. تلفن

STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver's door.



While pressing the desired button (“1”, “2” or “3”), press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch (either the driver or passenger side) until the signal beeps.

Power easy access system (driver's seat)



The auto away/return function enables easy access by activating when the driver attempts to enter or exit the vehicle.

1

Before driving

► Auto away function (exiting the vehicle)

When all of the following actions have been performed, the steering wheel will move up and back to the point farthest away from the driver and the seat will move backward:

- The shift lever has been shifted to “P”.
- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch has been turned OFF.
- The driver seat belt has been unfastened.

► Auto return function (entering the vehicle)

When either of the following actions has been performed, the steering wheel will move toward the driver and seat will move forward:

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.
- The driver seat belt has been fastened.

■ When driving position memory is linked with door unlock operation

If the driver's door is opened, the driver's seat will move toward the memorized position but stop slightly beforehand to allow easy access to the vehicle.

Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or fastening the driver's seat belt moves the seat fully into the memorized position.

■ Canceling the linked door unlock operation

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door.

STEP 2 Using the wireless remote control: While pressing the "SET" button, press  on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

Using the door lock switch: While pressing the "SET" button, press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch until the signal beeps.

■ Operating the driving position memory after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF

In the following situations, the memorized positions (1 - 3) can be activated even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off.

Driver's seat (except steering wheel): Within 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and within 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed.

Front passenger's seat: Within 180 seconds after the front passenger's door is opened.

■ Stopping memorized position recall operations part-way through

Press the "SET", "1", "2" or "3" button to stop all memorized recall operations part way through.

To individually stop a memorized position recall operation for a seat, the steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors, or a seat belt shoulder anchor, operate the corresponding position adjustment switch while the memorized position is being recalled. All items can still be adjusted manually even if their recall operation is stopped part-way through.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

■ Power easy access system operations

- If the seat is already close to the rearmost position, the auto away function may not operate when the driver exits the vehicle.
- If the seat position is adjusted during the auto away function's operation, the operation will stop.
- If the seat position is adjusted during or after the auto away function's operation, the auto return function will not operate when entering the vehicle.

■ Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

The distance that the driver's seat moves backward during the auto away function can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 762)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel. Always check that there is no rear passenger or luggage behind your seat during the auto away function is activated when you stop and exit from the vehicle.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1

Before driving

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

The rear seat position can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button.

■ Entering a position to memory

STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the rear seat to the desired position.

STEP 3



Press the “SET” button until the signal beeps.

If the preset is being used, the previously recorded seat position will be overwritten.

■ Recalling the memorized position



Press the “M” button until the signal beeps.

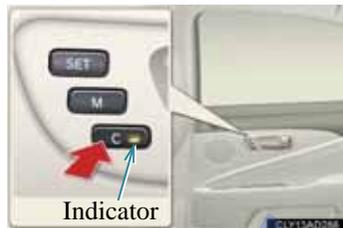
*: If equipped

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

■ Seat return function linked to the door opening operation

When the door is opened, the rear seat will automatically return to the neutral position. This function is available for approximately 45 seconds after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF.

■ Canceling the seat position recall or return operation



Pressing the “C” button will disable the seat position recall or seat return function.

The indicator light comes on when the function is disabled.

Pressing the button again will enable the seat position recall or seat return function.

Performing either of the following cancels the seat returning operation:

- Press the “SET”, “M” or “C” button.
- Press any of the seat adjustment switches.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Seat adjustment caution

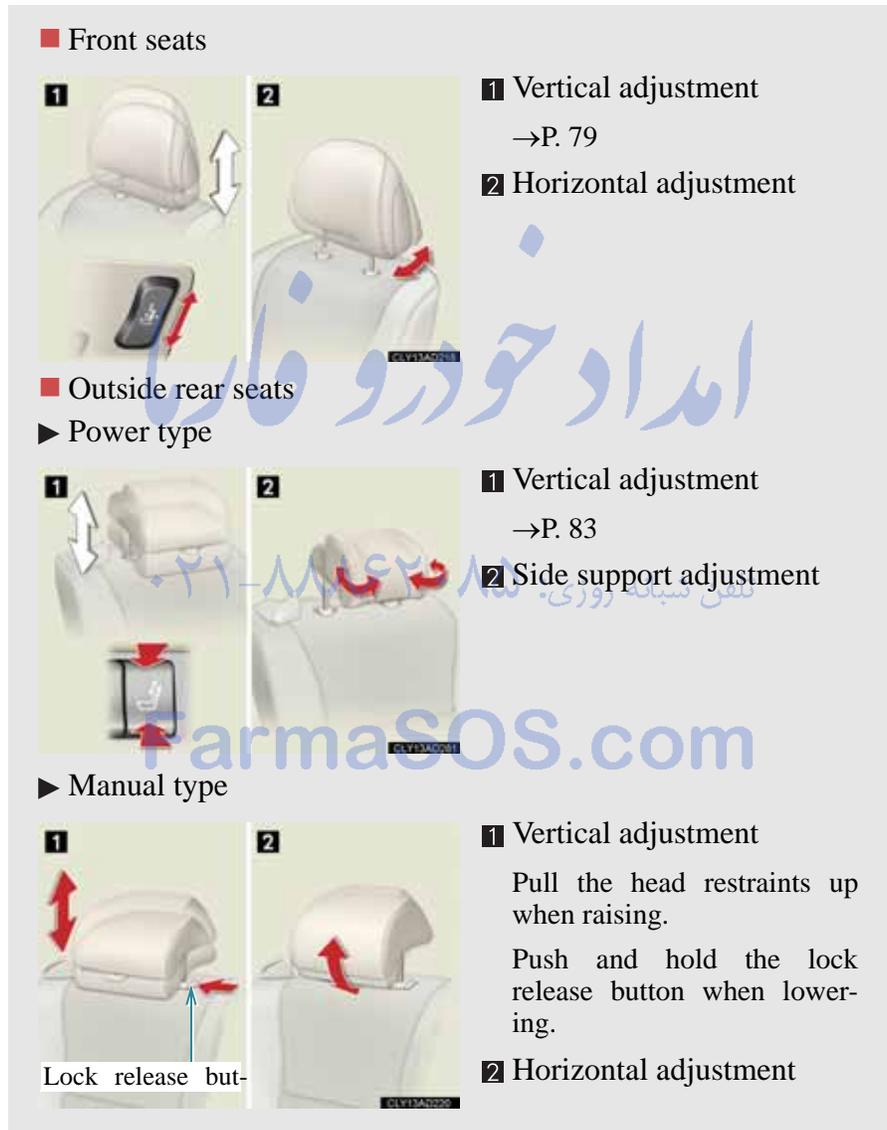
Take care during seat adjustment so that the rear passengers do not strike the front seats.

1

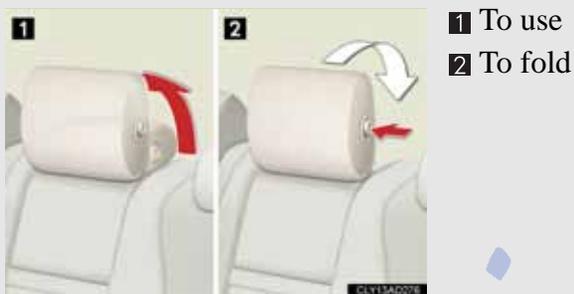
Before driving

FarmaSOS.com

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)



■ Rear center seat

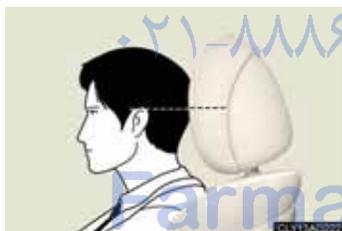


1
Before driving

■ Removing the head restraints

For removal and installation of the head restraint, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints (except rear center seat)



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

■ Rear center seat

Make sure to pull raise the head restraint forward when using the rear center seat.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

CAUTION

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Manual type: After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

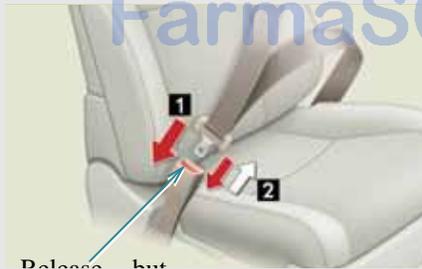
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

■ Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Fastening and releasing the seat belt



1 Fastening the belt

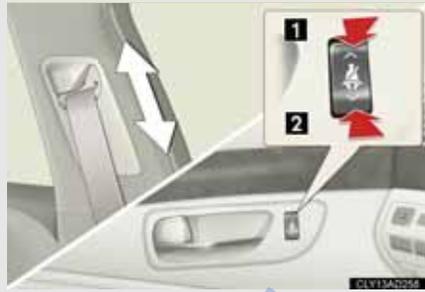
Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

2 Releasing the belt

Press the release button.
If the seat belt cannot be

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

■ Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)



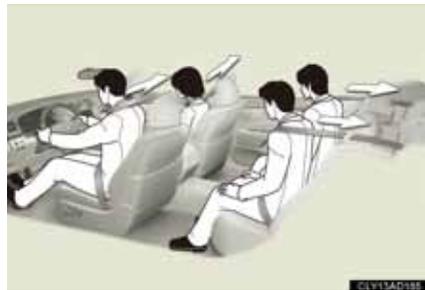
- 1 Up
- 2 Down

Seat belt comfort guide (outside rear seats)



If the shoulder belt sits close to a person's neck, slide the seat belt comfort guide forward.

Seat belt pretensioners (front and outside rear seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

Pre-crash seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-crash safety system)

If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the front seatbelts will retract before the collision. (→P. 346)

1

Before driving

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

■ Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 99)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the round part of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 147)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 99 regarding seat belt usage.

■ Automatic adjustment of the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

A desired seat belt shoulder anchor height can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory and seat position memory. (→P. 88)

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, for seat belt replacement or installation.

FarmaSOS.com

 CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.

If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ Seat belt pretensioners

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

CAUTION

■ When a child is seated in the child restraint system

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, choking or other serious injuries may result in death.

If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.

- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.

- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.

- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly resulting in death or serious injury.

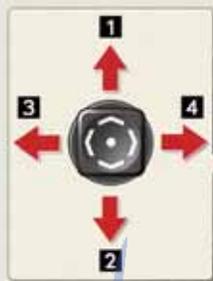
■ Precaution for pre-crash seat belts

Do not rely on the pre-crash safety to avoid accidents. Always pay attention to the surrounding conditions, and drive safely and responsibly.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or when the driver’s seat belt is fastened.



- 1 Up
- 2 Down
- 3 Away from the driver
- 4 Toward the driver

1

Before driving

■ Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 88)

■ Power easy access system

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P. 91)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

In automatic mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduce the reflected light.



Turns automatic mode on/off

The indicator comes on when automatic mode is turned on.

The mirror will revert to automatic mode each time the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

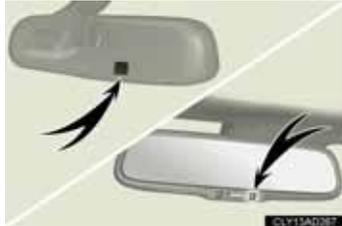
Adjusting the height of rear view mirror



Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

- To prevent sensor error



To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

1

Before driving

CAUTION

- Caution while driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving. Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.



- 1 Selects a mirror to adjust (“L”: left or “R”: right)
- 2 Adjusts the mirror up, down, in, or out using the switch

Folding and extending the mirrors



- 1 Folds the mirrors
- 2 Extends the mirrors

Putting the outside rear view mirror folding switch in the neutral position sets the mirrors to automatic mode. Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

■ When the mirrors are fogged up

Turn on the mirror defoggers to defog the mirrors. (→P. 408)

■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 88)

■ Linked mirror function when reversing

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (between “L” and “R”).

■ Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 106)

 CAUTION

■ When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.



- 1 Closing
- 2 One-touch closing*
- 3 Opening
- 4 One-touch opening*

*:Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

1
Before driving

Lock switch



Press the switch down to lock the passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

- The power windows can be operated when
The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- Door lock linked window operation
 - The power windows can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 42)
 - The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 731)

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

- Operating the power windows after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

- Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

- When the power window does not close normally

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

STEP 1 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.

STEP 2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.

STEP 3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.

If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

Settings (e.g. linked door key operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 762)

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

CAUTION

■ Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
Closing a power window on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

■ Opening and closing



1 Open

The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise. Press the switch again to fully open.

2 Close

Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

■ Tilting up and down



1 Tilt up

2 Tilt down

Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

1

Before driving

*: If equipped

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

-
- The moon roof can be operated when
The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
 - Moon roof open warning buzzer
The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument panel when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.
 - Door lock linked moon roof operation
 - The moon roof can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 42)
 - The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 731)
 - Operating the moon roof after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF
The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.
 - Jam protection function
If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame during closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.
 - Sunshade
The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

■ When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the “CLOSE” switch. *¹

The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds. *² Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the “UP” switch*¹ until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

STEP 3 Release the “UP” switch once and then press and hold the “UP” switch again. *¹

The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position. *² Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*¹: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*²: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the “CLOSE” or “UP” switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

Settings (e.g. linked door key operation) can be changed.

(Customizable features →P. 762)

 CAUTION

■ Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

■ Before refueling the vehicle

Close all the doors and windows, and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

■ Opening the fuel tank cap

STEP 1



Press the opener switch.

STEP 2



Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

STEP 3



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

Closing the fuel tank cap



When replacing the fuel tank cap, turn it until a clicking sound is heard.

After releasing your hand, the cap will turn slightly to the opposite direction.

1

Before driving

- Fuel types

EU area:

Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228, Research Octane Number of 95 or higher

Except EU area:

Unleaded gasoline, Research Octane Number of 95 or higher

- Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

- Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 84 L (22.2 gal., 18.4 Imp. gal.)

- When the fuel filler door opener is inoperable



The lever can be used to open the fuel filler door if the fuel filler door cannot be opened using the inside switch.

 CAUTION

■ Refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When replacing the fuel cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

 NOTICE

■ Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

1

Before driving

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1-6. Theft deterrent system Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.



The indicator light flashes after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has

1
Before driving

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions affecting operation

Depending on surrounding environment and conditions, the engine immobilizer system may not operate properly. This may prevent the engine from starting.

(→P. 46)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1-6. Theft deterrent system

■ Certification for the engine immobilizer system

TOYOTA
TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571(Head Office)
or 471-8572(Research & Development Group) JAPAN
TEL : (0565)28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: **TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION**
Manufacturer's Address: **1, Toyota-cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572 Japan**

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: **Immobilizer**
Product Model: **TMIMB-1**

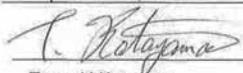
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

- Health & safety requirements: **EN60950-1:2001**
- EMC requirements: **EN301 489-1 V1.4.1 & EN301 489-3 V1.4.1**
- Effective use of radio spectrum: **EN300 330-2 V1.1.1**

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: September 17, 2004

Signature: 
Tomoaki Katayama

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMIMB-1 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMIMB-1 tyypinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMIMB-1 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMIMB-1 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMIMB-1 står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMIMB-1 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklart Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMIMB-1 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΤΜΙΜΒ-1 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMIMB-1 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMIMB-1 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMIMB-1 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMIMB-1 jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMIMB-1 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMIMB-1 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto vyhlasuje, že TMIMB-1 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMIMB-1 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMIMB-1 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMIMB-1 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMIMB-1 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMIMB-1 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMIMB-1 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMIMB-1 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
İşbu belge ile Toyota Motor Corporation, bu TMIMB-1 in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder.
С настоящия документ Toyota Motor Corporation декларира, че TMIMB-1 е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation declară că acest TMIMB-1 este conform cu cerințele principale și cu celelalte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMIMB-1 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.



NOTICE

- To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

1-6. Theft deterrent system Double locking system*

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.



Vehicles employing this system have labels on the window glass of both front doors.

1

Before driving

Setting the double locking system

Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.

Using the entry function:

Press the lock button on the outside door handle twice within 2.5 seconds.

Using the wireless remote control:

Press  twice within 5 seconds.

Canceling the double locking system

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle.

Using the wireless remote control: Press  .

CAUTION

■ Double locking system precaution

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle, because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

*: If equipped

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lights when forcible entry is detected.

■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.) (if equipped)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination. (if equipped)

■ Setting the alarm system



Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock all doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

■ Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors or trunk using the entry function or the wireless remote control.
- Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

1

Before driving

Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor (if equipped)

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

- The intrusion sensor detects an intruder or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor can be canceled using the cancel switch.

■ Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor



Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster. Pressing the switch again will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.

To cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor, perform the necessary procedure each time canceling the sensors is desired.

1-6. Theft deterrent system

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations: (Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)



- The doors or trunk are unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood.



- The battery is recharged or replaced while the vehicle is locked. (On some models, the alarm may be triggered simply by disconnecting the battery.)

- Alarm-operated door lock
 - When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
 - Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery.
- Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor
 - The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
 - After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the “ENGINE START STOP” switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
 - The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is deactivated.
- Intrusion sensor considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:



- Persons or pets are in the vehicle.

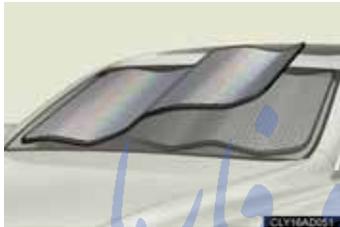


- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.

1-6. Theft deterrent system



- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



- The wind or something similar causes a frost cover to move.

- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.
- The windows or moon roof are open.
- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.
- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, or other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

■ Tilt sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.
- Cargo is loaded onto or unloaded from a roof luggage carrier.

■ Certification for the alarm

FUJITSU TEN LIMITED
 Engineering Management Department
 Common Technology Group
 2-28, Goshō-dori 1-chome, Hyogo-ku, Kobe, 652-8510, Japan
 Tel.: +81.78-682-2031 Fax: +81.78-671-7160



1

Before driving

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product Name: Motion Sensor
Model Number: FTL358
Reference Standards:

Radio :	
EN 300 440-1	V1.4.1(2008-05)
EN 300 440-2	V1.2.1(2008-05)
EMC :	
EN 301 489-1	V1.8.1(2008-04)
EN 301 489-3	V1.4.1(2002-08)
Safety :	
EN 60065	2002+Amd.11:2008

Supplementary Information:

CE Mark	
Member states intend for use	EU and EFTA
Member states with restrictive use	The sensor installed to vehicles sold other than UK and Ireland is not allowed to operate in UK

Signature:
 Takao KAMAI
Position: Department General Manager
 Engineering Management Department
 Common Technology Group
Date of issue: 23 September 2009
Place of issue: Kobe, Japan

The sensor installed to vehicles sold other than UK and Ireland is not allowed to operate in UK.

The latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC) is available at the address stated in the DoC.

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Hereby, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, declares that this FTL358 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED vakuuttaa täten että FTL358 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dat het toestel FTL358 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED déclare que l'appareil FTL358 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar FUJITSU TEN LIMITED att denna FTL358 står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr FTL358 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklart FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, dass sich das Gerät FTL358 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ FUJITSU TEN LIMITED ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ FTL358 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dichiara che questo FTL358 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que el FTL358 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que este FTL358 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, jiddikjara li dan FTL358 jikkonforma mal-ftigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab FUJITSU TEN LIMITED seadme FTL358 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED nyilatkozom, hogy a FTL358 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED tímto vyhlasuje, že FTL358 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED tímto prohlašuje, že tento FTL358 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED izjavlja, da je ta FTL358 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo FUJITSU TEN LIMITED deklaruoja, kad šis FTL358 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo FUJITSU TEN LIMITED deklarē, ka FTL358 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym FUJITSU TEN LIMITED oświadcza, że FTL358 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir FUJITSU TEN LIMITED yfir því að FTL358 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved at utstyret FTL358 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
İşbu belge ile FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, bu FTL358 in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder. تلفن شبانه روزی
С настоящия документ FUJITSU TEN LIMITED декларира, че FTL358 е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declară că acest FTL358 este conform cu cerințele principale și cu celelalte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.

1

Before driving

1-6. Theft deterrent system

FUJITSU TEN LIMITED
 Engineering Management Department
 Common Technology Group
 2-28, Goshō-dori 1-chome, Hyogo-ku, Kobe, 652-8510, Japan
 Tel.: +81.78-682-2031 Fax: +81.78-671-7160



DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product Name: Motion Sensor
Model Number: FTL313
Reference Standards:

Radio :	
EN 300 440-1	V1.4.1(2008-05)
EN 300 440-2	V1.2.1(2008-05)
EMC :	
EN 301 489-1	V1.8.1(2008-04)
EN 301 489-3	V1.4.1(2002-08)
Safety :	
EN 60065	2002+Amd.11:2008

Supplementary Information:

CE Mark	
Member states intend for use	EU and EFTA
Member states with restrictive use	The sensor installed to vehicles sold other than UK and Ireland is not allowed to operate in UK

Signature:
 Takao KAMAI
 Position: Department General Manager
 Engineering Management Department
 Common Technology Group
 Date of issue: 23 September 2009
 Place of issue: Kobe, Japan

The sensor installed to vehicles sold other than UK and Ireland is not allowed to operate in UK.

The latest “DECLARATION of CONFORMITY” (DoC) is available at the address stated in the DoC.

Hereby, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, declares that this FTL313 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED vakuuttaa täten että FTL313 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dat het toestel FTL313 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED déclare que l'appareil FTL313 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar FUJITSU TEN LIMITED att denna FTL313 står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr FTL313 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, dass sich das Gerät FTL313 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ FUJITSU TEN LIMITED ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ FTL313 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dichiara che questo FTL313 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que el FTL313 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que este FTL313 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, jiddikjara li dan FTL313 jikkonforma mal-ftigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab FUJITSU TEN LIMITED seadme FTL313 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

1

Before driving

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Alulírott, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED nyilatkozom, hogy a FTL313 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED tímto vyhlasuje, že FTL313 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED tímto prohlašuje, že tento FTL313 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED izjavlja, da je ta FTL313 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo FUJITSU TEN LIMITED deklaruoja, kad šis FTL313 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo FUJITSU TEN LIMITED deklarē, ka FTL313 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym FUJITSU TEN LIMITED oświadcza, że FTL313 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir FUJITSU TEN LIMITED yfir því að FTL313 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved at utstyret FTL313 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
İşbu belge ile FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, bu FTL313 in 1995/5/EC Yönetmeliği esas gereksinimlerine ve diğer şartlarına uygun olduğunu beyan eder. تلفن شبانه روزی
С настоящия документ FUJITSU TEN LIMITED декларира, че FTL313 е в съгласие с основните изисквания и съответните постановления на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declară că acest FTL313 este conform cu cerințele principale și cu celelalte prevederi relevante ale Directivei 1999/5/EC.



NOTICE

- To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture

Drive in a good posture as follows:



- ❶ Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 79)
- ❷ Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 79)
- ❸ Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable. (→P. 79)
- ❹ Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the SRS driver airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 105)
- ❺ Adjust the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 96)
- ❻ Wear the seat belt cor-

1

Before driving

 CAUTION

- While driving
 - Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
 - Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
 - Do not place anything under the front seats.
Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Adjusting the seat position
 - Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
 - Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

FarmaSOS.com

1-7. Safety information

SRS airbags

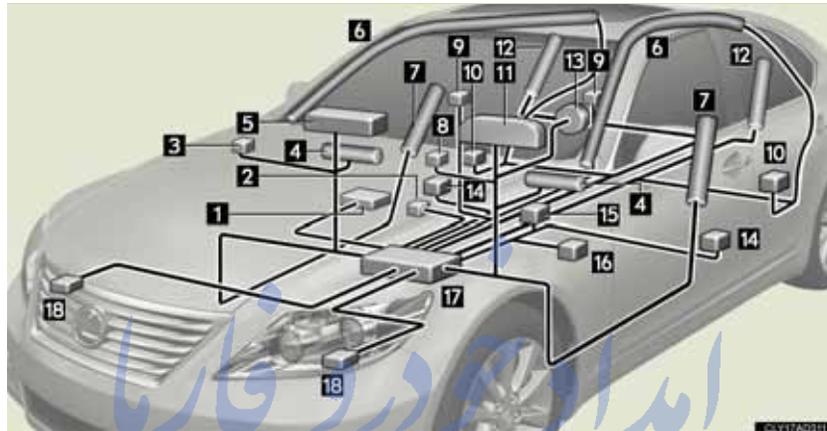
The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



- ▶ SRS front airbags
 - 1 SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
 - Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components
 - 2 SRS knee airbags
 - Can help provide driver and front passenger protection
- ▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags
 - 3 Front SRS side airbags
 - Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants
 - 4 Rear SRS side airbags (power rear seat)
 - Can help protect the torso of the outside rear seat occupants
 - 5 SRS curtain shield airbags
 - Can help protect primarily the head of outside occupants

1
Before driving

SRS airbag system components



- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Occupant detection sensor | 9 Active head restraints |
| 2 Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch | 10 Curtain shield airbag sensors |
| 3 Airbag manual on-off switch (if equipped) | 11 SRS warning light |
| 4 Knee airbags | 12 Rear side airbags |
| 5 Front passenger airbag | 13 Driver airbag |
| 6 Curtain shield airbags | 14 Side and curtain shield airbag sensors |
| 7 Front side airbags | 15 Driver's seat belt buckle switch |
| 8 SRS airbag on-off indicator (if equipped) | 16 Driver's seat position sensor |
| | 17 Airbag sensor assembly |
| | 18 Front airbag sensors |

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the

inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

- If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)
 - Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
 - A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
 - Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, and parts of the front pillar and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
 - The windshield may crack.

- SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.
- The SRS front passenger airbag will not activate, if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the SRS front passenger airbag may deploy, if luggage is put in the seat or the seat belt is buckled up, regardless of the presence of an occupant in the seat.

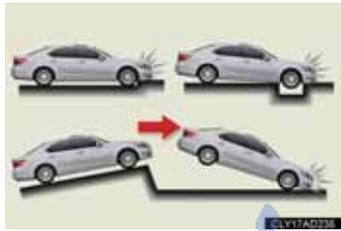
امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

- Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



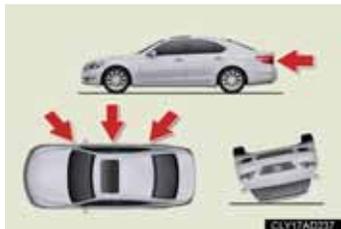
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

- SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbag and SRS curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).
- The front SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front SRS side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy, if luggage is put in the seat or the seat belt is buckled up, regardless of the presence of an occupant in the seat.

- Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

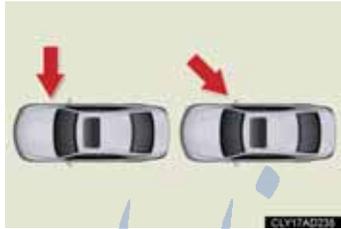


- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

1-7. Safety information

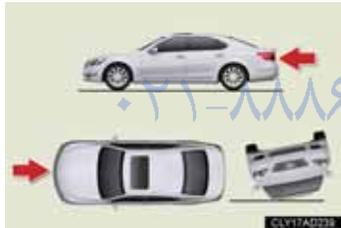
■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.



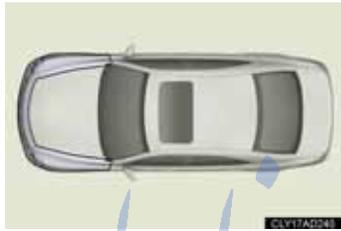
- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

FarmaSOS.com

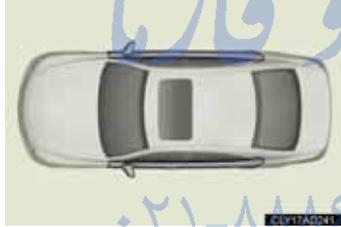
■ When to contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

In the following cases, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible.

- Any of the SRS airbags has been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

1

Before driving

 CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.

Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat.
Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

- If the vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 138.
Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION**■ SRS airbag precautions**

- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P. 148)



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.

1

Before driving

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip. (Except for the speed limit label → P. 713)



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and seriously injure or kill you, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.

 CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front pillar garnish, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the SRS front passenger airbag may not deploy in the event of a collision.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags.
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rail.
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment.
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.).
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system.
- For Morocco: Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players.
- Except Morocco: Installation of electronic devices such as an RF-transmitter or CD players.

Lexus strongly urges the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
General installation instructions are provided in this manual.
(→P. 157)
- Lexus recommends that you use a child restraint system which conforms to the regulation ECE No.44.

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the regulation ECE No.44.

Group 0: Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)

Group 0⁺: Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)

Group I: 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)

Group II: 15 to 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.) (4 years - 7 years)

Group III: 22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.) (6 years - 12 years)

In this owner's manual, the following popular 3 types of child restraint systems that can be secured with the seat belts are explained.

► Baby seat



Equal to Group 0 and 0⁺ of ECE No.44

► Child seat



Equal to Group 0⁺ and I of ECE No.44

► Junior seat



Equal to Group II and III of ECE No.44

1

Before driving

FarmaSOS.com

1-7. Safety information

Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions

Provided information in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Seating posi- Mass groups	Front passenger seat		Rear seat	
	Airbag manual on-off switch		Outboard	Center
	ON	OFF		
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	X Never put	U	U	U
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	X Never put	U	U	U
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	Rear facing — X Never put UF	U	U	U
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.)	UF	U	U	U

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for the use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for the use in this mass group.

X: Not suitable seat position for children in this mass group.

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint systems different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer and retailer.

1

Before driving

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

1-7. Safety information

**Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions
(with ISOFIX rigid anchor)**

Provided information in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Mass groups	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions
			Rear outboard
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X
	G	ISO/L2	X
	(1)		X
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	E	ISO/R1	X
		(1)	X
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	E	ISO/R1	X
	D	ISO/R2	X
	C	ISO/R3	X
		(1)	X
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	D	ISO/R2	X
	C	ISO/R3	X
	B	ISO/F2	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	IUF
		(1)	X
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)		(1)	X

- (1) For the CRS which do not carry the ISO/XX size class identification (A to G), for the applicable mass group, the car manufacturer shall indicate the vehicle specific ISOFIX child restraint system(s) recommended for each position.

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved the use in the mass group.

X: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in the mass group and/or size class.

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint systems different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer and retailer.

1

Before driving

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

- When installing the child restraint system on a rear outboard seat (power rear seat)



When using a child restraint system in a rear outboard seat, adjust the following:

- The upper seatback to the rearmost position
- The seat cushion to the fully rearward position
- The head restraint to the lowest and rearmost position

- When installing the child restraint system on the front passenger seat



When you have to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the following:

- The seatback to the most upright position after child restraint seat installation
- The seat cushion to the fully rearward and highest position

- Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

Get an appropriate child restraint system for the child. If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt.

(→P. 99)

⚠ CAUTION**■ Using a child restraint system**

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child, resulting in serious injury or even death.

■ Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- With airbag manual on-off switch:
 Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 165)
 In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Without airbag manual on-off switch:
 Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.

1-7. Safety information

CAUTION

■ Child restraint precautions

- A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillar or roof side rail from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.

If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the outside rear seats using a seat belt or ISO-FIX rigid anchor. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.

1



1 Installation with a seat belt (→P. 158)

2



2 ISOFIX rigid anchor (ISO-FIX child restraint system) (→P. 161)

These exclusive fixing bars are provided for the rear outside seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)

3



3 Anchor bracket (for top strap) (→P. 161)

Anchor brackets are provided for each rear seat.

1

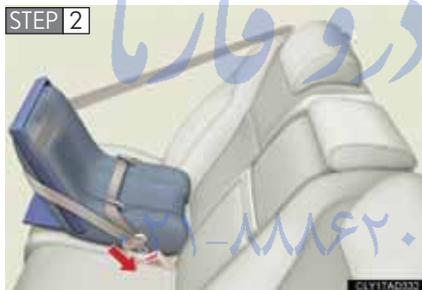
Before driving

Installing child restraints using a seat belt

■ Rear facing — Baby seat/child seat



Place the child seat on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.



If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.

After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely.

■ Forward facing — Child seat



Place the child seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.



If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.

After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely.

1

Before driving

■ Junior seat



Place the junior seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



Sit the child in the junior seat. Fit the seat belt to the junior seat according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 99)

FarmaSOS.com

Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)



STEP 1 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.

STEP 2 Latch the buckles onto the exclusive fixing bars.

If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchor bracket.

1

Before driving

Child restraint systems with a top strap



STEP 1

Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchors and move the head restraint in place at the lowest position.

1-7. Safety information



Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You need a locking clip to install a child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Locking clip for child restraint system
(Part No. 73119-22010)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

CAUTION**■ When installing a child restraint system**

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, choking or other serious injuries may result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).



- Adjust the front passenger seat or rear seats so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- Without airbag manual on-off switch: Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable.
- When installing a forward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible.
Failure to do so may result in death or

1-7. Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

- ▶ With airbag manual on-off switch



- ▶ Without airbag manual on-off switch



- With airbag manual on-off switch:
Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

(→P. 165)

- Without airbag manual on-off switch:
Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.

- A warning label on the passenger side instrument panel reminds you not to install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to be sure it is secure.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

This system deactivates the front passenger airbag, front passenger knee airbag and front passenger side airbag.
Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

■ System location



1 SRS airbag on-off indicator

This indicator turns on when the airbag system is on. (Only when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)



2 Airbag manual on-off switch

■ Deactivating the front seat passenger airbag and front passenger side airbag



Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and rotate to the off position. (→P. 35)

The “OFF” indicator turns on. (Only when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

■ “PASSENGER AIRBAG” indicator information

If any of the following problems occurs, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Neither “ON” nor “OFF” comes on.
- The indicator does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to on or off.

 CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

For safety reasons, always install the child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to off.

If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

■ When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to on. تلفن شاپ: ۰۲۱۷۷۷۷۷۷۷
If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

1

Before driving

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-1. Driving procedures	2-4. Using other driving systems
Driving the vehicle..... 168	Cruise control 228
Engine (ignition) switch... 177	Dynamic radar cruise
Automatic Transmission	control..... 232
(without paddle shift	Adaptive cruise control
switches) 181	with full-speed range 246
Automatic Transmission	Lexus parking
(with paddle shift	assist-sensor 263
switches) 187	LKA
Turn signal lever 195	(Lane-Keeping Assist)... 272
Parking brake 196	Electronically modulated
Brake Hold 199	air suspension 279
Horn 202	Lexus parking assist
2-2. Instrument cluster	monitor/Intelligent
Gauges and meters 203	parking assist 281
Indicators and warning	Driving assist systems 340
lights 206	Pre-Crash Safety system.. 346
Multi-information display 210	Rear Pre-Crash Safety
2-3. Operating the lights and	system 359
windshield wipers	2-5. Driving information
Headlight switch 215	Cargo and luggage 364
Automatic High Beam 218	Winter driving tips 366
Fog light switch 223	Trailer towing 370
Windshield wipers and	
washer 224	
Headlight cleaner switch.. 227	

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

■ Starting the engine (→P. 180)

■ Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to “D”.

(→P. 184, 190)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 200)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in “D”, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to “P” or “N”. (→P. 184, 190)

■ Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in “D”, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 200)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to “P”. (→P. 184, 190)

STEP 4 Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to stop the engine.

Starting on a steep uphill

STEP 1 Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to “D”.

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-1. Driving procedures

■ Starting off on a hill

Hill-start assist control will operate. (→P. 340)

■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 300 km (186 miles):
Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 1000 km (621 miles):
 - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
 - Avoid sudden acceleration.
 - Do not drive continuously in the low range in the “S” (without paddle shift switches) or “M” (with paddle shift switches) position.
 - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, perform the bedding down.

■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 749)

■ Regarding engine speed when idling

When idling with the shift lever in “P” or “N” for an extensive period of time, the engine speed may rise to approximately 1000 rpm (r/min). This is not a malfunction. After a set period of time, the engine will return to its previous engine speed.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-1. Driving procedures

 CAUTION

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
 - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
 - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
 - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly, allowing you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
 - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in "R". Doing so may result in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the trunk is closed. Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected immediately by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "P" while the vehicle is moving. Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "R" while the vehicle is moving forward. Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to "D" while the vehicle is moving backward. Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

- Moving the shift lever to “N” while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when “N” is selected.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 743
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 187, 193)
- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive the vehicle off-road.
This is not a AWD vehicle designed for real off-road driving. Proceed with all due caution if it becomes unavoidable to drive off-road.
- Do not drive across river crossings or through other bodies of water.
This may cause electric/electronic components to short circuit, damage the engine or cause other serious damage to the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- When driving on slippery road surfaces
 - Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
 - Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting or down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
 - After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.
- When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.
- When the vehicle is stopped
 - Do not race the engine.
If the vehicle is in any gear other than “P” or “N”, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.
 - Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
 - In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
 - If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
 - Avoid revving or racing the engine.
Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
Doing so may result in the following:
 - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
 - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
 - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to “P”, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes and the rear bumper diffusers while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Exhaust gases

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking the vehicle

● When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.

Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.

● If the electronically controlled brake system does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhills or sharp turns that require braking.

In this case, even though the brakes still operate, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Braking distance also becomes longer.

● The brake system consists of 3 individual hydraulic systems: if one of the systems fails, the others will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer. If this happens, do not continue to drive the vehicle. If the brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on together with buzzer sound while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ If the vehicle becomes stuck or bogged (AWD models)

Do not spin the wheels recklessly when any of the tires is up in the air, or stuck in sand or mud, etc. This may damage the drive system components or propel the vehicle forward (or in another direction) and cause an accident.

2-1. Driving procedures

NOTICE

- When driving the vehicle
 - Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving. If the brake pedal is depressed while driving with the accelerator pedal depressed, driving torque may be restrained.
 - Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.
- When parking the vehicle

Always put the shift lever in “P”.
Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.
- Avoiding damage to vehicle parts
 - Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
 - When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.
- If a brake pad wear warning message is displayed
Have the brake pads checked and replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible.
The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.
Moderate levels of the brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.
It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

 NOTICE

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire. (→P. 699, 709)

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

2-1. Driving procedures

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes.

■ Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in “P”.

STEP 3 Sit in the driver’s seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns green.

STEP 4



Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

The engine can be started from any “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode.

2-1. Driving procedures

■ Changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode

Modes can be changed by pressing the “ENGINE START STOP” switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 OFF*

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns amber.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns amber.

*:If the shift lever is in a position other than “P” when turning off the engine, the “ENGINE START STOP”

2

When driving

FarmaSOS.com

2-1. Driving procedures

- If the engine does not start

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 119)

- When the steering lock cannot be released



The green indicator light on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

- When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator flashes in amber

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, immediately.

- Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than an hour with the shift lever in “P”, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will automatically turn OFF.

- Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 49

- When the electronic key battery is discharged

→P. 659

- Conditions affecting operation

→P. 46

- Note for the entry function

→P. 51

⚠ CAUTION**■ When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Stopping the engine in an emergency

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, push and hold the “ENGINE START STOP” switch for more than 3 seconds.

However, do not touch the “ENGINE START STOP” switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

⚠ NOTICE**■ To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not leave the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.

■ When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.

2-1. Driving procedures

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

■ Shifting the shift lever



← While the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

← Shift normally.
When shifting the shift lever between “P” and “D”, make sure

■ Shift position uses

Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving* (gears between “1” and “8” are automatically selected)
S	“S” mode driving (→P. 187)

*: Shifting to the “D” position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving conditions. Setting the shift lever to the “D” position is recommended for normal driving.

2

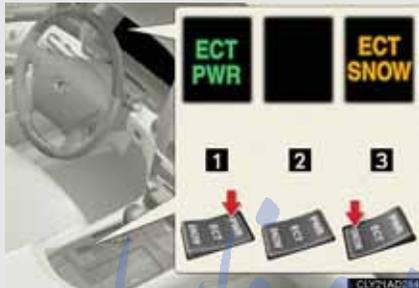
When driving

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ Selecting a driving mode

The following modes can be selected in any shift position to suit driving conditions:



1 Power mode

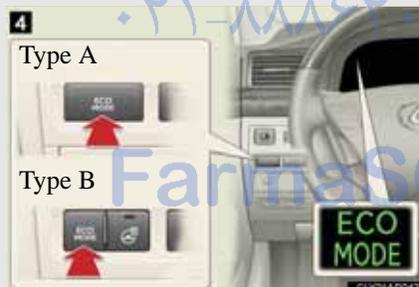
Use power mode for powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions.

2 Normal mode

3 Snow mode

Use snow mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces such as snow.

To cancel power mode or snow mode, press the same side of the switch again.



4 Eco drive mode

Use Eco drive mode for improved fuel efficiency by controlling the driving force and operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

When Eco drive mode is turned on, the multi-information display will change to the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display and Average fuel consumption screen. (→P. 211)

To turn off Eco drive mode, press the “ECO MODE” switch again.

2-1. Driving procedures

Changing shift ranges in “S” mode

To enter “S” mode, shift the shift lever to the “S” position.

“S” mode allows a shift range to be selected, which restricts the highest gear that can be used. This can be used when it is desirable to prevent unnecessary upshifting, such as when driving uphill, or to change the level of engine braking force, such as when driving downhill.



The initial shift range in “S” mode is set automatically between “3” and “7” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.

■ Shift ranges and their functions

- Automatically selects a gear between “1” and “8” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. (The gear is limited according to the selected shift range.)
- You can choose from 8 levels of engine braking force.
- To increase engine braking force, select a lower shift range number.

■ “S” mode

- When the shift range is “6” or lower, holding the shift lever toward “+” sets the shift range to “8”.
- When the shift lever is moved toward “-”, the shift range is downshifted to a range that enables engine braking force that is suitable to driving conditions.
- To prevent the engine from over-revving, upshifting may automatically occur.

■ Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer (in the “S” mode)

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ When driving with the cruise control system

Engine brake will not operate in the “S” mode, even when downshifting to “7”, “6”, “5” or “4”. (→P. 228, 232, 246)

■ Snow mode automatic deactivation

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off after driving in snow mode.

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. (→P. 387) To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P”

→P. 725

■ AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.

The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the “D” and “S” position.

The engine speed may remain high after releasing the accelerator pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

 CAUTION

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

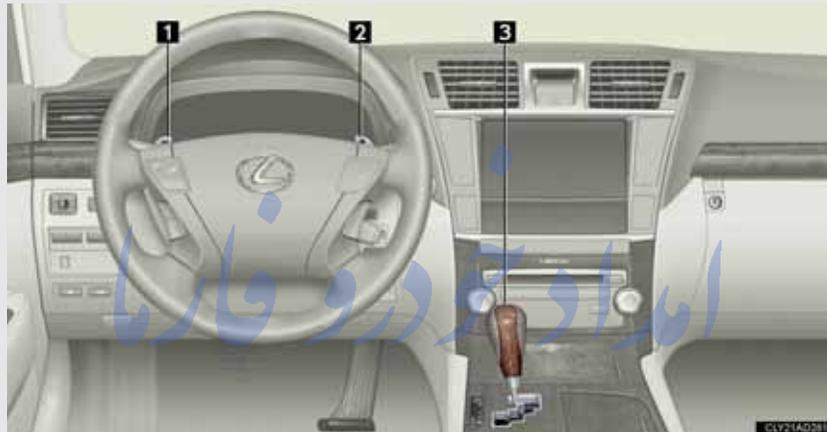
امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

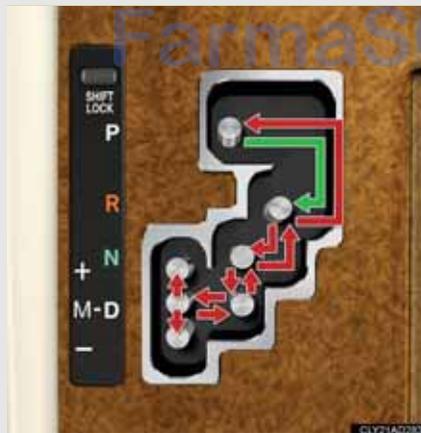
FarmaSOS.com

2-1. Driving procedures

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.



- ❶ “-” paddle shift switch
- ❷ “+” paddle shift switch
- ❸ Shift lever
- Shifting the shift lever



← While the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

← Shift normally.

When shifting the shift lever between “P” and “D”, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

■ Shift position uses

Shift position	Meter display	Function
P		Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R		Reversing
N		Neutral
D		Normal "D" position driving* (gears between "1" and "8" are automatically selected)
	 (paddle shift switches activated)	Shift range selection (→P. 193)
M		"M" mode driving (→P. 195)

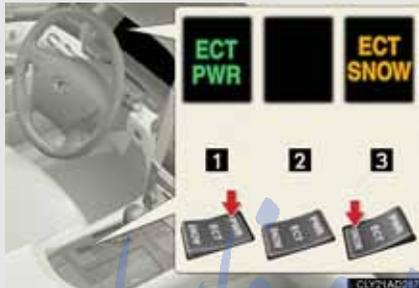
*: Shifting to the "D" position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving conditions. Setting the shift lever to the "D" position is recommended for normal driving.

2

When driving

■ Selecting a driving mode

The following modes can be selected in any shift position to suit driving conditions:



1 Power mode

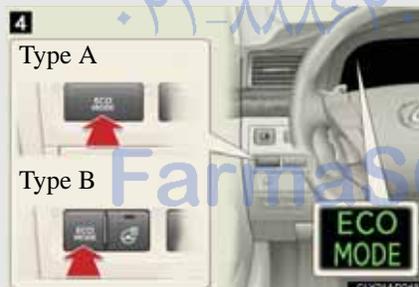
Use power mode for powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions.

2 Normal mode

3 Snow mode

Use snow mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces such as snow.

To cancel power mode or snow mode, press the same side of the switch again.



4 Eco drive mode

Use Eco drive mode for improved fuel efficiency by controlling the driving force and operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

When Eco drive mode is turned on, the multi-information display will change to the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display and Average fuel consumption screen. (→P. 211)

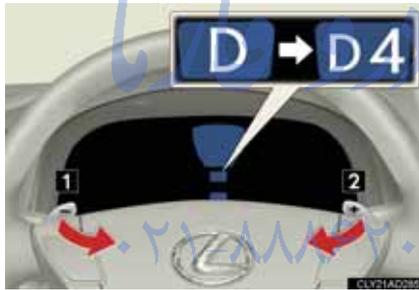
To turn off Eco drive mode, press the “ECO MODE” switch again.

Selecting shift ranges in the “D” position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the “-” paddle shift switch while the shift lever is in the “D” position.

Selection of the shift range restricts the highest gear that can be used. This can be used when it is desirable to prevent unnecessary upshifting, such as when driving uphill, or to change the level of engine braking force, such as when driving downhill.

A shift range can be selected by operating the “-” and “+” paddle shift switches.



1 Lower shift range

Downshifts to a shift range that enables engine braking force suitable to driving conditions.

2 Higher shift range

The selected shift range, from “1” to “8”, will be displayed in the meter.

To return to normal “D” position driving, the “+” paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

When the “-” paddle shift switch is operated in the “D” position, a shift range will be automatically selected. The highest gear of the first shift range will be one gear lower than the gear in use during normal “D” position driving.

2

When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

■ Shift ranges and their functions

- Automatically selects a gear between “1” and “8” according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. (The gear is limited according to the selected shift range.)
- You can choose from 8 levels of engine braking force.
- To increase engine braking force, select a lower shift range number.
- Shift range selection in the “D” position will be deactivated in the following situations:
 - When the vehicle comes to a stop
 - If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time in “6”, “7” or “8” without changing the shift range

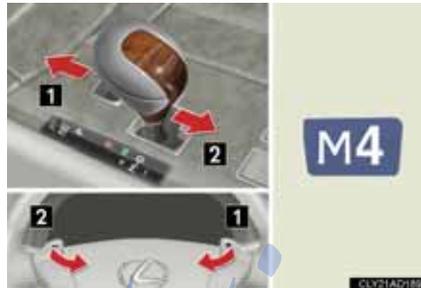
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-1. Driving procedures

Selecting gears in the “M” position

To enter “M” mode, shift the shift lever to the “M” position. Gears can then be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

Each time the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated, the gear changes up or down one gear and the selected gear, “M1” through “M8”, will be set.

The selected gear, from “1” to “8”, will be displayed in the meter.

When in the “M” mode, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in the “M” mode, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When the automatic transmission fluid or engine coolant temperature is low.
- When the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high.

2

When driving

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ When driving with the cruise control system

Engine braking will not occur during shift range selection in the “D” position, even when downshifting to range “7”, “6”, “5” or “4”. (→P. 228, 232, 246)

■ Power mode and snow mode automatic deactivation

Power mode and snow mode are automatically deactivated if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF after driving in power mode or snow mode.

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. (→P. 387) To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P”

→P. 725

■ If the automatic transmission fluid temperature warning message is displayed

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature warning message is displayed while driving, make sure you return to normal “D” position driving and reduce speed by easing off the accelerator pedal. Stop the vehicle in a safe place, shift the shift lever to the “P” position and let the engine idle until the warning message goes out.

When the warning message goes out, the vehicle can be driven again.

If the warning message does not go out after waiting a while, have your vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.

The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the “D” position. (Shifting the shift lever to the “M” position cancels the function.)

The engine speed may remain high after releasing the accelerator pedal. 197 This does not indicate a malfunction.

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

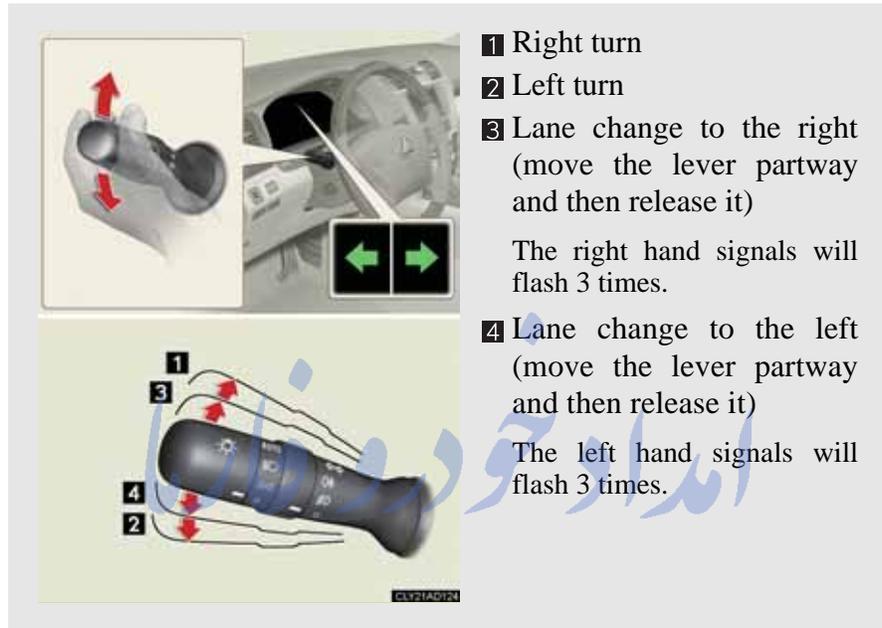
امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-1. Driving procedures

Turn signal lever



2

When driving

- Turn signals can be operated when
The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- If the indicators flash faster than usual
Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.
- If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed
Operate the lever again.
- To discontinue flashing of the turn signals during a lane change
Operate the lever in the opposite direction.
- Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional
The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 762)

2-1. Driving procedures

For the parking brake, an electrical parking brake system is adopted.

■ Manual mode



- 1 Press the switch to set the parking brake.

The parking brake indicator light will come on. (→P. 202)

Press and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving. The parking brake is applied only while the switch is being pressed.

- 2 Pull the switch to release the parking brake.

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. Make sure that

■ Automatic mode

The parking brake is set or released automatically according to shift lever operation. When the vehicle is accelerated, the parking brake is released. When the vehicle is parked, the parking brake is set.



Press the switch.

When automatic mode is turned on, the indicator on the switch comes on.

To turn automatic mode off, press the switch again.

When automatic mode is turned on, it operates in the following manner:

- When the shift lever is moved into “P”
The parking brake will be set.
- When the shift lever is moved out of “P”

The parking brake will be released.

2-1. Driving procedures

■ Parking brake operation

- When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.
- If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ Parking brake indicator light

- Depending on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode, the parking brake indicator light will come on and stay on as described below:
IGNITION ON mode: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
Not in IGNITION ON mode: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Parking brake operation sound

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 687, 696)

Depending on the condition, the parking brake indicator light may flash.

■ Usage in winter time

See “Winter driving tips” for parking brake usage in winter time. (→P. 366)

 NOTICE

■ When parking the vehicle

Before you leave the vehicle, set the parking brake, shift the shift lever to “P” and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ When the system malfunctions

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages. (→P. 696)

■ When the parking brake cannot be released

The parking brake system may be malfunctioning. If this occurs, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Use the parking brake release tool to manually release the parking brake. (→P. 726)

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

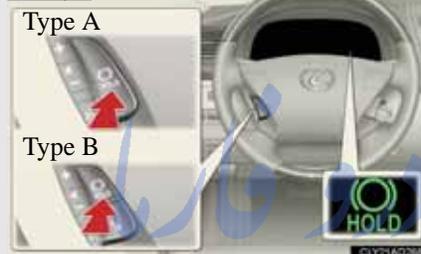
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-1. Driving procedures

When the vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal, the brake hold system keeps the brakes applied. The system releases the brakes when the accelerator pedal is depressed to allow smooth start off.

STEP 1



Press the brake hold switch.

The brake hold standby indicator () comes on when the system is turned on.

► Without paddle shift switches

STEP 2 Depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle while the shift lever is in “D”, “S” or “N”.

The brakes will be held. The brake hold operated indicator () comes on while the brakes are being held.

STEP 3 Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in “D” or “S” to accelerate the vehicle.

The brakes will be released.

► With paddle shift switches

STEP 2 Depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle while the shift lever is in “D”, “M” or “N”.

The brakes will be held. The brake hold operated indicator () comes on while the brakes are being held.

STEP 3 Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in “D” or “M” to accelerate the vehicle.

The brakes will be released.

■ Conditions under which the brake hold system will not turn on or will turn off

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The trunk or hood is not closed.
- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.

If any of the above conditions are detected while the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold operated indicator light will go off.

■ Brake hold function

- If any of the following are detected while the system is holding the brakes, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will be set automatically.
 - The trunk or hood is opened.
 - The driver's door is opened.
 - The driver's seat belt is released.
 - The brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the switch again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. The multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation.

■ When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes

The parking brake will not be released automatically. Release the parking brake by operating the parking brake switch, making sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P. 200)

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 687, 696)

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When stopped on a slippery road

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

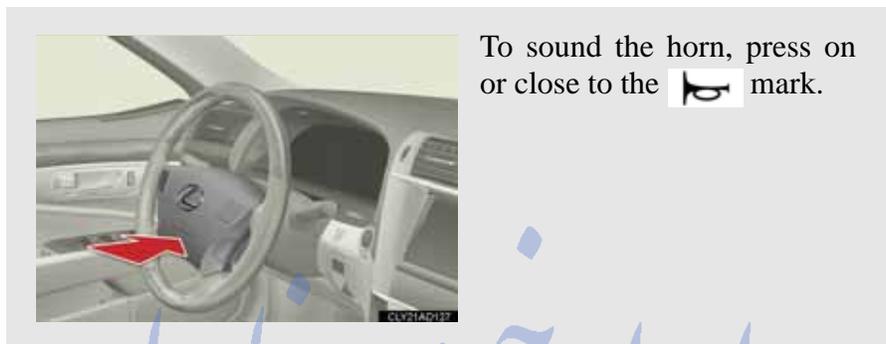
NOTICE

■ When parking the vehicle

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the “ENGINE START STOP” switch, depress the brake pedal, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to “P”.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com



2

When driving

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-2. Instrument cluster Gauges and meters



The units used on the speedometer, tachometer and fuel gauge display may differ depending on the model/type.

The following gauges, meters and display illuminate when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

- 1 Tachometer
Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute
- 2 Multi-information display
→P. 210
- 3 Speedometer
Displays the vehicle speed
- 4 Fuel gauge
Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank
- 5 Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset buttons

2

When driving

2-2. Instrument cluster

6 Odometer and trip meter

- Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

- Trip meter

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters “A” and “B” can be used to record and display different distances independently.

7 Shift position and shift range

→P. 184, 190

8 Instrument panel light control buttons

9 Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset buttons



1 Changes the display

2 Resets the trip meter currently displayed to “0”

Instrument panel light control buttons

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



- 1 Darker
- 2 Brighter

⚠ NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the engine and its components
 - Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
 - The engine may be overheating if the temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 739)

2

When driving

FarmaSOS.com

2-2. Instrument cluster

Indicators and warning lights

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

► Instrument cluster



The units used on the speedometer, tachometer and fuel gauge display, indicators and warning lights may differ depending on the model/type.

► Center panel



■ Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

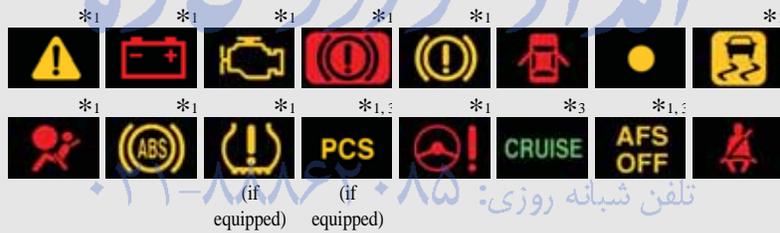
	Turn signal indicator (→P. 199)		"SPORT" mode indicator (if equipped) (→P. 279)
	Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 215)		"COMFORT" mode indicator (if equipped) (→P. 279)
	Automatic High Beam indicator (if equipped) (→P. 218)		*1 "HEIGHT HIGH" indicator (if equipped) (→P. 279)
	Tail light indicator (→P. 215)		Cruise control indicator (→P. 228, 232, 246)
	Front fog light indicator (→P. 223)		*1 "AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 216)
	Rear fog light indicator (→P. 223)		*1,2 Slip indicator (→P. 341)
	"ECT SNOW" indicator (→P. 186, 192)		*1 VSC off indicator (→P. 342)
	"ECT PWR" indicator (→P. 186, 192)		Parking brake indicator (→P. 200)

2-2. Instrument cluster



■ Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 687)



*1: These lights turn on when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, for details.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

 CAUTION

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, immediately if this occurs.

2

When driving

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-2. Instrument cluster

Multi-information display

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, including the current outside air temperature.



- Outside temperature

The temperature range that can be displayed is from -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F).

- Trip information (→P. 211)

Displays cruising range, fuel consumption and other cruising-related information

- Lexus parking assist-sensor display* (→P. 263)

- Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped)* (→P. 232)

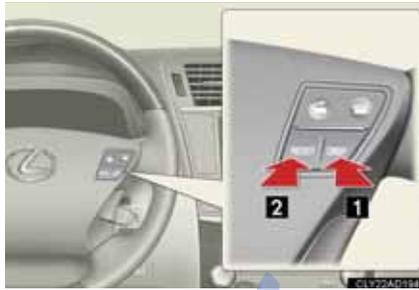
- Adaptive cruise control with full-speed range display (if equipped)* (→P. 246)

- Lane-keeping assist display (if equipped)* (→P. 272)

- Warning messages (→P. 696)

Automatically displayed

Trip information



1 “DISP” switch

Display items can be switched by pressing the “DISP” switch.

2 “RESET” switch

■ Cruising range

Displays estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
When refueling, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off, the display may not be updated.

■ Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display and Average fuel consumption

Displays Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display and the average fuel consumption since the function was reset.

- The function can be reset by pressing the “RESET” switch when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
On vehicles with a navigation system, the “Past record” screen on the touch screen will also be updated.
For details on the “Past record” screen, refer to the “Navigation System Owner's Manual”.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ Current fuel consumption

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

- **Average fuel consumption after refueling**
Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled.
Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.
- **Distance after refueling**
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the vehicle was last refueled.
- **Elapsed time**
Displays the elapsed time since it was last reset.
The function can be reset by pressing the “RESET” switch when the elapsed time is displayed.
- **Average vehicle speed**
Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset.
The function can be reset by pressing the “RESET” switch when the average vehicle speed is displayed.
- **Tire inflation pressure (if equipped)**
Displays inflation pressure of each tire. There is no correlation between the order of the displayed values and the tire positions.
It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- **Eco Driving Indicator customization**
Eco Driving Indicator Light can be deactivated.
Eco Driving Indicator Light can be activated or deactivated by pressing the “DISP” switch for longer than 1 second when the Eco Driving Indicator customization screen is displayed.

■ System check display

After switching the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode, “SYSTEM CHECK” is displayed while system operation is checked. When the system check is complete, the normal screen will return.

■ Eco Driving Indicator



1 Eco Driving Indicator Light

During Eco-friendly acceleration operation (Eco driving), Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on.

2 Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

Suggests Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

3 Zone of Eco driving

4 Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

In case over-use of the accelerator causes the vehicle to exceed Zone of Eco driving, the right of Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will blink and Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn

2

When driving

► Without paddle shift switches

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate in the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in anything other than “D”.
- The driving mode is set to power mode or snow mode. (→P. 186)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

► With paddle shift switches

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate in the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in anything other than “D”.
- The paddle shift switches are used. (→P. 193)
- The driving mode is set to power mode or snow mode. (→P. 192)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

2-2. Instrument cluster

■ Outside temperature display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

■ To turn off the background images on the trip information screen

When information is displayed together with a background image, press the “DISP” switch for 1 second or more.

Pressing the switch again for longer than 1 second turns on the background images.

■ Tire inflation pressure

Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using other gauges.

■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

The following information will be reset:

- Cruising range
- Average fuel consumption
- Average fuel consumption after refueling
- Distance after refueling
- Elapsed time
- Average vehicle speed

■ Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem to continue using the display.

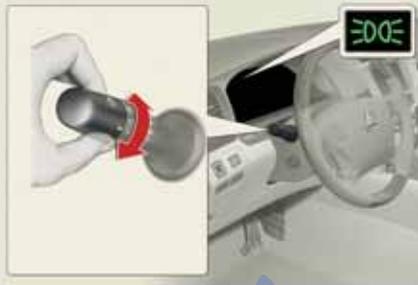
■ Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

Setting of available languages can be changed.

(Customizable features →P. 762)

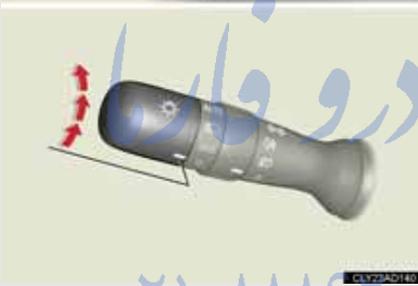
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.



OFF The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

HEADLIGHTS The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

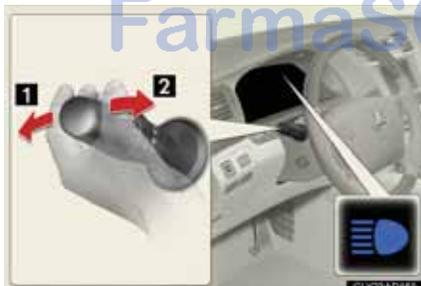


AUTO The headlights, other exterior lights and instrument panel lights turn on and off automatically. (When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON

2

When driving

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

Release to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

AFS

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 10 km/h (6 mph) or higher.

■ Deactivating AFS



On/off

The indicator turns on when the AFS is deactivated.

■ Daytime running light system (if equipped)

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights and tail lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction

■ Automatic light off system

- When the light switch is in  position: The headlights turn off automatically if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF.
- When the light switch is in the “AUTO” position: The headlights and tail lights turn off automatically if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to  or  position.

■ Light reminder buzzer

A buzzer sounds when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF or switched to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ If the “AFS OFF” indicator flashes...

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional
Settings of the light sensor sensitivity can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 762)

 NOTICE

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

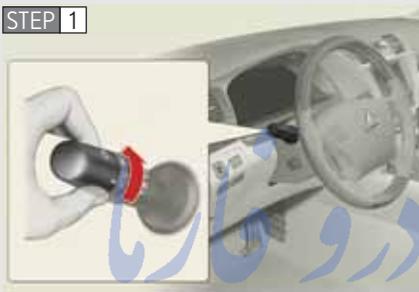
Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers Automatic High Beam*

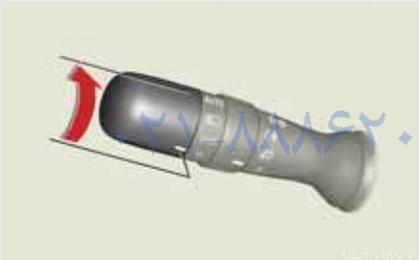
The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle camera sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

■ Activating the Automatic High Beam system

STEP 1



Headlight switch in “AUTO” position.



STEP 2



Push the lever away from you.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active.

*: If equipped

■ High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):

- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.

■ Turning the high beam on/off manually

► Switching to low beam



Pull the lever to original position.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

► Switching to high beam



Turn the light switch to  position.

- The Automatic High Beam can be operated when
The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- Camera sensor detection information
 - High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
 - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve.
 - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another.
 - High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
 - House lights, street lights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.
 - The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
 - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
 - Road conditions (wetness, ice, snow etc.)
 - The number of passengers and amount of baggage
 - High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.

- In the situations below, the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose nearby pedestrians to the high beam. Therefore, you should consider turning the high beams on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam System.
 - In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
 - The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc.
 - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
 - The inside rear view mirror or camera sensor is deformed or dirty.
 - Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
 - Vehicles ahead have headlights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or have are not aimed properly.
 - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
 - When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks etc.)
 - When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
 - There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
 - The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
 - The vehicle is listing or tilting, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed etc.
 - The Automatic High Beam indicator is flashing.
 - The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.
- If the Automatic High Beam indicator flashes
It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional
The Automatic High Beam can be turned off.
(Customizable features →P. 762)

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

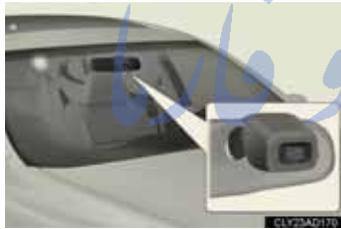
CAUTION

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

NOTICE

■ Notes when using the Automatic High Beam system

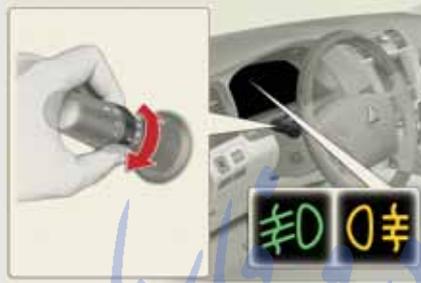


Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.

- Do not touch the camera sensor.
- Do not subject the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor to a strong impact.
- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not spill liquid onto the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor.
- Do not apply window tinting or stickers to the camera sensor or the area of windshield near the camera sensor.
- Do not place items on the dashboard. There is a possibility that the camera sensor will mistake items reflected in the windshield for streetlights, the headlights of other vehicles, etc.
- Do not install a parking tag or any other accessories near or around the inside rear view mirror and the camera sensor.
- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.
- Do not replace windshield with non-genuine windshield.
Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

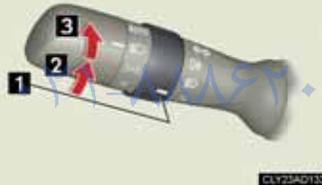
2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. The fog lights can be used when the headlights or front position lights are turned on. (The rear fog lights can be used when the front fog lights are turned on.)



- 1 Off
- 2 Front fog lights on
- 3 Both front and rear fog lights on (Rotating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog lights off.)

Releasing the switch returns the ring to the **0** position.



2

When driving

FarmaSOS.com

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers Windshield wipers and washer

With “AUTO” selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



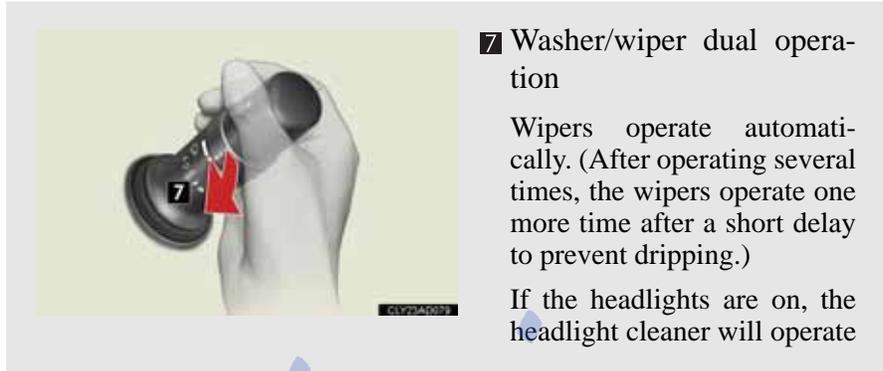
- 1 Rain-sensing wiper operation
- 2 Low speed wiper operation
- 3 High speed wiper operation
- 4 Temporary operation



- 5 Increases the sensitivity
- 6 Decreases the sensitivity



2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers



- The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

- Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation

With the settings other than “AUTO” also, the time until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs is changed depending on vehicle speed.

With low speed wiper operation selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.

(However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest, the mode cannot be switched.)

FarmaSOS.com

2

When driving

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

■ Raindrop sensor



- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.

- If the wiper switch is turned to “AUTO” position while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wiper will operate once to show that auto mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 90°C (194°F) or higher, or -15°C (5°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than “AUTO”.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked and if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in “AUTO” mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in “AUTO” mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ When the washer fluid tank is empty

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers Headlight cleaner switch

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.



Press the switch to clean the headlights.

- The headlight cleaner can be operated when
When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.
- Windshield washer linked operation
When the windshield washer is operated with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights on, the headlight cleaner will operate once. (→P. 224)

NOTICE

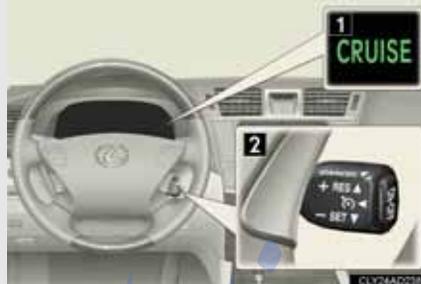
- When the washer fluid tank is empty
Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the switch is pressed continually.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems Cruise control*

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.



- 1 Indicator
- 2 Cruise control switch

■ Setting the vehicle speed



Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

*: If equipped

■ Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

■ Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in the “D” or range “4” or higher of “S” has been selected.
(without paddle shift switches)
- The shift lever is in “D”.
(with paddle shift switches)
- Range “4” or higher of “D” has been selected by using the paddle shift.
(with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ Automatic cruise control cancellation

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset vehicle speed.
At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.

■ If the cruise control indicator light flashes

Press the “ON-OFF” button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.

If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

 CAUTION

- To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake
Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.
- Situations unsuitable for cruise control
Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
 - In heavy traffic
 - On roads with sharp bends
 - On winding roads
 - On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
 - On steep hills
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-4. Using other driving systems

Dynamic radar cruise control*

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.



- 1 Indicator
- 2 Display
- 3 Set speed
- 4 Cruise control switch
- 5 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control button

- Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)



STEP 1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

*: If equipped



Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

■ Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



- 1 Increases the speed
- 2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

- When the set speed is shown in “MPH”
 - Fine adjustment: By approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) each time the lever is operated
 - Large adjustment: By approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

2-4. Using other driving systems

- When the set speed is shown in “km/h”

▶ Except for Morocco

Fine adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

▶ For Morocco

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 238), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

■ Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

- 1 Long
- 2 Medium
- 3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle

■ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

■ Canceling and resuming the speed control



- 1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

- 2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h

3 Example of follow-up cruising

When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

4 Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

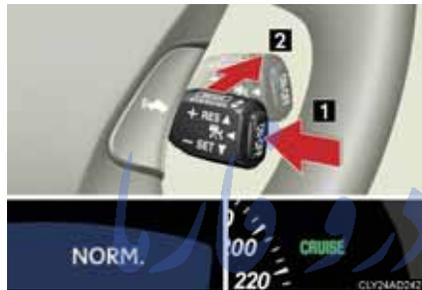
■ Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode differs from vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed regardless of whether or not there are other vehicles in the lane ahead.



1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode.

(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately 1 second.)

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting:
→P. 233

Canceling and resuming the
speed setting: →P. 235

■ Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in the “D” or range “4” or higher of “S” has been selected.
(without paddle shift switches)
- The shift lever is in “D”.
(with paddle shift switches)
- Range “4” or higher of “D” has been selected by using the paddle shift.
(with paddle shift switches)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

■ Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wiper switch is set to the “AUTO” mode or the high speed wiper operation position).
- When snow mode is set.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Automatic cancelation of constant speed control

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.

■ Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.) Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



- 1 Grille cover
- 2 Radar sensor

■ Warning lights, messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 687, 696)

■ Certification

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR004 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að DNMWR004 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR004 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR004 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR004 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
<i>ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR004 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.</i>
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR004 står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR004 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR004 splní základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR004 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR004 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR004 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Hiernit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR004 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at udstyret DNMWR004 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR004 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR004 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR004 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR004 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR004 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR004 jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Ar šo, DENSO CORPORATION, deklarē, ka DNMWR004 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR004 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

Be aware of the set vehicle speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes etc.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

● Assisting the driver to measure following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

● Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

● Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle

The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ To avoid inadvertent cruise control activation

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON-OFF" button when not in use.

 CAUTION

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 237) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

⚠ CAUTION**■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly**

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the radar sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively.

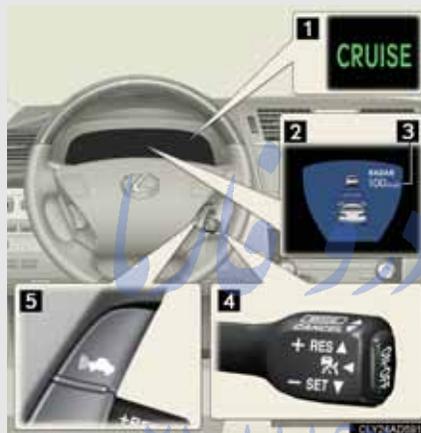
Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Adaptive cruise control with full-speed range*

Adaptive cruise control with full-speed range supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates or stops in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.



- 1 Indicator
- 2 Display
- 3 Set speed
- 4 Cruise control switch
- 5 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button

- Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)



STEP 1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

*: If equipped



Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

If this is performed when vehicle speed is less than about 50 km/h (30 mph) and the vehicle ahead can be detected, your vehicle will start following the vehicle ahead of you at a set speed of about 50 km/h (30 mph) (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode only).

■ Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

(Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the

2-4. Using other driving systems

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

- When the set speed is shown in “MPH”
Fine adjustment: By approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) each time the lever is operated
Large adjustment: By approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held
- When the set speed is shown in “km/h”
Fine adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) each time the lever is operated
Large adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 254), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

FarmaSOS.com

■ Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

- 1 Long
- 2 Medium
- 3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

■ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

2-4. Using other driving systems

- Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control



After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, push the lever up.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of you starts off.

- Canceling and resuming the speed control



- 1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.

Push the lever toward you to cancel cruise control.

The setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed while driving.

(When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, applying the brakes does not cancel the setting.)

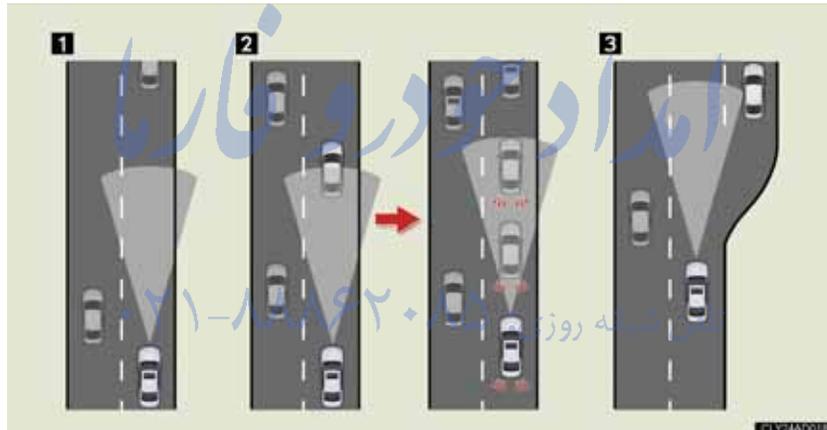
- 2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor and camera sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 120 m (400 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



1 Example of constant speed cruising When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

2 Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising

When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead. When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop. After the vehicle ahead starts off, pushing the cruise control lever up or depressing the accelerator pedal will resume follow-up cruising.

3 Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

■ Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set

- At the instant the accelerator is applied

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

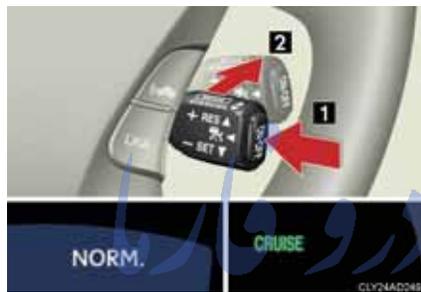
FarmaSOS.com

2

When driving

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode differs from vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed regardless of whether or not there are other vehicles in the lane ahead.



1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode.

(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately 1 second.)

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting:
→P. 247

Canceling and resuming the
speed setting: →P. 250

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-4. Using other driving systems

-
- Adaptive cruise control with full-speed range can be set when
 - The shift lever is in the “D” or range “4” or higher of “S” has been selected.
(without paddle shift switches)
 - The shift lever is in “D”.
(with paddle shift switches)
 - Range “4” or higher of “D” has been selected by using the paddle shift.
(with paddle shift switches)
 - Vehicle speed is above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).
 - Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.
 - Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations:

 - Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) when there are no vehicle ahead.
 - There are no longer vehicles ahead when actual vehicle speed is below 40 km/h (25 mph).
 - VSC is activated.
 - The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
 - The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wiper switch is set to the “AUTO” mode or the high speed wiper operation position).
 - When snow mode is set.
 - The parking brake is operated.
 - The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
 - Pre-crash brake assist is activated.

- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:

- The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The trunk or hood is opened.
- The vehicle has been stopped for about 3 minutes.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Automatic cancelation of constant speed control

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.

■ Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice or plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.) Adaptive cruise control with full-speed range is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



- 1 Grille cover
- 2 Radar sensor

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Camera sensor

To ensure that the system functions correctly, keep the windshield clean at all times.



■ Warning lights, messages and buzzers for adaptive cruise control with full-speed range

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 687, 696)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ Certification

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR004 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að DNMWR004 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR004 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR004 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR004 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
<i>ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR004 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.</i>
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR004 står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR004 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR004 splní základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR004 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR004 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR004 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Hiernit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR004 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at udstyret DNMWR004 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR004 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR004 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR004 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR004 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR004 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR004 jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Ar šo, DENSO CORPORATION, deklarē, ka DNMWR004 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR004 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Before using adaptive cruise control with full-speed range**
Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set vehicle speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes etc.
- **To avoid inadvertent adaptive cruise control with full-speed range activation**
Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.
- **Situations unsuitable for adaptive cruise control with full-speed range**
Do not use adaptive cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
 - In heavy traffic
 - On roads with sharp bends
 - On winding roads
 - On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
 - On steep downhill, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
 - At entrances to expressways
 - When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
 - When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

■ When the radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 252) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the radar sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively.

Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

2

When driving

FarmaSOS.com

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

- To ensure that the camera sensor functions correctly
Observe the following precautions:
 - Keep the windshield clean at all times.
Camera sensor performance may deteriorate due to the presence of rain-drops, condensation, ice or snow on the windshield.
 - Do not attach stickers or other items to the area of the windshield near the camera sensor.
 - When it is cold, using the heater to blow air to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up. This will have a negative effect on the camera image. In such a case, use the windshield defogger to clear the windshield.
 - Do not place anything on the dashboard.
Camera sensor performance may deteriorate due to the image reflected on the windshield.
 - Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
 - Do not remove or change the installation position of the camera sensor.
The direction of the camera sensor is precisely set.
 - Do not disassemble the camera sensor or subject it to a strong impact or force.

FarmaSOS.com

The distance to obstacles measured by the sensors is communicated via the multi-information display and a buzzer when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

■ Types of sensors



- 1 Front side sensors
- 2 Front corner sensors
- 3 Front center sensors
- 4 Rear corner sensors
- 5 Rear center sensors

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor switch



On/off

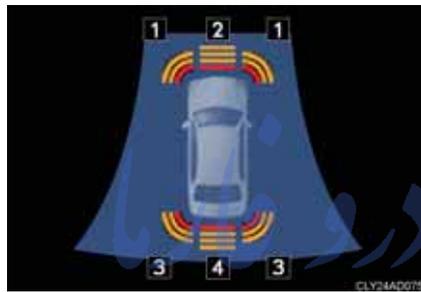
When on, the indicator light comes on and the buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.

Press the button to switch the on/off mode.

Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, the graphic is shown on the multi-information display and touch screen according to position and distance to the obstacle.

■ Multi-information display



- 1 Front side sensors and front corner sensors operation
- 2 Front center sensors operation
- 3 Rear corner sensors operation
- 4 Rear center sensors operation

■ Touch screen



When the vehicle is moving forward

The graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 271)



When the vehicle is moving backward

A simplified image is displayed on the right upper corner of the touch screen when an obstacle is detected.

The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

■ Center sensors

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example of front center sensor				
Buzzer	Slow	Medium	Fast	Continuous

■ Corner sensors and side sensors

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example of front right sensor	-			
Buzzer	-	Medium	Fast	Continuous

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Detection level and approximate distance to an obstacle

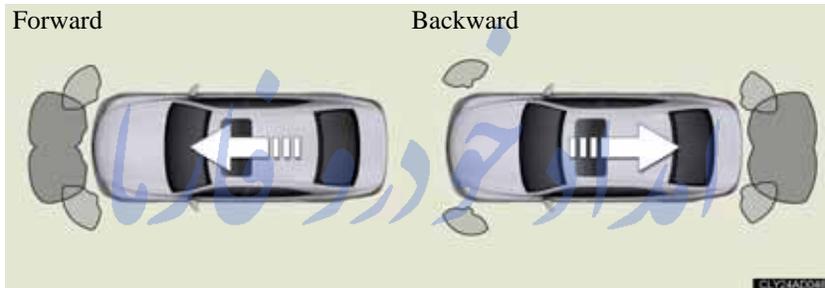
Level	1	2	3	4
Front side sensors	-	50 to 37.5 cm (1.6 to 1.2 ft.)	37.5 to 30 cm (1.2 to 1.0 ft.)	30 cm (1.0 ft.) or less
Front corner sensors	-	60 to 37.5 cm (2.0 to 1.2 ft.)	37.5 to 30 cm (1.2 to 1.0 ft.)	30 cm (1.0 ft.) or less
Front center sensors	100 to 50 cm (3.3 to 1.6 ft.)	50 to 37.5 cm (1.6 to 1.2 ft.)	37.5 to 30 cm (1.2 to 1.0 ft.)	30 cm (1.0 ft.) or less
Rear corner sensors	-	60 to 37.5 cm (2.0 to 1.2 ft.)	37.5 to 25 cm (1.2 to 0.8 ft.)	25 cm (0.8 ft.) or less
Rear center sensors	150 to 60 cm (4.9 to 2.0 ft.)	60 to 45 cm (2.0 to 1.5 ft.)	45 to 35 cm (1.5 to 1.1 ft.)	35 cm (1.1 ft.) or less

Sensors that operate and detection range

The following diagrams show the sensor detection range. Note that sensors may not be able to detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

■ Sensors that operate

► With intelligent parking assist



► Without intelligent parking assist

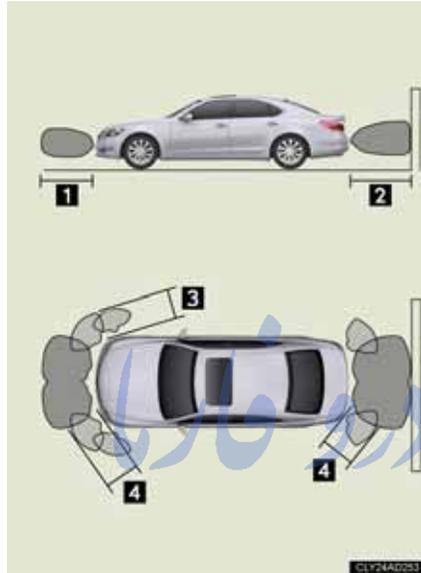


2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Detection range of the sensors



1 Approx. 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

2 Approx. 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

3 Approx. 50 cm (1.6 ft.)

4 Approx. 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors may not be able to detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

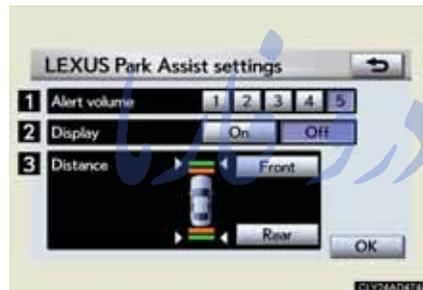
Customization of the Lexus parking assist-sensor

The buzzer volume, display and buzzer timing and display of the graphic on the screen can be customized.

STEP 1 Press “SETUP” to display the “Setup” screen. (→P. 374)

STEP 2 Touch “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “LEXUS Park Assist” on the “Vehicle settings” screen.



- 1 Alert volume setting
- 2 Display on/off
- 3 Alert distance setting

2

When driving

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.
 - There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
 - A sensor is frozen.
 - A sensor is covered in any way.
 - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
 - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass
 - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
 - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
 - A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
 - The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or radio antenna.
 - Towing eyelets are installed.
 - A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
 - The vehicle is approaching a tall or right-angled curb.
 - In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
 - A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
 - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
 - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
 - Sharply-angled objects
 - Low obstacles
 - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

■ Touch screen display

If an obstacle is detected while the vehicle is reversing, the warning indicator will appear in the top right of the screen even if the display setting has been set to “Off”.

- If the display flashes and a message is displayed
→P. 696

⚠ CAUTION
<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Caution when using the Lexus parking assist-sensor Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident. <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).● Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.
⚠ NOTICE
<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Notes when washing the vehicle Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area. Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

2-4. Using other driving systems

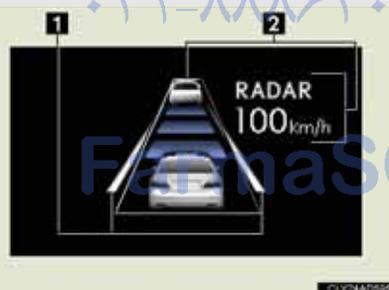
While driving on a freeway or motor highway that has lane markings, this system recognizes the lanes using a camera as a sensor to assist the driver with staying in the lane. The LKA system has two functions.

■ Lane departure warning function

When there is a possibility that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, it alerts the driver using rapid beeping, indications on the multi-information display, and sensory warning* via the steering wheel.

*: A slight steering torque is applied for a short period of time in the direction of the center of the lane.

Operation conditions: The LKA system must be on and vehicle speed is between approximately 50 km/h (30 mph) and 200 km/h (125 mph).



1 Lane line display

Lane line display is shown when the LKA system is on. According to conditions, the display changes as follows:



: Due to a lane marking not being recognized by the system and so forth the LKA system functions are temporarily cancelled. (→P. 276)



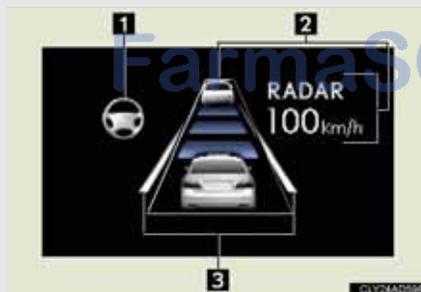
: A lane marking is

*: If equipped

■ Lane keeping assist function

When the lane keeping assist function is active, a slight steering torque will be continuously applied to the steering wheel to assist the driver's steering operations maintain the vehicle in a central position within the lane.

Operation conditions: This function will be active when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode of the adaptive cruise control with full-speed range (→P. 246) is set to approximately 75 km/h (45 mph) or more and actual vehicle speed is between approximately 75 km/h (45 mph) and 180 km/h (106 mph) while the LKA system is on.



■ Adaptive cruise control with full-speed range display

The adaptive cruise control with full-speed range display is shown when the adaptive cruise control is being used. (→P. 246)

■ Steering wheel display

Shown when the lane keeping assist function is active.

■ Adaptive cruise control with full-speed range display

Shows the operation status of the adaptive cruise control with full-speed range.

■ Lane line display

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ LKA switch



Turns the LKA system on and off.

When on, the lane keeping assist indicator light comes on.

■ Temporary cancellation of the LKA system functions

If any of the following occurs, the LKA system functions will automatically be temporarily cancelled. The functions will resume after the necessary operating conditions have returned.

- The turn signal lever is operated.
- The steering wheel is turned as far as necessary to cause the vehicle to change lanes.
- The vehicle speed deviates from the operating range of the LKA system functions.*
- The lane lines cannot be recognized while driving.*
- The wiper operates continuously.*

The signal may not beep when the LKA system functions are cancelled because the notification of adaptive cruise control with full-speed range cancellation takes priority over the LKA system functions cancellation.

- The brake pedal is depressed.

The lane keeping assist function will not resume even after the brake pedal is released because depressing the brake pedal also cancels the adaptive radar cruise control. However, the lane departure warning function resumes operation.

*: When the lane keeping assist function is canceled while it is in use, a buzzer will beep twice to inform the driver that the function has been canceled.

■ When the lane departure warning function is activated

The lane departure warning function will be temporarily canceled and will not resume until a few seconds elapse after it is activated.

■ Hands-free driving warning

If the steering wheel is not operated for about 15 seconds on a straight road or about 5 seconds on a curve, the signal will beep twice, indications on the multi-information display will flash, and the lane keeping assist function will be temporarily cancelled. If you drive the vehicle with your hands lightly touching the steering wheel, it may also be detected as hands-free driving.

■ When the vehicle has been parked under the scorching sun

The LKA system functions may not operate for a while when driving first commences. The functions will become operational once the cabin temperature decreases and the camera's surrounding area returns to an appropriate temperature. Therefore, turn the LKA system off, and after a while turn it back on. (→P. 280)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

 CAUTION

■ Before using the LKA system

Do not rely on the LKA system to remain within a selected lane. The LKA system is not designed to enable inattentive driving. The steering wheel should be operated by the driver to maintain the vehicle in a suitable position within its lane. Always drive carefully.

■ Turn the LKA off while driving in any of the following conditions:

Do not use LKA in any of the following situations.

Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- When driving with snow tires, snow chains, a spare tire, or similar equipment.
- When driving with non-standard parts or aftermarket equipment installed. (including modified tires and suspensions, etc.)
- When there are objects or structures along the roadside that might be misinterpreted as lane markers. (such as guardrails, curb, reflector posts, etc.)
- Where there are wheel ruts, icy trademarks, etc. or if snow remains on the road surface.
- When there are shadows on the road running parallel with lane markers, or if a shadow covers the lane markers.
- When there are visible lines on the pavement from road repairs, or if the remains of old lane markers are still visible on the road.
- When driving on slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
- When driving in a lane other than the driving or passing lanes on a freeway, highway or motorway.
- When driving on a road with lane closures due to maintenance, or when driving in a temporary lane.
- When driving on winding roads or roads that are rough or uneven.

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

- In the following situations, the LKA will not work, or will not perform reliably:
 - When lane markers are interrupted or are not present, such as before a tollbooth (tollgate).
 - When lane markers are only on one side of the road.
 - When driving on a sharp curve.
 - When lanes are extremely narrow or extremely wide.
 - When the vehicle leans to one side an unusual amount due to a heavy load or improper tire inflation pressure.
 - When the following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short.
 - When the lane markers are broken or faint.
 - When lane markers are obscured or partially obscured by sand, dirt, etc.
 - When driving on a particularly bright road surface, such as concrete.
 - When driving on a road surface that is bright due to reflected light.
 - When driving in a location where the light level changes rapidly, such as the entrance to or exit from a tunnel.
 - When sunlight or the headlights of oncoming vehicles are shining directly into the camera lens.
 - When driving on roads that are branching or merging.
 - When pavement lane markers are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, etc.
 - When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, previous rainfall, standing water, etc.
 - When the vehicle experiences strong up-and-down motion such as when driving on an extremely rough road or on a seam in the pavement.
 - When headlight brightness is reduced due to dirt on the lenses, or when the headlights are misaligned.
 - When driving with a strong crosswind.

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

■ Camera sensor



Observe the following to ensure that the LKA system functions correctly.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
LKA performance may deteriorate due to the presence of raindrops, condensation, ice or snow on the windshield.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near the camera sensor.
- When the windshield fogs up, use the windshield defogger to dry the windshield.
During cold weather, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up, having a negative effect on the images.
- Do not place anything on the dashboard.
The camera sensor may recognize the image reflected on the windshield as lane markers by mistake.
- Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
- Do not change the installation position of the camera sensor or remove it.
The direction of the camera sensor is precisely adjusted.
- Do not subject the camera sensor to strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the camera sensor.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Electronically modulated air suspension

The electronically modulated air suspension is a system that allows selection of vehicle height and damping of the shock absorbers according to road and driving conditions.

■ Vehicle height adjustment

The vehicle's height is maintained at the selected level regardless of the number of occupants and luggage weight. When high mode is selected, vehicle height increases making it less likely for the vehicle to come into contact with the road surface, such as when driving up or down inclined roads.



Turns high mode on or off.

When on, the “HEIGHT HIGH” indicator will come on.

■ Damping mode selection

The damping mode of the shock absorbers can be selected as desired.



1 Sport mode (firm)

When compared with normal mode, driving stability is improved.

2 Normal mode (normal)

While giving priority to ride comfort, driving stability is maintained.

3 Comfort mode (soft)

When compared to normal

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Operating sound of the air suspension compressor

When the vehicle height is lowered, such as when entering or loading the vehicle, or high mode is selected, the compressor may operate and a whirring sound may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Be sure to stop the engine in the following situations in order to stop operation of the electronically modulated air suspension:

- The vehicle is parked on a curb.
- Any of the wheels is stuck in a ditch.
- It is necessary to jack up the vehicle.
- It is necessary to tow the vehicle with part of it lifted.

If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch remains in IGNITION ON mode, the vehicle height may change, and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in accidental damage.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

2-4. Using other driving systems

The Lexus parking assist monitor and intelligent parking assist systems support the driver during reverse parking by displaying guidelines and a rear-view image. When in assist mode, the intelligent parking assist controls the steering wheel to help the driver reverse the vehicle into a target parking position set on the screen.

The illustrations of the display shown are examples only and may differ from actual images. When parking in a space on the opposite side to that shown in the examples, be sure to substitute left for right and vice versa when operating the steering wheel.



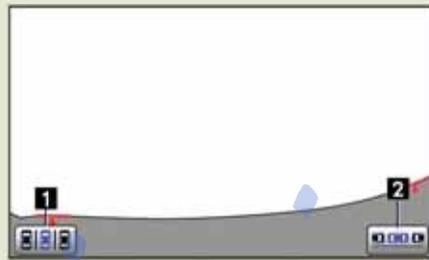
Lexus parking assist monitor/intelligent parking assist will activate when the shift lever is in “R” position.

If you move the lever out of “R” position, the parking assist monitor/intelligent parking assist will be deactivated.

As the intelligent parking assist only assists with parking in a set target parking position, there are times when the system will be unable to render this assistance, depending on factors such as road surface or vehicle condition, or the distance to the set target parking position.

The intelligent parking assist is not an automatic parking sys-

- About the screen
- ▶ Without navigation system



- 1** Parking assist mode button
Touching this button turns parking assist mode on. (→P. 298)
- 2** Parallel parking assist mode button
Touching this button turns parallel parking assist mode on.
(→P. 314)

2

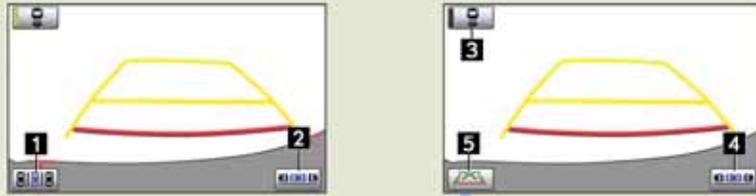
When driving

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

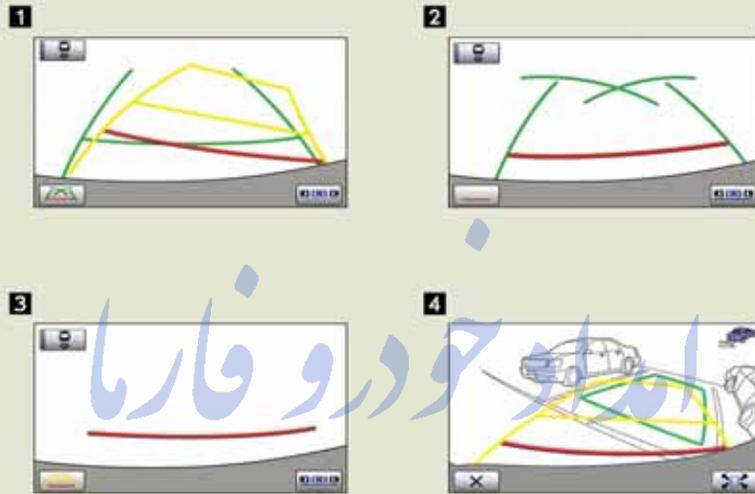
2-4. Using other driving systems

► With navigation system



- 1** Parking assist mode button
Touching this button turns parking assist mode on. (→P. 298)
- 2** Parallel parking assist mode button
Touching this button turns parallel parking assist mode on. (→P. 314)
- 3** Select button (intelligent parking assist only)
Touching this button switches between the parking assist function and the parking guide line display function. When the parking assist function is selected, the select button is highlighted.
- 4** Parking mode button
Each time you touch the button, the mode changes.
- 5** Display mode button

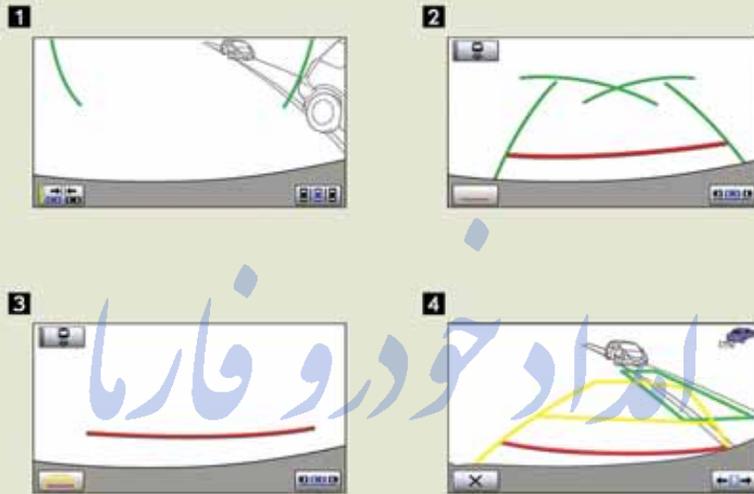
■ Perpendicular parking



- 1** Projected path guidance mode (→P. 294)
This mode displays the vehicle's projected path calculated according to steering wheel operation.
- 2** Parking assist guide line display mode (→P. 296)
This mode indicates the point (parking assist guide line) at which the driver should turn the steering wheel.
- 3** This mode only displays a distance guide line.
- 4** Parking assist mode (intelligent parking assist only) (→P. 298)
This mode assists the driver during perpendicular parking by automatically controlling the steering wheel to move the vehicle into the target position set on the screen.

For vehicles without a navigation system, mode **1**, **2** and **3**

■ Parallel parking



- 1** Parallel parking guide line display mode (→P. 307) تلف
This mode uses guide lines to assist the driver during parallel parking.
- 2** Parking assist guide line display mode (→P. 312)
This mode indicates the point (parking assist guide line) at which the driver should turn the steering wheel.
- 3** This mode only displays a distance guide line.
- 4** Parallel parking assist mode (intelligent parking assist only) (→P. 314)
This mode assists the driver during parallel parking by automatically controlling the steering wheel to move the vehicle into the target position set on the screen.

For vehicles without a navigation system, mode **1**, **2** and **3** are not available. Additionally, in mode **4**, guide lines will not

■ IPA pre-support switch (intelligent parking assist only)

Use this switch to turn on/off the pre-support function and to switch assist mode between parallel parking assist mode and perpendicular parking assist mode.



Pressing the pre-support switch while assist mode is on, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the vehicle is traveling below 15 km/h (9 mph) with the shift position in any position other than “P” or “R”, will cause the screen to change in the following order:

Pre-support function OFF → Parallel parking assist mode pre-support screen → Perpendicular parking assist mode pre-support screen → Pre-support function OFF

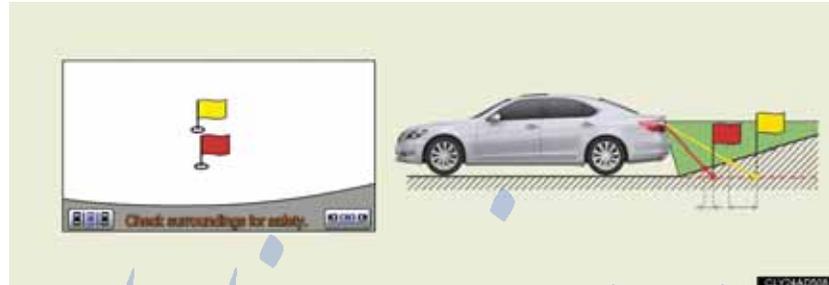
If the pre-support function cannot be used, two beeps will

FarmaSOS.com

2-4. Using other driving systems

Driving precautions

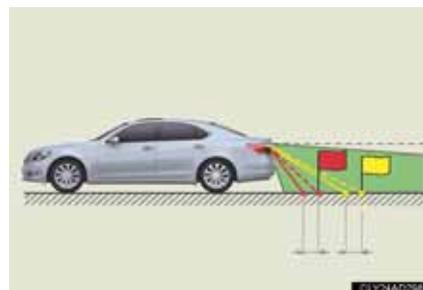
► Without navigation system



When the grade behind the vehicle slopes up sharply, objects appear to be farther away than they actually are.

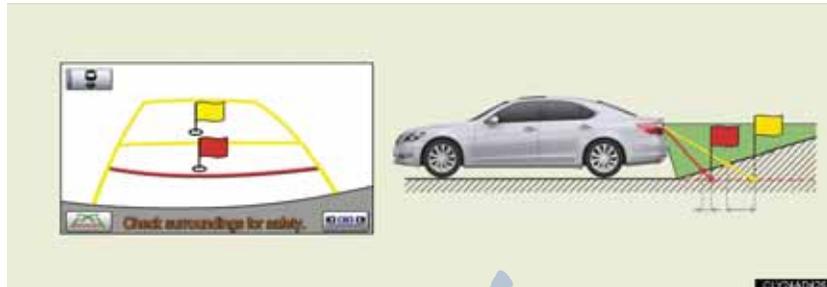


When the grade behind the vehicle slopes down sharply, objects appear to be closer than they actually are.



When any part of the vehicle sags due to the number of passengers or the distribution of the load, there is a margin of error between the set target parking position on the screen, and the actual distance/course on the road.

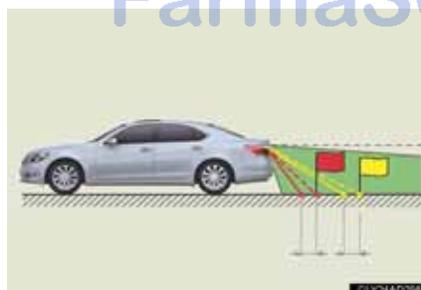
► With navigation system



When the grade behind the vehicle slopes up sharply, objects appear to be farther away than they actually are.



When the grade behind the vehicle slopes down sharply, objects appear to be closer than they actually are.



When any part of the vehicle sags due to the number of passengers or the distribution of the load, there is a margin of error between the set target parking position and guide lines on the screen, and the actual distance/course on the road.

2-4. Using other driving systems



The distance that appears on the screen between three-dimensional objects (such as vehicles) and flat surfaces (such as the road) and the actual distance differ as follows.

In reality, $C = A < B$ (C and A are equally far away; B is farther than C and A). However, on the screen, the situation appears to be $A < B < C$.

On the screen, it appears that a truck is parked approximately 1.0 m (3.0 ft.) away. However, in reality if you back up to point A , you will hit the truck.



Projected path guidance mode — The projected path guide lines are displayed according to flat surfaces (such as the road). It is not possible to determine the position of three-dimensional objects (such as vehicles) using the projected path guide lines.

In the case shown above, the truck appears to be outside of the projected path guide lines and the vehicle does not look as if it will hit the truck. However, the width of the truck extends out from the truck in a line, and this line may actually be on the projected path guide lines. In reality if you back up as guided by the projected path guide lines, the vehicle may hit the truck.

Similarly, when the projected path guide lines pass near any object(s) or obstacle(s), be sure to check the area behind and around the vehicle visually.

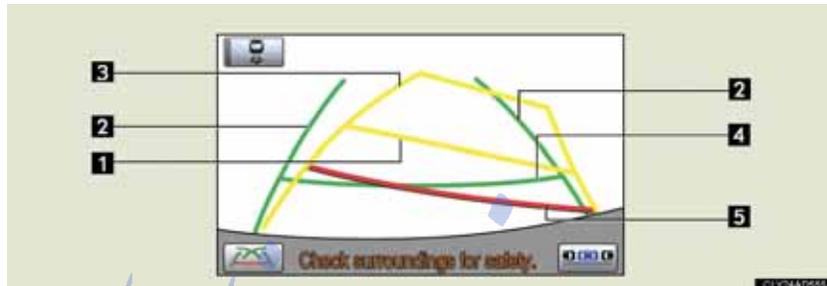
امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Projected path guidance mode

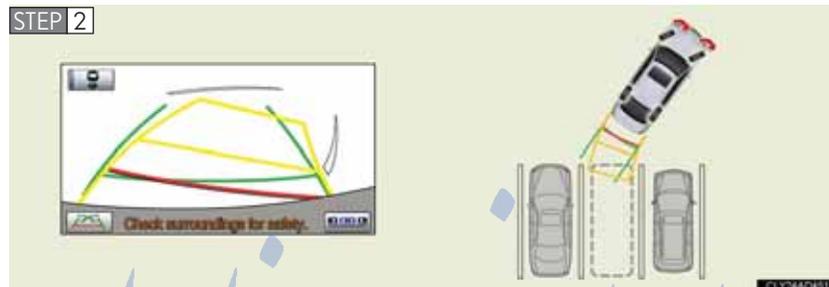
■ Screen description



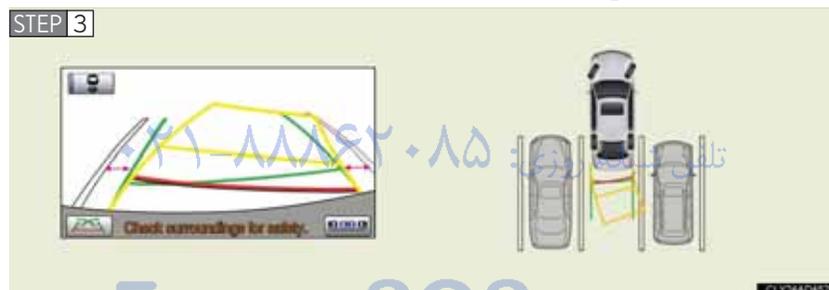
- 1** Distance guide line (yellow)
The line moves, together with the projected path guide lines, in sync with the steering wheel.
This line indicates a position on the ground approximately 1 m (3 ft.) behind on the ground of the rear bumper of your vehicle.
When the steering wheel is turned, distance errors may occur.
- 2** Vehicle width extension guide lines
These lines indicate the estimated vehicle width extension.
- 3** Projected path guide lines
These lines indicate the projected path in which the vehicle moves backward. The lines move in sync with the steering wheel.
- 4** Distance guide line (green)
The line indicates a position on the ground approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) behind on the ground of the rear bumper of your vehicle.
- 5** Distance guide line (red)
The line moves, together with the projected path guide lines, in sync with the steering wheel.
This line indicates a position on the ground approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) behind on the ground of the rear bumper of your vehicle.
When the steering wheel is turned, distance errors may occur.

■ Parking operation

STEP 1 Place the shift lever in “R” position. While referring to the screen and mirrors, back into the parking space.



Turn the steering wheel so that the projected path guide lines are within the parking space, and back up carefully.



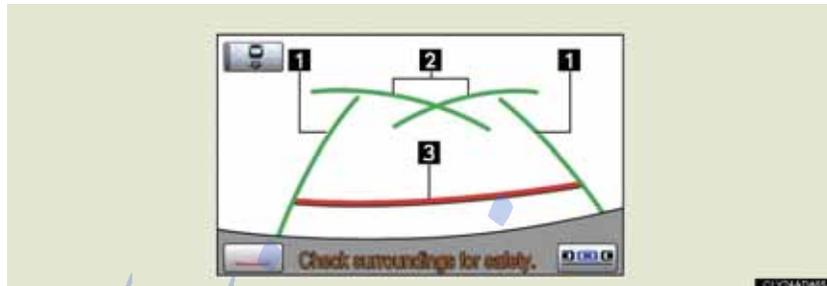
When the rear of the vehicle is within the parking space, turn the steering wheel in order to equalize the left and right intervals between the vehicle width extension lines and the parking space side lines.

STEP 4 When the vehicle width extension lines and the parking space side lines are parallel, straighten the steering wheel (straight backward position) and then carefully back up until the entire vehicle is within the parking space.

Even if the distance guide line and the parking space rear edge appear to be parallel on the screen, in reality they may not be parallel.

Parking assist guide line display mode (Perpendicular parking)

■ Screen description



1 Vehicle width extension guide lines

These lines indicate the estimated vehicle width extension.

2 Parking assist guide lines

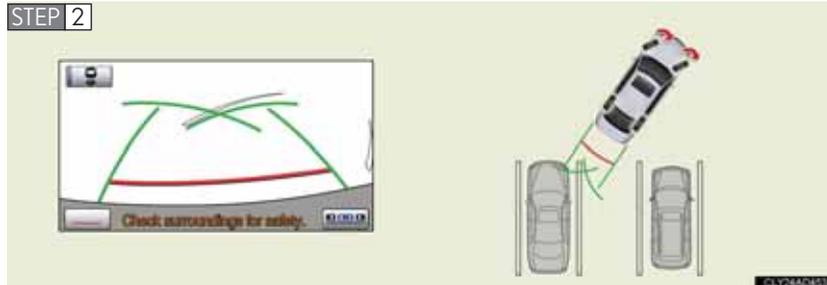
These lines indicate the points at which you turn the steering wheel. These lines also indicate a projected path for guidance when turning the smallest degree of the wheel while backing up.

3 Distance guide line

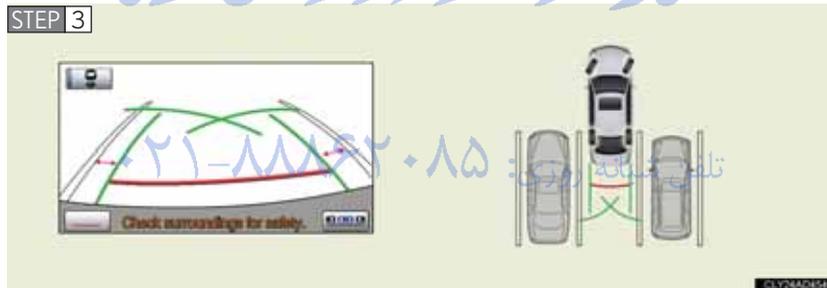
This line indicates a position on the ground approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) behind on the ground of the rear bumper of your vehicle.

■ Parking operation

STEP 1 Place the shift lever in “R” position. While referring to the screen and mirrors, back into the parking space.



Back up until the parking assist guidelines meet the left edge of the parking space. Stop the vehicle, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, and back up the vehicle to park. The point at which turn the steering wheel depends on the width of the parking space.



When the vehicle is within the parking space, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle width extension guide lines and the clearance to the left and right of the parking space are about the same near the vehicle. Back up slowly.

STEP 4 Turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle width extension guide lines are parallel with the parking space lines. When the lines are parallel, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly.

Even if the distance guide line and the parking space rear edge appear to be parallel on the screen, in reality they may not be parallel.

When there is only one line dividing the spaces in a parking lot, even if the vehicle width extension guide lines and the parking

2-4. Using other driving systems

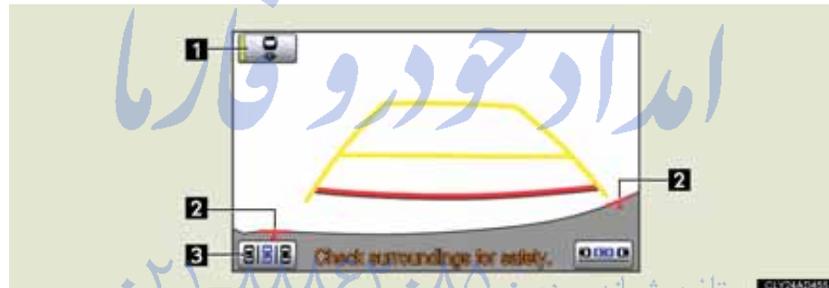
space right side (left side) appear to be parallel on the screen, in reality they may not be parallel.

Parking assist mode (Perpendicular parking)

■ Screen description

Parking assist mode assists the driver with perpendicular parking by automatically controlling the steering wheel when backing up, in order to park in the target position set on the screen.

If a message is displayed while maneuvering (→P. 323)



1 Select button (with navigation system)

This button switches between the parking assist function and the parking guide line display function. When the parking assist function is selected, the select button is highlighted.

2 Camera orientation confirmation lines

If the edge of the bumper displayed on the screen does not match the camera orientation confirmation lines, the camera may not be aligned correctly. Have the vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

3 Parking assist mode button

For vehicles without a navigation system, the select button and guide lines will not be displayed.

■ Parking operation

● Pre-support function

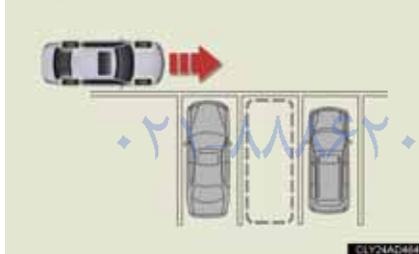
Pre-support is useful for parking perpendicular to another vehicle. This function detects the empty parking space beyond the parked vehicle and then guides the driver to the correct starting position for reversing. Chimes are used to inform the driver when it is time to turn the steering wheel and when it is time to start reversing.

● Before backing up

With navigation system: Before beginning these procedures, ensure that  is on.

▶ When the pre-support function is in use

STEP 1



With the vehicle stopped or driving at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less, push the pre-support switch twice when your vehicle is positioned slightly before the target parking space. (→P. 289) Check that the screen changes.

STEP 2

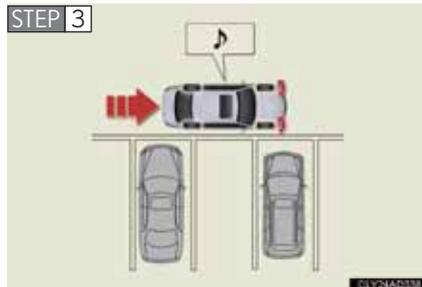


Move your vehicle slowly to a position perpendicular to and as close as possible to the target parking space.

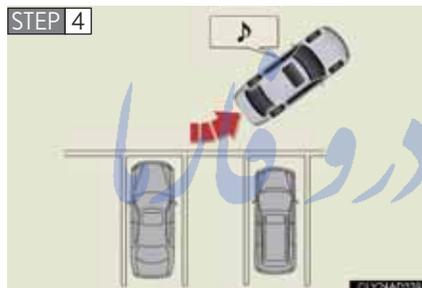
Drive slowly enough to be able to turn the steering wheel immediately after the chime sounds.

To discontinue the guidance, push the pre-support switch once to turn the pre-support function off. (→P. 289)

2-4. Using other driving systems



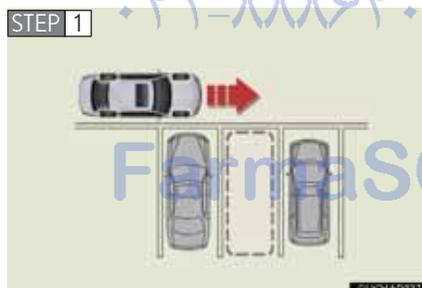
A chime will sound once when the center of the target parking space is visible right beside you. After this chime has sounded, turn the steering wheel about half a turn or more while driving forward.



When the chime sounds twice, stop your vehicle and straighten the steering wheel.

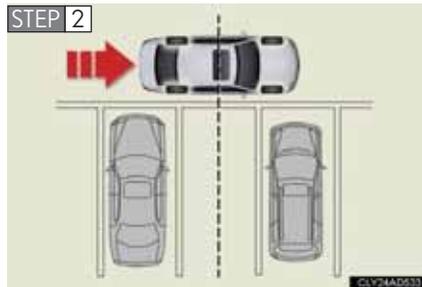
To enter the target parking space more accurately, position your vehicle with a larger heading angle.

► When the pre-support function is not in use



Move your vehicle slowly to a position perpendicular to the parking space, and as close as possible to the parking space.

Positioning the vehicle perpendicular to the parking space allows the angle of the parking position to be identified easily.



Move your vehicle to a position where you can see the center of the parking space right besides you.

To facilitate the setting of the target parking position, the front side sensors detect the vehicles parked at the left and right of the parking space and identify the target parking position.

It is possible to identify the target parking position even if there is only a vehicle parked on one side of the parking space.

If no vehicle or small vehicles are parked on both sides of the desired parking space, stop with the steering wheel straight.

- By stopping the vehicle here, you can mostly identify the parking location, making it easier to set the target parking position.
- Make sure the steering wheel is straight when you stop. If not, the parking location cannot be identified.
- If you do not stop in front of the parking space, the system will refer to the angle of the vehicle relative to the target parking space, and display the target parking position (green or red frame) in the position used last time the parking assist mode was activated.



Position your vehicle so that you can enter the parking space, then stop the vehicle with the steering wheel straight.

To enter the target parking space more accurately, position your vehicle with a larger heading angle.

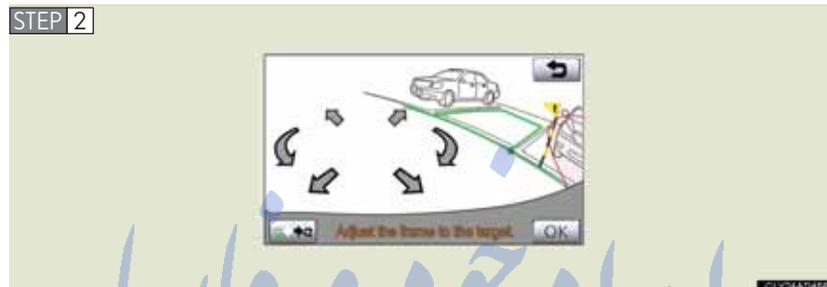
2-4. Using other driving systems

● While backing up

STEP 1 Place the shift lever in “R” position.

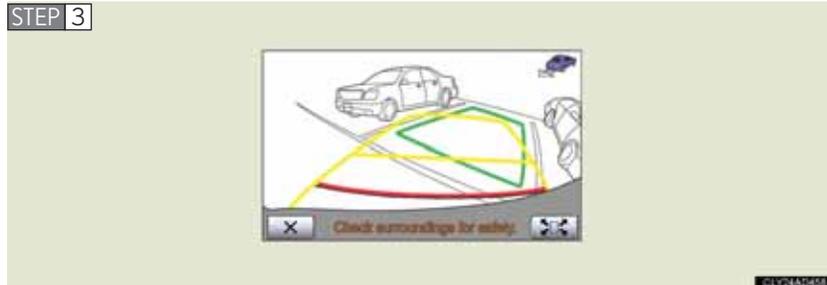
Touch  on the screen (only when the pre-support function is not in use).

STEP 2



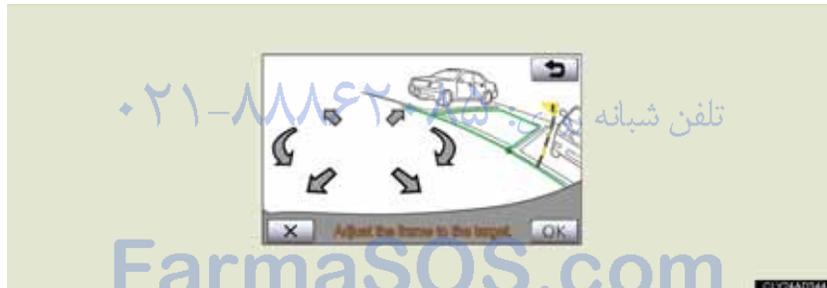
Use the arrow to align the green frame with the desired parking space, then touch “OK”.

- You can also move the green frame by touching the screen (area other than the arrow).
- There are tricks to align the green frame. (→P. 304)
- Areas in which you are unable to park are displayed in red.
- If the frame is displayed in red, you cannot use the parking assist mode to park in that location. (→P. 329)
- When the green frame is displayed, if you begin backing up without touching “OK”, the message “Parking position has not been set.” appears. If you continue to back up, you will hear a warning tone and the system will be disabled.
- If the frame is red, there will be no guidance even if you begin backing up.
- If the orientation of the frame is opposite to that of the target parking space, touch .
- There may be times when, due to image distortion, the green frame does not match the parking space lines on the road surface. In this case, attempt an approximate match in an area where the warning flag does not overlap with any parked vehicles or obstacles.
- You may adjust the target parking position even after starting the parking assist mode.



Position yourself as you would when backing up normally, and rest your hands on the steering wheel without applying any pressure. Check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and slowly back up, using the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.

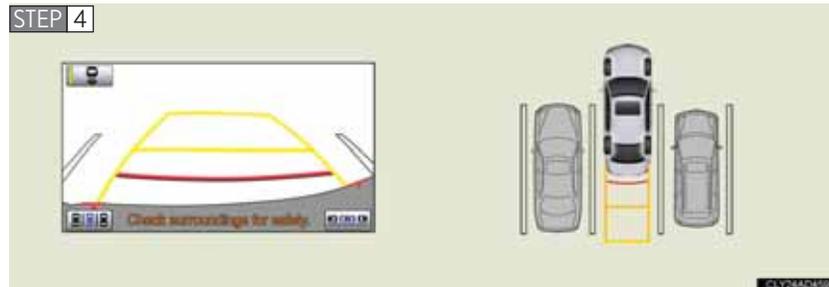
If you touch “X”, assistance is canceled.



You can change the target parking position by touching . If you are backing up, or have already moved close to the target parking position, will turn gray, and you will be unable to change the target.

Touch the arrows to move the target parking position, and then touch “OK”.

2-4. Using other driving systems



Once the vehicle is mostly within the target parking position, voice guidance will inform you to finish the assist mode.

For safety, voice guidance is given slightly before the target parking position. Furthermore, at that point system control will finish, so grip the steering wheel firmly, and finish parking in the desired position, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.

Using the distance guide line (with navigation system) as a reference, check in front and behind the vehicle visually and check with the mirrors while backing up.

■ Tips for setting the target parking position

Useful information for setting the target parking position (green frame)

● The display position of the green frame

The system decides the initial positioning of the green frame by the position of the parking space detected by the front side sensors or the position of the vehicle when it stops, and by detecting the white lines of the parking space in the camera image to identify the parking space location.

The front side sensors identify the parking space location and the white lines near that location are detected.

The front side sensors cannot identify the parking space location, or the parking space location maybe misaligned in the following situations.

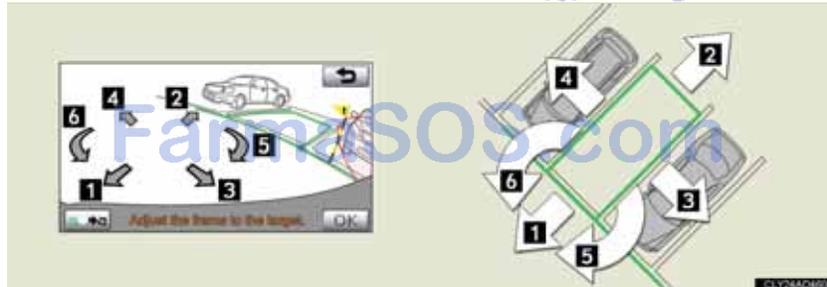
- A vehicle is parked at the back of the parking space or the sensors cannot detect a parked vehicle due to vehicle shape etc.
- The sensors cannot detect a pole or wall beside the parking space.
- The sensors detect a pedestrian or object near the parking space.

If the point at which you stop is correctly identified, the green frame will display the parking space accurately. If the white lines of the parking space have not been correctly identified, the green frame will not match the parking space even if you stop in the correct location. In this case, adjust the point at which you stop as needed.

- **Aligning the green frame**

There are two ways to align the green frame with the parking space, either using the arrows on the screen, or by touching the screen at points other than the arrows.

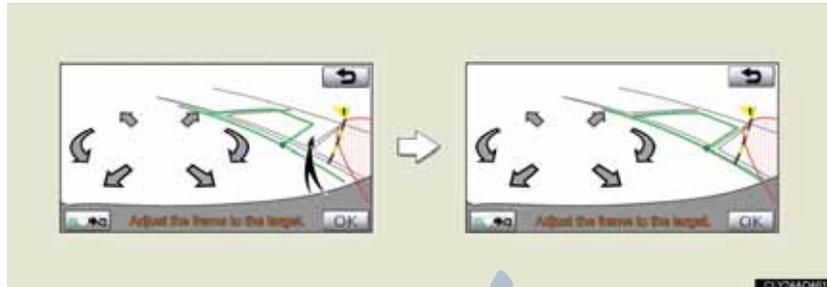
- ▶ **Using the arrows on the screen:**



By touching the arrows displayed on the screen, you can move the green frame.

2-4. Using other driving systems

► Directly touching the target point:



Touch the front edge of the place you wish to move.

By touching the point you wish to move the frame to, you can move the green frame.

If you touch the following areas, the green frame will not move:

- The area surrounding the arrows.
 - The area near the lower button on the screen.
 - Areas too far away to park in the range of 9.5 m (31.2 ft.) or more behind, and/or either left or right from the current position.
- If the parking space and the green frame do not match



If the lines of the parking space are wider than the green frame, position the frame so that the difference between the frame and the parking space lines is equal on both sides.

Parallel parking guide line display mode

■ Screen description

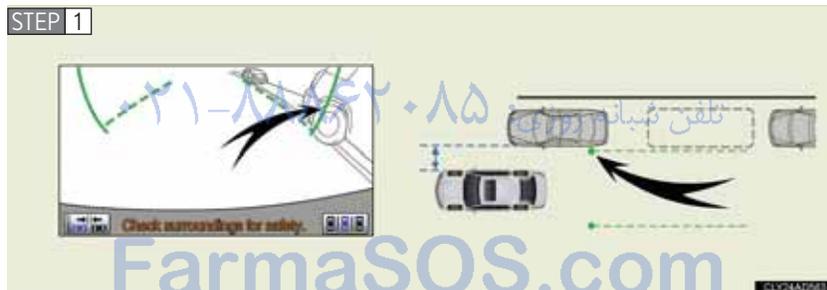
Parallel parking guide line display mode assists the driver with parallel parking by means of screen display.



1 Narrow mode on-off button

If the position in which you want to park your vehicle is narrower than usual, you can use the narrow mode.

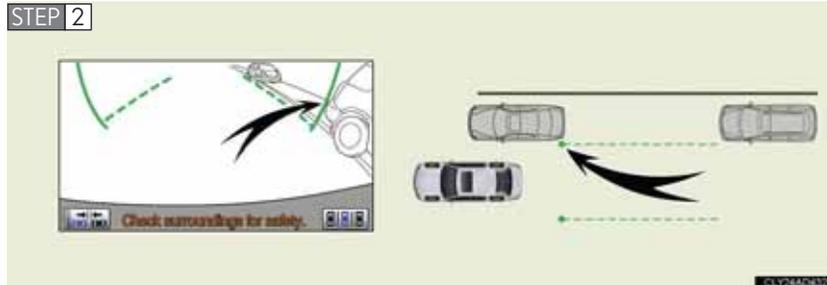
■ Parking operation



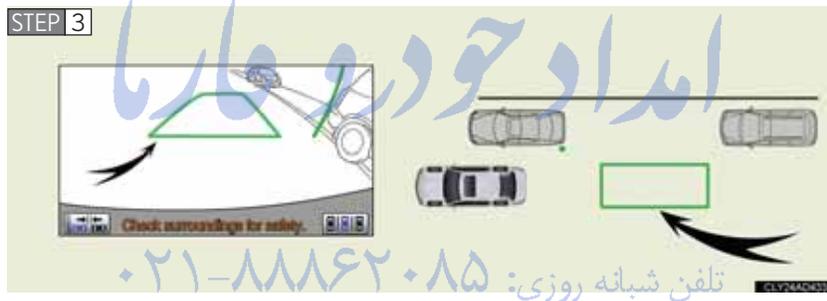
Position your vehicle parallel to the road or shoulder approximately 1 m (3 ft.) away from a parked vehicle. Then position your vehicle about one-half of a car length ahead of the vehicle. Place the shift lever in “R” position. Make sure the monitor displays the part behind the rear tires of the parked vehicle.

2
When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

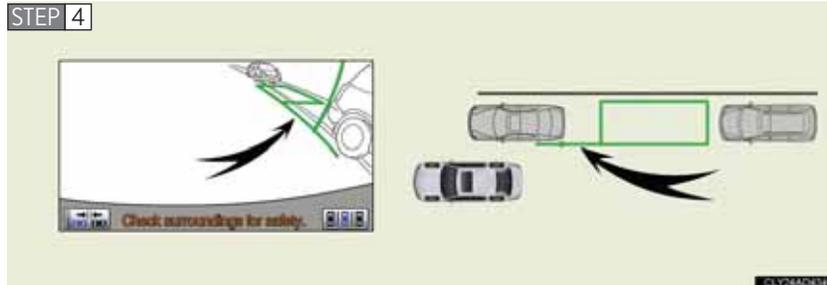


Back up until the point at which the green vertical line just overlaps the rear end of the parked vehicle. Then stop the vehicle.



The green outline will appear on the screen.

FarmaSOS.com



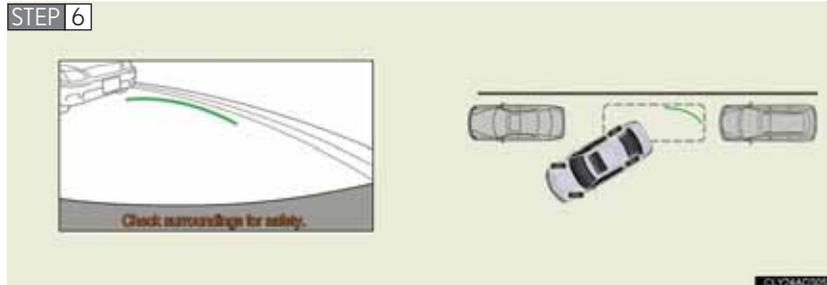
While the vehicle is stopped, turn the steering wheel. As you turn the steering wheel, the green outline will move to the location that your vehicle will move to and an extended green line will appear. Place the extended green line at the left of the rear tire of the parked vehicle.

- If the outline becomes red and the “Steering wheel turned too far, please return.” message is displayed, the guide line display system will not function. Return the steering wheel to its original position.
- Even if the outline is positioned over a normal parking space, the message may be displayed as shown. In this case, your vehicle may be too far from the shoulder. Check that the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle parked in front of the empty space is approximately 1 m (3 ft.).

STEP 5 After the extended green line is positioned, keep the steering wheel in the same position and back up while checking all around the vehicle. A curved green line will appear on the screen.

If there is no vehicle parked in front of the empty space and you attempt to start parking from a position close to the shoulder, the screen may not change even if the vehicle moves. In a case such as this, position your vehicle away from the shoulder and start again.

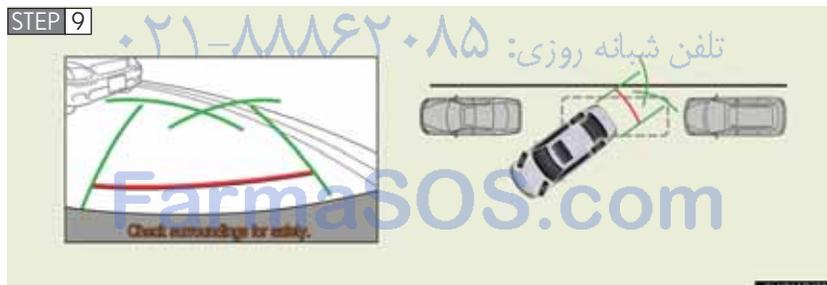
2-4. Using other driving systems



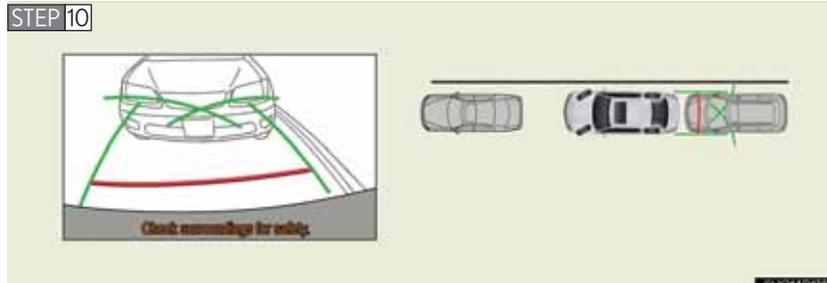
Keep the steering wheel in the same position until the curved green line meets the edge of the desired parking location. While checking all around the vehicle, back up.

STEP 7 When you have backed up until the curved green line meets the right edge of the desired parking location, stop the vehicle.

STEP 8 While the vehicle is stopped, turn the steering wheel all the way in the opposite direction. The screen will change.



While keep the steering wheel in the same position and checking all around the vehicle, back up.



When the vehicle is parallel with the road or shoulder, refer to the distance guide lines. Be sure to check in front of and behind the vehicle, both directly and with mirrors, as you back up slowly.

When the vehicle is approximately in the desired parking location, stop the vehicle.

- Narrow mode



Touch . The caution screen will appear.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۴۴۰۸۵

When you touch “I agree” on the screen, the narrow mode will start. When canceling the narrow mode, touch .

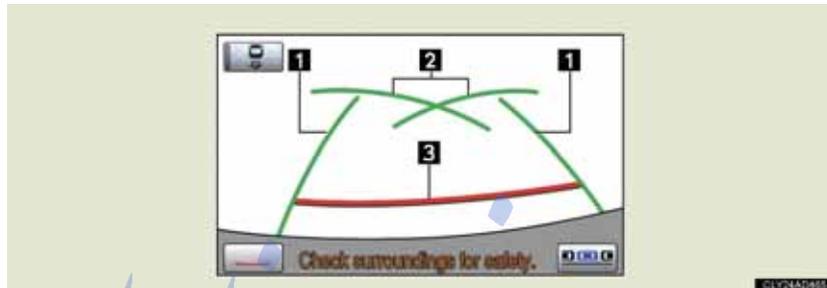
When the system is in the narrow mode, the indicator on  will be highlighted.

Read and follow the instructions; otherwise your vehicle may be damaged.

To cancel the narrow mode after you set it, touch  on the screen.

Parking assist guide line display mode (Parallel parking)

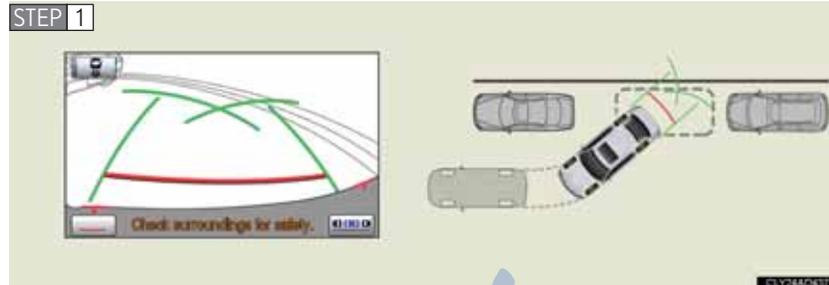
■ Screen description



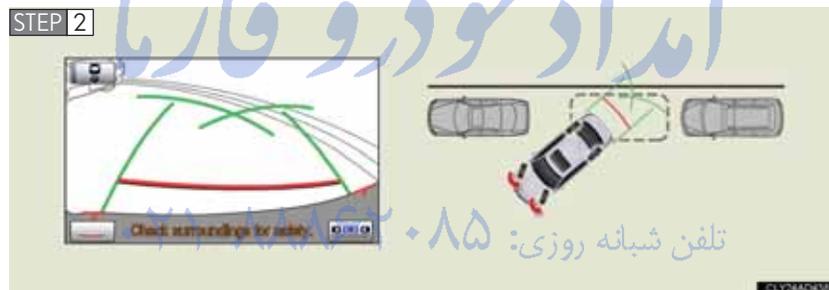
- 1** Vehicle width extension guide lines
These lines indicate the estimated vehicle width extension.
- 2** Parking assist guide lines
These lines indicate the points at which you turn the steering wheel. These lines also indicate a projected path for guidance when turning the smallest degree of the wheel while backing up.
- 3** Distance guide line
This line indicates a position on the ground approximately 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) behind on the ground of the rear bumper of your vehicle.

FarmaSOS.com

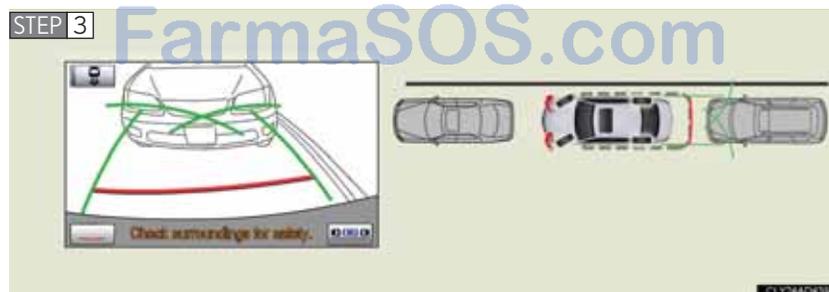
■ Parking operation



Place the shift lever in “R” position. Back up until the parking assist guide lines meet the edge of the desired parking location.



Turn the steering wheel all the way to the left and back up slowly.



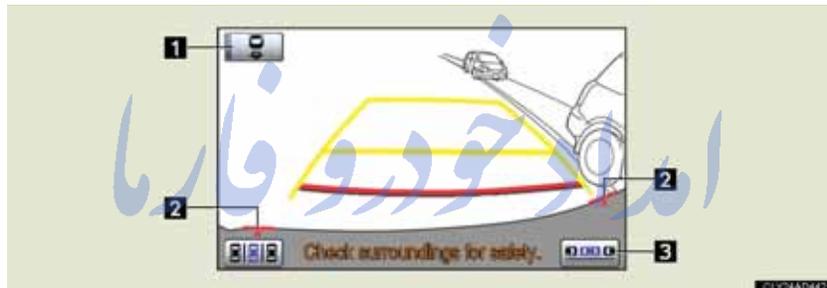
When the vehicle is parallel with the shoulder of the road, straighten the steering wheel and back up slowly.

Parallel parking assist mode

■ Screen description

Parallel parking assist mode assists the driver with parallel parking by automatically controlling the steering wheel when backing up, in order to park in the target position set on the screen.

If a message is displayed while maneuvering (→P. 323)



1 Select button (with navigation system)

This button switches between the parking assist function and the parking guide line display function. When the parking assist function is selected, the select button is highlighted.

2 Camera orientation confirmation lines

If the edge of the bumper displayed on the screen does not match the camera orientation confirmation lines, the camera may not be aligned correctly. Have the vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

3 Parallel parking assist mode button

For vehicles without a navigation system, the select button and guide lines will not be displayed.

- Parking operation

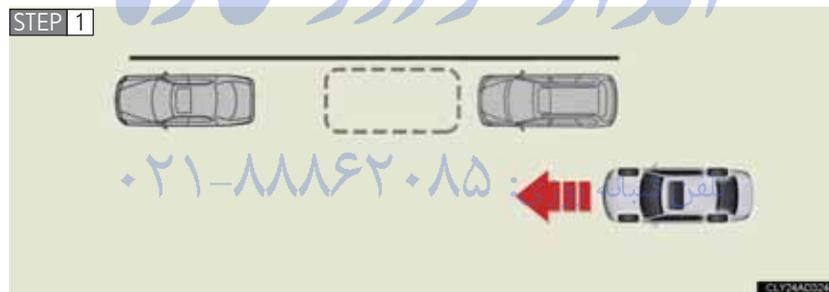
- Pre-support function

Pre-support is useful for parking between two vehicles that are parked along the shoulder of the road. This function detects the empty parking space between the parked vehicles and then guides the driver to the correct starting position for reversing. Chimes are used to inform the driver when it is time to start reversing.

- Before backing up

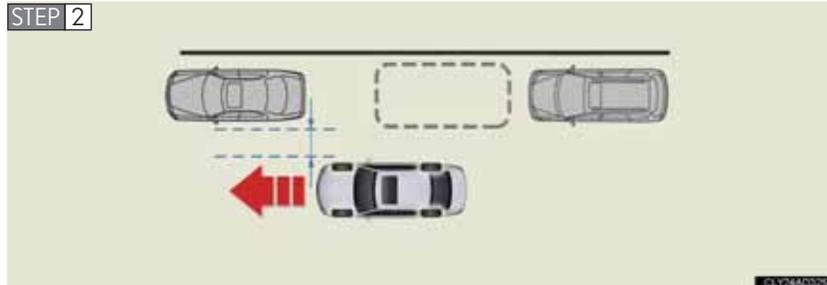
With navigation system: Before beginning these procedures, ensure that  is on.

▶ When the pre-support function is in use



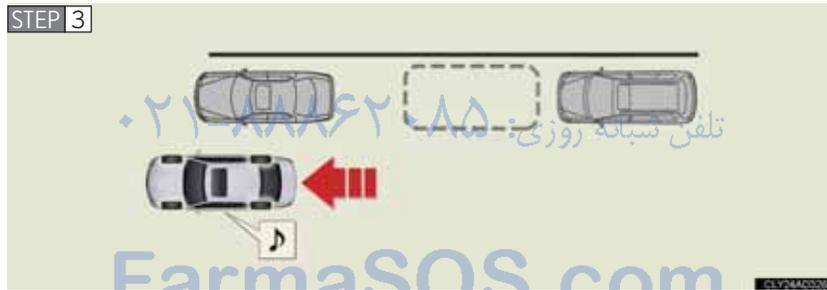
With the vehicle stopped or driving at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less, push the pre-support switch once when your vehicle is positioned slightly before the target parking space. (→P. 289) Check that the screen changes.

2-4. Using other driving systems



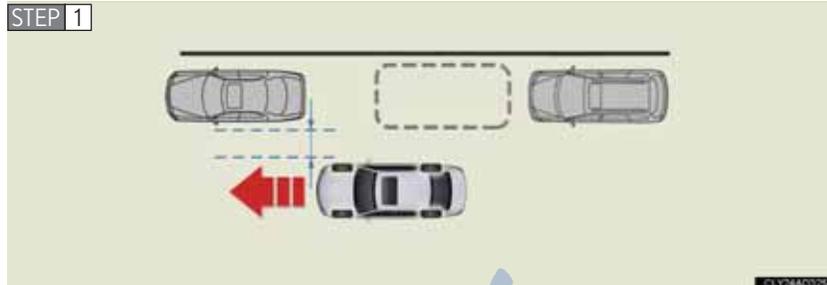
Move your vehicle slowly alongside the vehicle parked in front of the target parking space. Your vehicle should move parallel to the road or shoulder and be approximately 1 m (3 ft.) away from the side of the parked vehicle.

To discontinue the guidance, push the pre-support switch twice to turn the pre-support function off. (→P. 289)



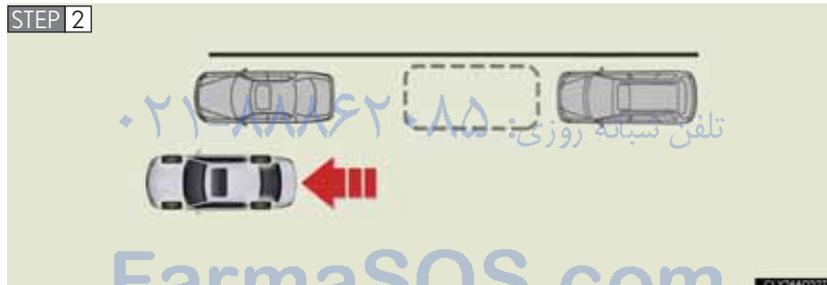
A chime will sound twice when the front edge of the vehicle parked in front of the target parking space is visible right beside you. When this chime sounds twice, stop your vehicle.

► When the pre-support function is not in use



Move your vehicle slowly to a position parallel to the road or shoulder approximately 1 m (3 ft.) away from parked vehicles.

To facilitate the setting of the target parking position, the front side sensors detect the vehicles parked in front of and behind the parking space and identify the target parking position.



Stop your vehicle in a position where you can see the front edge of the leading parked vehicle right beside you, with the steering wheel straight.

If there is no leading parked vehicle, the system will display the target parking position (green or red frame) in the position used last time the parallel parking assist mode was activated.

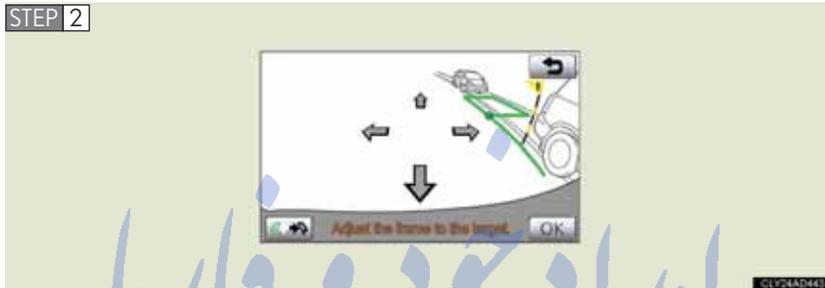
2-4. Using other driving systems

● While backing up

STEP 1 Place the shift lever in “R” position.

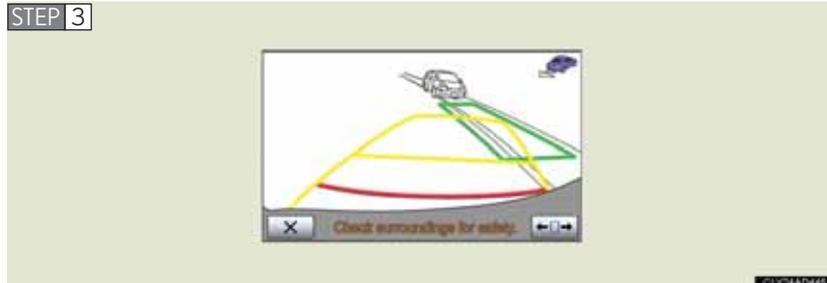
Touch  on the screen (only when the pre-support function is not in use).

STEP 2



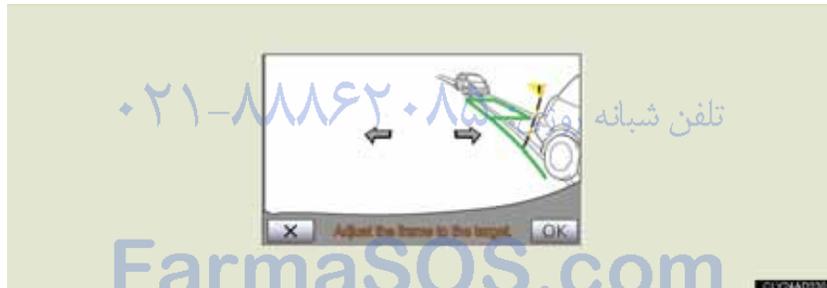
Use the arrow to align the green frame with your target parking space, and touch “OK”.

- You can also move the green frame by touching the screen (area other than the arrows).
- There are tricks to align the green frame. (→P. 320)
- If the frame is displayed in red, you cannot use the parallel parking assist mode to park in that location. (→P. 329)
- When the green frame is displayed, if you begin backing up without touching “OK”, the message “Parking position has not been set.” appears. If you continue to back up, you will hear a warning tone and the system will be disabled.
- If the frame is red, there will be no guidance even if you begin backing up.
- If the orientation of the frame is opposite to that of the target parking space, touch .
- There may be times when, due to image distortion, the green frame does not match the parking space lines on the road surface. In this case, use the warning flag and extended green line to set the target parking position.
- You may adjust the target parking position even after starting the parallel parking assist mode.



Position yourself as you would when backing up normally, and rest your hands on the steering wheel without applying any pressure. Check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and slowly back up, using the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.

If you touch “X”, assistance is canceled.

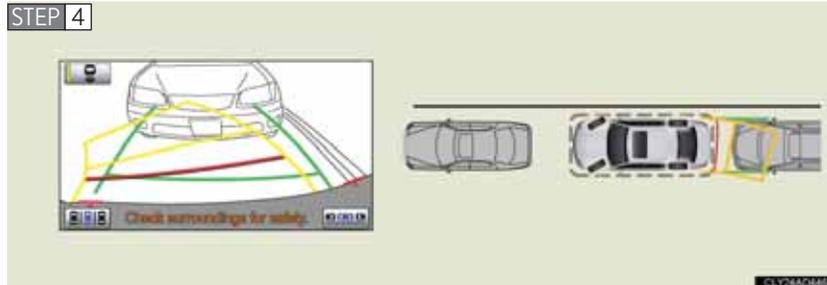


You can change the target parking position by touching . If you are backing up, or have already moved close to the target parking position,  will turn gray, and you will be unable to change the target.

Touch the arrows to move the target parking position, and then touch “OK”.

You can only move the target parking position left or right, and the warning flag will not move even if you adjust the target parking position.

2-4. Using other driving systems



Once the vehicle is mostly within the target parking position, voice guidance will inform you to finish the assist mode.

For safety, voice guidance is given slightly before the target parking position. Furthermore, at that point system control will finish, so grip the steering wheel firmly, and finish parking in the desired position, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.

Using the distance guide line (with navigation system) as a reference, check in front and behind the vehicle visually and check with the mirrors while backing up.

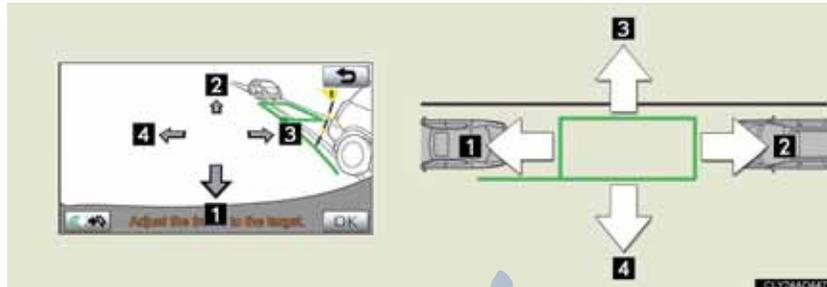
■ Tips for setting the target parking position

Useful information for setting the target parking position (green frame)

● Aligning the green frame

There are two ways to align the green frame with the parking space, either using the arrows on the screen, or by touching the screen at points other than the arrows.

► Using the arrows on the screen:



By touching the arrows displayed on the screen, you can move the green frame.

Adjusting the left-right alignment first will make subsequent alignment easier.

► Directly touching the target point:



By touching the point you wish to move the frame to, you can move the green frame.

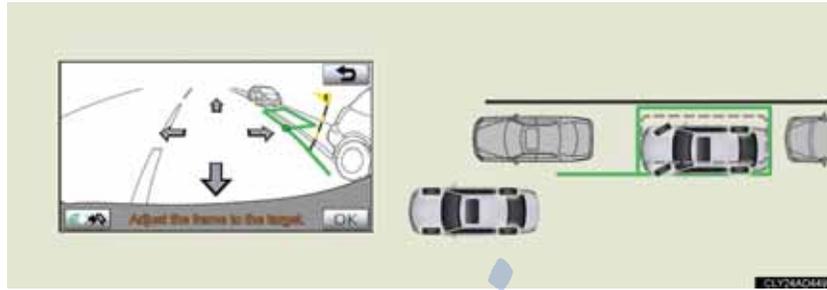
Touch the front edge of the place you wish to move.

If you touch the following areas, the green frame will not move:

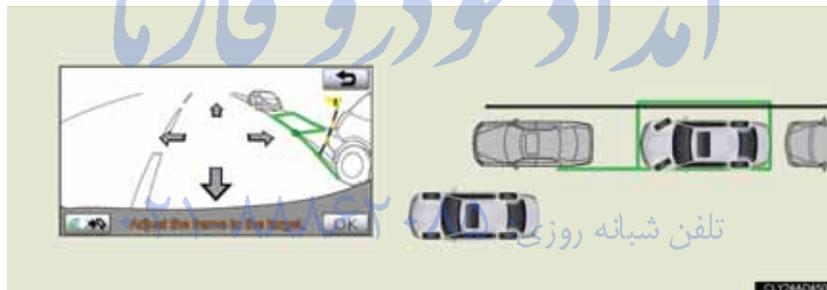
- The area surrounding the arrows.
- The area near the lower button on the screen.
- Areas too far away to park in the range of 10.5 m (34.4 ft.) or more behind the current position, and/or 5.0 m (16.4 ft.) or more either left or right from the current position.

2-4. Using other driving systems

- If there is a slope in the road



The assisted parking position will move left or right of the set target parking position.



In this case, if you align the warning flag with the rear of the forward parked vehicle, and the extended green line with the lower edge of the parked vehicle's rear wheel when setting the target parking position, the left side of your vehicle will be roughly in line with the left side of the front parked vehicle once assisted parking is complete. If you are parallel parking on the opposite side of the road, left and right will be reversed.

What to do when this sort of message is displayed

Message	Cause	What to do
! Parking position cannot be set.	Not in an area where system use is possible.	Change the vehicle's position, referring to the help function.
! Check IPA system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	There is a malfunction in the system.	Have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
! Use on flat surface.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The vehicle has rolled forward on a sloped road. • The vehicle does not move even if you take your foot off the brake pedal. • You have depressed the accelerator pedal during the assist mode. 	Do not attempt to use the system in those sorts of conditions. Use the system for flat parking spaces.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

Message	Cause	What to do
! System cannot assist under current conditions.	If the message is displayed only when the system is operating, it is likely that the tires are worn, or tire inflation pressure is low.	Check tires for wear and pressure.
	If the message is displayed constantly, there is most likely a malfunction.	Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to OFF, then to IGNITION ON mode. If the message is still displayed, have the vehicle checked any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
	The vehicle has skidded or the tires have been locked.	Do not attempt to use the system on a slippery road such as snowy road.

FarmaSOS.com

Message	Cause	What to do
! IPA not available now.	The system has temporarily overheated.	Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to OFF, then to IGNITION ON mode. Wait a few minutes before use.
	The engine speed is 1000 rpm or above.	Do not use the system when the engine speed is 1000 rpm or above.
	There is a malfunction in the voice guidance system.	Have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
	The engine has not been started.	Start the engine.
! Release parking brake.	The parking brake has been applied.	Release the parking brake.
! Too much force applied to the steering wheel.	You are exerting too much pressure on the steering wheel.	Loosen your grip on the steering wheel.
Steering position is not neutral. Turn the steering wheel to LEFT (or RIGHT).	The steering wheel and tires are not straight.	The steering wheel until tires are straight.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Message	Cause	What to do
Steer to left (or right) until the frame becomes green.	It is possible to begin to park if you turn the steering wheel in the direction indicated.	Turn the steering wheel in the direction indicated until the frame turns green (the message "Too much force applied to the steering wheel." is displayed). Turn the wheel slightly more than necessary to overcome tire resistance. Once you have turned the steering wheel, you can no longer change the target parking position. Be sure to align the frame before turning the steering wheel.
! Parking position has not been set.	You have begun to back up without touching "OK".	Stop the vehicle and touch "OK".
! Speed is too fast.	The speed at which you are backing up is too fast.	Using the brake pedal, back up at a speed that does not cause the warning chime to sound. The system will be disabled if you back up too quickly.
! Assist has been cancelled by user operation.	You have turned the steering wheel during the assist mode.	The system has been disabled. You will need to restart from the beginning.
! Accelerator pedal has been engaged.	You have depressed the accelerator pedal when setting the target parking position.	Do not depress the accelerator pedal.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Message	Cause	What to do
! Guidance unavailable.	Some sort of malfunction has occurred within the system.	Have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
! System not ready.	-	Take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
! Depress the brake pedal.	“OK” is touched while the brake hold system is on.	Depress the brake pedal and touch “OK”.
! Clean Park Sonar.	The sensors may be affected by extreme cold or covered by foreign matter.	Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. Wash with a mild cleanser and rinse if necessary. If the message is still displayed, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Message and voice guidance

In the parking assist function, voice guidance accompanies the following messages displayed during parking position setting and steering wheel control. (Voice guidance may not be given depending on the reason the message was displayed.)

Message	Voice Guidance (Warning tone)	
	During setting	During steering wheel control
! Check IPA system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	(One chime)	(Two beeps) The assist has been canceled.
! System cannot assist under current conditions.	-	(Two beeps) The assist has been canceled.
! IPA not available now.	(One chime)	(Two beeps) The assist has been canceled.
! Release parking brake.	(One chime)	(Two beeps) The assist has been canceled.
! Parking position has not been set.	(One chime)	-
! Speed is too fast.	-	(Several beeps and then two beeps) The assist has been canceled.
! Assist has been cancelled by user operation.	-	(Two beeps) The assist has been canceled.

For the adjustment of the volume.

- ▶ Without navigation system: →P. 384
- ▶ With navigation system: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

■ When a red frame is displayed in the parking assist function

If the frame turns red and the message “Adjust the frame to the target.” is displayed while setting the target parking position, you cannot use the parking assist function.

In this situation, move the target parking position, or move the position of the vehicle.

The frame may be displayed in red, depending on the location and angle of the vehicle when “R” position is selected.

Furthermore, even if the frame is displayed in green, if you move the frame to a location unsuitable for parking using the parking assist function, the frame will change to red.

● Help function

If you touch “OK”, the reason the frame is displayed in red will be displayed. Move the vehicle appropriately, referring to the screen.

STEP 1 Touch “OK”.

STEP 2 Move the vehicle in accordance with the message displayed.

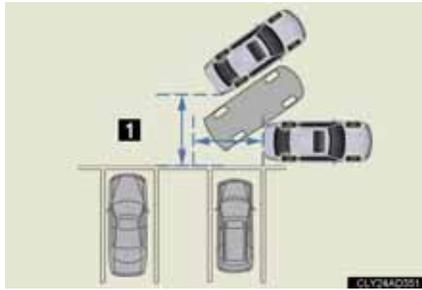
See the following items for information on the messages displayed. If you move the frame to a position acceptable to the assist mode, a chime will sound.

STEP 3 If you have moved the vehicle forwards, place the shift lever in “R” position.

STEP 4 Check that the frame is green, and if that position is acceptable, touch “OK”.

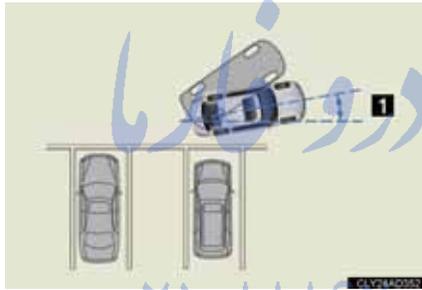
2-4. Using other driving systems

● Displayed message and vehicle position for parking assist mode



1 Too far

If the vehicle is too far from the parking space, the message “Start from a position closer to the target parking area.” will be displayed.



1 Angle too small

If the orientation of the vehicle is incorrect, the message “Start with larger vehicle heading angle.” will be displayed.

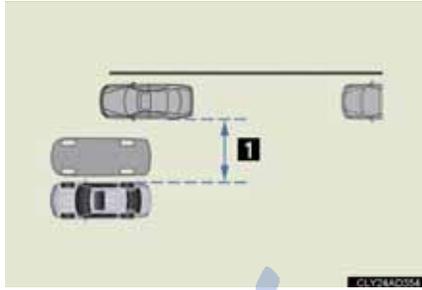


1 Near the front of the parking space

2 Too close

If the vehicle is near the front of the parking space, or too close, the message “Start from a position farther from the target parking area.” will be displayed.

● Displayed message and vehicle position for parallel parking assist mode



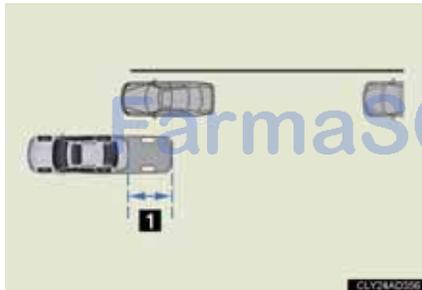
1 Too far

If the vehicle is too far from other parked vehicles, the message “Start from a position closer to adjacent vehicle.” will be displayed.



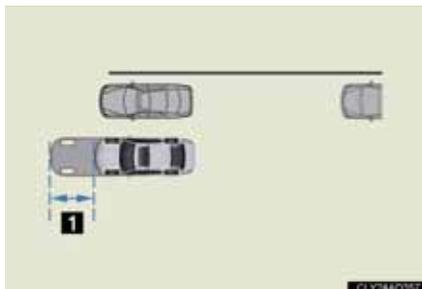
1 Too close

If the vehicle is too close to other parked vehicles, the message “Start from a position farther from adjacent vehicle.” will be displayed.



1 Too far forward

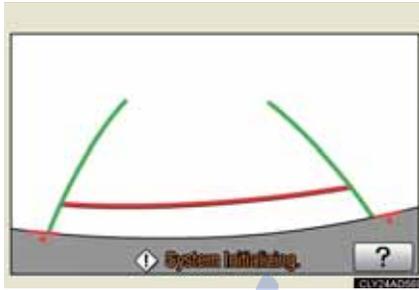
If the vehicle is too far forward, the message “Start after moving slightly backward.” will be displayed.



1 Too far back

If the vehicle is too far back, the message “Start after moving slightly forward.” will be displayed.

Initializing the system



Make sure to initialize the system in the following situations.

- The battery is disconnected and reconnected.
- The system initialization in progress screen is displayed when the shift lever is moved to “R” position (due to low battery etc.).

The help screen appears when “?” is touched. Make a correction using the following method in accordance with the display.

When the vehicle is stopped, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, then all the way to the right. (It does not matter in which direction — right or left — you turn first.)

When the screen returns to the original display, correction is complete.

If the above screen remains, have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Disabling the system

Even if the shift lever is in “R” position, if you push any of the switches around the screen, such as “SETUP” or “INFO/TEL”, the screen will switch to that mode.

When in the parking assist mode or parallel parking assist mode, in the following case the voice guidance will say “The assist has been cancelled.”, a message will be displayed, and the system will be disabled. (→P. 323)

After the following operations:

- Moving the steering wheel
- Using the accelerator
- Moving the shift lever out of “R” position
- Applying the parking brake
- Switching the screen display

In the following situations:

- If the vehicle slips forward or stops after taking your foot off the brake pedal
- If the backing speed is too fast
- If normal assistance cannot be rendered due to worn tires or low tire inflation pressure
- If the target parking position has not been confirmed on the target parking position setting screen before backing up
- Any warnings displayed on the screen are not acknowledged before backing up
- If there is a system malfunction
- If the system temperature protection function operates
- If a hands-free phone call is received

If the system is disabled while backing up, grip the steering wheel firmly and depress the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a halt. The system has been completely disabled, so you may either start again from the beginning, or if you wish to finish parking manually, be sure to operate the steering wheel as you would normally.

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Notes for the pre-support function

- If the detected parking space is too small, guidance will not start.
- To allow the pre-support system to activate accurately, move the vehicle as slowly as possible (at a speed that will allow the vehicle to stopped suddenly).
- The function cannot be used if the shift position is in “P” or “R” position, or if the vehicle speed is greater than 15 km/h (9 mph).
- In order to identify parking spaces and detect parked vehicles using the sensors on both sides of the front bumper, guidance cannot be given if a space is not detected.
- Parking space guidance and searching continues until the vehicle speed is greater than 15 km/h (9 mph) or until the function is turned off by pushing the pre-support switch.
- Perpendicular parking: The pre-support function can only be used for perpendicular parking when a vehicle is parked beside the target parking space on the side closest to your vehicle as it approaches.
Parallel parking: The pre-support function can only be used for parallel parking when vehicles are parked both in front of and behind the target parking space.

■ Detecting white lines in parking assist mode (perpendicular parking)

If there are no vehicles parked on either side of the target parking space when your vehicle stops, an approximate parking space location is identified, and the white lines in that location are detected. For this reason, stopping in front of the parking space will make the detection of target parking space's white lines easier.

Successful detection of the parking space's white lines may not be possible, depending on the shape of the line.

In the following circumstances, detection of the parking space lines on the road surface may not be possible:

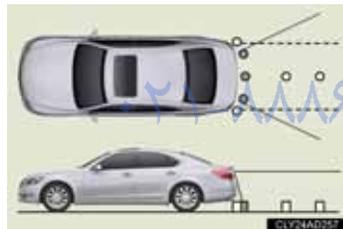
- The lines are faded or dirty, making them unclear.
- The road surface is of a light color which does not contrast well with the white lines.
- The parking space lines are a color other than white (yellow etc.).
- The area is dark, for example at night or in a covered parking lot.

- During or after rain, when the road surface is wet and reflects light, or puddles have formed.
- The sun is shining directly on the camera, for example early morning or late afternoon.
- The parking space is covered with snow or de-icing agent.
- There are markings or maintenance marks on the road surface.
- The color or brightness of the road surface is not uniform.
- Hot or cold water has splashed on the camera, and the lens is fogged.
- There are dirt or water droplets on the lens.

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor

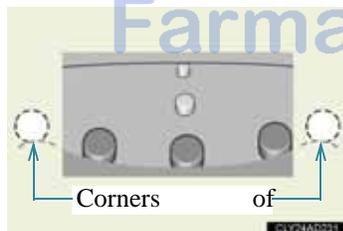
When the Lexus parking assist-sensors are turned on and an obstacle is detected in front of or behind your vehicle, a warning appears on the top right of the screen. (→P. 265)

■ Area displayed on screen



The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Lexus parking assist monitor/intelligent parking assist camera



In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly:

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow or mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- The camera has scratches or dirt on it.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.



If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* characteristic to the camera may occur.

*:Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

If you install the antenna of a wireless device close to the camera, the screen image may be affected by the electromagnetic waves, and the system may not function correctly. Install an antenna away from the camera.

The method for adjusting the picture

⚠ CAUTION

- When using the system
 - Be sure to check that the vehicle can actually park in the target space before beginning operation.
 - Depending on the circumstances of the vehicle (number of passengers, amount of luggage, etc.), the position of the guide lines (with navigation system) and green frame displayed on the screen may change. Be sure to check visually behind and all around the vehicle before proceeding.
 - Never depend on the system entirely when backing up. Always make sure your intended path is clear.
Use caution, just as you would when backing up any vehicle.
 - When using the parking assist mode and parallel parking assist mode
 - When backing up, be sure to check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and back up slowly, depressing the brake pedal to control vehicle speed.
 - If you seem likely to hit nearby vehicles, obstacles or people, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and then disable the system by touching “X” on the screen.
 - If there is a problem, stop the vehicle and disable the system by touching “X” on the screen.
 - Keep clothing such as neckties, scarves and long sleeves away from the steering wheel, as they may become entangled. Also, keep children away from the steering wheel.
 - If you have long fingernails, be careful not to injure yourself when the steering wheel moves.
 - When using the parallel parking guide line display mode
 - Be sure to turn the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.
 - Be sure to keep the steering wheel as it is while backing up.

 CAUTION

■ How to use the camera

- Never back up while looking only at the screen. The image on the screen is different from actual conditions. Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces will differ from actual distances. If you back up while looking only at the screen, you may hit a vehicle, a person or an object. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirrors before proceeding.
- If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change. Be sure to have the camera's position and mounting angle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- With intelligent parking assist: If the camera is subjected to a collision, or the camera orientation confirmation lines are not in line with the bumper, it is likely that the camera position or angle of installation has become crooked. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Use your own eyes to confirm the vehicle's surroundings, as the displayed image may become faint or dark, and moving images will be distorted, or not entirely visible when the outside temperature is low. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirror before proceeding.
- Do not use the system when the trunk is not completely closed.
- If the image may be hard to see due to dirt, direct sunlight, shadow or snow on the camera lens
- If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow, or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- If you scrape the camera cover, or scrub it with a hard brush or an abrasive agent, you may scratch the cover, leading to poor picture quality.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.

⚠ CAUTION

- If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
- When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, or mercury lights, the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.
- Conditions which may affect the sensor
 - Do not attach any accessories within the detection range of the sensors.
 - A sensor may not operate properly in the following situations:
 - There is ice, snow or mud on the sensor. (When it is removed, the normal operation will return.)
 - The sensor is frozen. (When the sensor warms up, it will return to normal.) At low temperatures in particular, sensors that are frozen may not detect a parked vehicle.
 - When the vehicle is tilted.
 - In extreme hot or cold weather.
 - When driving on bumpy roads, slopes, gravelled roads or grass.
 - Devices issuing ultrasonic waves are operated around your vehicle, such as a horn from another vehicle, motorcycle engine, air braking sound from heavy-duty vehicles.
 - When rain or water is splashed over the vehicle.
 - When a radio antenna or fender pole is mounted on your vehicle.
 - The sensor approaches too close to a parked vehicle.

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

- Conditions which may affect the system
 - If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
 - Do not use the system in the following conditions:
 - Outside of parking areas
 - In unprepared parking area such as gravel or sand
 - On slippery or icy roads, or in snow
 - When using tire chains or emergency tires.
 - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.
 - If the asphalt is melted due to harsh sunlight
 - If there are a large number of vehicles or pedestrians passing
 - In areas unsuitable for parking (overly small parking space, cliff etc.)
 - Tire conditions
 - The tires are extremely worn, or the tire inflation pressure is low
 - Tires have received a strong impact, such as bumping against a curb, resulting in improper wheel alignment
 - Do not use tires other than those installed by the manufacturer, as the system may not function correctly. Furthermore, if you change the tires, there may be errors in the positions of the lines and frames displayed on the screen. If you wish to change your tires, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-4. Using other driving systems

 NOTICE

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

- When using the parallel parking guide line display mode
 - When positioning the green frame over the parking space, be sure that the extended green line does not cross the tire of the vehicle parked in front of the empty space. In a case in which positioning the green frame over the desired parking location results in crossing over the vehicle parked in front, position it over an area so that it doesn't cross over.
 - Always check that there are no obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, and that the green vertical lines and extended green line do not overlap any parked vehicles or walls.
 - If there are obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, or the green vertical lines or extended green line overlaps a parked vehicle or wall, there is a danger of collision. In this case, do not use the parallel parking guide line display mode. The same applies if the green frame overlaps the shoulder.
 - When the vehicle in front of the empty space is parked on the shoulder or is not parallel with the road, parallel parking guide line display mode cannot be used.
- When using the parallel parking assist mode
 - Be sure to stop the vehicle parallel to the road or shoulder. If the vehicle is not parallel, the assist location will be very near the shoulder. If it looks like the vehicle will hit or mount the shoulder, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and touch "X" on the screen to deactivate the system.
 - Always check that there are no obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, and that the warning flag and extended green line do not overlap any parked vehicles or walls.
 - If there are obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, or the warning flag or extended green line overlaps a parked vehicle or wall, there is a danger of collision. In this case, do not use the parallel parking assist mode. The same applies if the green frame overlaps the shoulder.
 - The warning flag is only a guide. Be sure to directly check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and back up carefully.
 - If the road surface has level variations or a gradient between the starting position and target parking position, it will not be possible to correctly set the location, which may cause the parking position to be misaligned or crooked. In this case, do not use the parallel parking assist mode.

 NOTICE

- When the vehicle in front of the empty space is parked on the shoulder or is not parallel with the road, parallel parking assist mode cannot be used.
- If the parked vehicle is narrow, or parked close to the shoulder, the assisted parking position may be quite close to the shoulder. If the vehicle seems likely to hit or mount the shoulder, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and disable the system by touching “X”.
- When using the parking assist mode (perpendicular parking)
 - Always check that there are no obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, and that the warning flag does not overlap any parked vehicles or walls.
 - If there are obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, or the warning flag overlaps a parked vehicle or wall, there is a danger of collision. In this case, do not use the parking assist mode.
 - The warning flag is only a guide. Be sure to directly check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and back up carefully.
 - If the road surface has level variations or a gradient between the starting position and target parking position, it will not be possible to correctly set the location, which may cause the parking position to be misaligned or crooked. In this case, do not use the parking assist mode.
 - If the red area which denotes an area unsuitable for parking overlaps with the lines of the parking space, you will be unable to park, as the parking space is judged as being an area unsuitable for parking. Progress to a position where the parking space lines do not overlap with such an area.

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

- **ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)**
Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface
- **Brake assist**
Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation
- **VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)**
Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces
- **TRC (Traction Control)**
Maintains drive power and prevents any of the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads
- **Hill-start assist control**
Prevents the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope
- **EPS (Electric Power Steering)**
Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel
- **VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering)**
Adjust the wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement
- **VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)**
Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control, EPS, and VGRS systems
Maintains vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes and engine output, steering assist and

2-4. Using other driving systems

- Emergency brake signal

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind

- Pre-Crash Safety (if equipped)

→P. 353

- Rear Pre-Crash Safety (if equipped)

→P. 369

When the TRC/VSC/ABS/hill-start assist control systems are operating



The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC/ABS/hill-start assist control systems are operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

FarmaSOS.com

Disabling TRC and/or VSC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, TRC and VSC may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.



- Turning off TRC

Quickly press and release the switch to turn off TRC.

A message will be displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.

- Turning off TRC and VSC

Press and hold the switch for more than 3 seconds while vehicle is stopped to turn off TRC and VSC.

The VSC off indicator light will come on, and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

- When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if the VSC off switch has not been pressed TRC and hill-start assist control cannot be operated. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Automatic reactivation of TRC and VSC
Turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF after turning off the TRC and VSC systems will automatically re-enable them.
- Automatic TRC reactivation
If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases.
- Automatic TRC/VSC reactivation
If the TRC/VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.
- Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRC, hill-start assist control and VGRS systems
 - A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
 - Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
 - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
 - The steering wheel may be moved slightly or a sound may be heard when the engine is started or stopped. None of these indicate that a malfunction has occurred.
- Hill-start assist control is operational when
 - Without paddle shift switches: The shift lever is in the “D” or “S” position.
With paddle shift switches: The shift lever is in the “D” or “M” position.
 - The brake pedal is not depressed.
- EPS operation sound
When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Conditions affecting VGRS operations

In the following situations, the center position of the steering wheel may change. However, the position will return to normal after the conditions are improved.

- When the steering wheel has been operated quickly or operated for an extended period of time while the vehicle is stopped or is moving very slowly
- When the steering wheel has been held fully to the left or right
- When the battery is low or the voltage temporarily drops
- After the engine is started at lower than -30°C (-22°F)

■ Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ If the slip indicator comes on

It may indicate a malfunction in the VSC, TRC and hill start assist control function. (→P. 687)

FarmaSOS.com

 CAUTION

- The ABS does not operate effectively when
 - The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded.
 - The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.
- Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven roads

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

 CAUTION

- TRC may not operate effectively when
Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC system is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.
- If the hill- start assist control does not operate effectively
Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered in ice.
- When the VSC is activated
The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.
- When TRC and VSC are off
Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are systems to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn off TRC and VSC unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the appropriate tire pressure level.
The ABS and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.
Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, for further information when replacing tires or wheels.
- Handling of tires and suspension
Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause the system to malfunction.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

*: If equipped

2-4. Using other driving systems

When the radar sensor detects possibility of a frontal collision, the pre-crash safety system such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage.

■ Pre-crash seat belts (front seats)

If the pre-crash sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-crash safety system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs.

The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle.

However, the system will not operate in the event of skidding when the VSC system is disabled.

■ Pre-crash brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

■ Pre-crash braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to help reduce the collision speed. Pre-crash braking function can be turned on and off using the pre-crash braking off switch. (→P. 355)

■ Suspension control (if equipped)

When it has been determined that there is a high possibility of a collision, suspension firmness is adjusted appropriately.

■ Driver monitor system (if equipped)

When the system determines that there is a possibility of a collision and that the driver is not facing forward, a warning will be issued at an earlier stage, promptly informing the driver of danger. If the situation does not improve, the brakes will be applied briefly to give the driver a sensory warning (pre-crash alert braking), encouraging the

■ Steering gear control (VGRS) (with driver monitor system)

When the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the steering gear ratio is changed to help improve the response to steer-

Disabling pre-crash braking



1 Pre-crash braking and pre-crash alert braking (if equipped) disabled

The “PCS” warning light turns on when pre-crash braking is disabled.

2 Pre-crash braking and pre-crash alert braking (if equipped) enabled

2

When driving

Radar sensor



Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Camera sensor (with driver monitor system)



Detects pedestrians and other three-dimensional objects on or near the road ahead together with the radar sensor while the vehicle is moving. When the headlights are on, near-infrared rays are projected to ensure proper detection performance in the night time.

- 1 Camera sensors
- 2 Near-infrared ray transmitters

Driver monitor sensor (with driver monitor system)



Detects the direction the driver is facing. The system determines whether the driver is facing forward.

■ Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles. There may also be occasions when the radar sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

■ The camera sensor cannot detect obstacles in the following situations.

- The camera sensor is directly receiving intense light, such as sunlight.
- Visibility is poor because of the bad weather or other reasons.
- The sensor temperature is extremely high.

■ The pre-crash safety system is operational when

● Pre-crash seat belts

▶ Operating conditions A

- Vehicle speed is above 5 km/h (4 mph).
- The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at which your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

▶ Operating conditions B

- Vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

● Pre-crash brake assist

- Vehicle speed is above 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at which your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The brake pedal is depressed.

● Pre-crash braking

- The pre-crash braking off switch is not pressed.
- Vehicle speed is above 15 km/h (10 mph).
- The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 20 km/h (13 mph).

2-4. Using other driving systems

- Suspension control (if equipped)
 - Vehicle speed is above 5 km/h (4 mph).
 - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 30 km/h (19 mph).
- Steering gear control (VGRS) (with driver monitor system)
 - Vehicle speed is above 30 km/h (19 mph).
 - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 30 km/h (19 mph).
- Pre-crash alert braking (with driver monitor system)
 - The pre-crash braking off switch is not pressed.
 - The system determines that the driver is not facing forward.
 - Vehicle speed is above 15 km/h (10 mph).
 - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 20 km/h (13 mph).
 - The steering is not being turned.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-4. Using other driving systems

- Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no possibility of collision
 - When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
 - When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
 - When driving over a narrow iron bridge
 - When there is a metal object on the road surface
 - When there is a metal plate in the road in front of the vehicle on a downhill slope
 - When there is a metal object such as a sign board in front of the vehicle on an uphill slope
 - When driving on an uneven road surface
 - When passing an oncoming vehicle on a right-turn (right-hand drive vehicles) or left-turn (left-hand drive vehicles)
 - When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
 - When your vehicle is skidding with the VSC system off
 - When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel.
 - When climbing a steep hill causes an overhead billboard or other metallic structure to appear directly in the vehicle's line of travel.
 - When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
 - When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment
 - When passing through certain toll gates

When the system is activated in the situations described above, there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten it.

2-4. Using other driving systems

- Situations in which the pre-crash safety system does not function properly
The system may not function effectively in situations such as the following:
 - On roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces
 - On slippery roads such as those covered with ice or snow
 - If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection
 - If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle, such as when overtaking
 - In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
 - When your vehicle is skidding with the VSC system off
 - When only part of your vehicle's front end collides with, or contacts, a vehicle or object in a frontal collision
- When there is a malfunction in the system
Warning light will flash and/or warning messages will turn on. (→P. 687, 696)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ Certification

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DNMWR004 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að DNMWR004 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo DNMWR004 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme DNMWR004 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel DNMWR004 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
<i>ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ DNMWR004 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.</i>
Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna DNMWR004 står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el DNMWR004 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto vyhlasuje, že DNMWR004 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta DNMWR004 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento DNMWR004 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr DNMWR004 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Hiernit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät DNMWR004 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at udstyret DNMWR004 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a DNMWR004 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että DNMWR004 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil DNMWR004 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że DNMWR004 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
DENSO CORPORATION declara que este DNMWR004 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan DNMWR004 jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Ar šo, DENSO CORPORATION, deklarē, ka DNMWR004 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis DNMWR004 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Handling the radar sensor**

Observe the following to ensure the pre-crash safety system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

■ Handling the driver monitor sensor (with driver monitor system)

Observe the following to ensure the driver monitor sensor can function effectively.

Failure to do so may result in a malfunction or may prevent the system from correctly determining the direction the driver is facing.

- Do not disassemble, damage, lift or pull on the sensor.
- Do not touch the sensor while driving.
- Do not wet or spill water on the sensor.
- Do not drop anything on or allow anything to hit against the sensor. Do not subject the sensor to an impact.
- Make sure that there are no scratches, dirt or stickers on the side of the sensor that faces the driver.
- Do not place any objects in front of the side of the sensor that faces the driver or cover the sensor.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

 CAUTION

2

When driving

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ Handling the camera sensor (with driver monitor system)

Observe the following to ensure that the PCS functions correctly:

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
PCS effectiveness may be reduced due to the presence of raindrops, condensation, ice or snow on the windshield.
- Do not change the installation position of a camera sensor, or remove and reinstall it. The direction of a camera sensor is precisely adjusted.
- When the windshield fogs up, use the windshield defogger to dry the windshield.
During cold weather, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up, having a negative effect on the images.
- Do not place anything on the dashboard.
Images reflected on the windshield may reduce the effectiveness of a camera sensor.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near a camera sensor.

■ Determining the direction the driver is facing (with driver monitor system)

The driver monitor function does not operate when the vehicle is stopped. The direction the driver is facing may not be determined correctly if any of the following conditions exist:

- There is an object between the driver monitor sensor and the driver's face, such as when the sensor is blocked.
- A part of the driver's face is covered.
- The sensor or the driver's face is exposed to intense light such as sunlight.
- The driving posture is improper.

■ Headlights (with driver monitor system)

The near-infrared ray transmitter projects strong energy that is not visible. Although the transmitter normally turns off when the vehicle is stopped, never look into the headlights for your safety.

■ Limitations of the pre-crash safety system

Do not rely on the pre-crash safety system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system**

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-crash safety system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

● Assisting the driver in watching the road

The pre-crash safety system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

● Assisting the driver in making correct judgment

When attempting to estimate the likelihood of a collision, the only data available to the pre-crash safety system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.

● Assisting the driver in taking action

The pre-crash braking is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system by itself is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

2-4. Using other driving systems

NOTICE

- Camera sensor (with driver monitor system)
Observe the following to ensure that the PCS functions correctly:
 - Do not subject the camera sensor to strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the camera sensor.
 - Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
- Headlights (with driver monitor system)
Observe the following to ensure proper near-infrared ray projection:
 - Keep the headlights clean at all times.
 - The detection performance may deteriorate if the high beams are misaligned or the high beam is inoperative.
- Precautions for cleaning the driver monitor sensor (with driver monitor system)
 - Gently wipe the sensor with a soft cloth to prevent damage.
 - Wipe any excess dirt with a cloth dampened with neutral detergent, all liquids having been wringed out of the cloth. After that, wipe again with a dry cloth.
 - Do not use benzene, thinner, glass cleaners, wax, etc.

FarmaSOS.com

The rear pre-crash safety system will operate to mitigate whiplash when the rear radar sensor detects an unavoidable rear-end collision due to a vehicle approaching from the rear.

■ Whiplash mitigation (pre-crash intelligent head restraint)

When the system determines that a risk of a rear-end collision is very high, the sensor in the front head restraint detects the position of the occupant's head and the head restraint moves to an appropriate position before a rear-end collision in order to mitigate whiplash when a rear-end collision occurs.

2

When driving

Rear radar sensor



The rear radar sensor detects objects approaching from behind and determines whether a rear-end collision is imminent based on the position, speed and heading of the object before it happens.

*: If equipped

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ System operating conditions

When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode and there is a possibility of a rear-end collision due to a vehicle in the same lane approaching from the rear, the system operates if all of the following conditions are met.

- The speed at which the vehicle behind you is approaching your vehicle exceeds about 15 km/h (9 mph).
- The vehicle is stopped or moving forward.

■ Conditions in which it is hard for the sensor to detect objects

The rear pre-crash safety system is not a system that can detect all possible rear-end collisions. There are cases when the system does not detect bicycles, motorcycles, etc. As the system may not operate under the following conditions, always be aware of the surrounding conditions.

- When driving on rough roads, uneven surfaces, etc., and there is significant up and down vehicle movement.
- The road has curves or is bumpy.
- A rear-end collision occurs from an angle or a position that is to the left or right of the vehicle center.
- Raindrops, ice or snow are attached to the rear bumper.

■ Whiplash mitigation

The pre-crash intelligent head restraint may not stop in the proper position if a hat is worn or the occupant's hair is bound at the back.

■ Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no danger of a rear-end collision

- Another vehicle drives past right behind your vehicle when your vehicle is stopped to turn right or left.
- Another vehicle drives past right beside your vehicle when your vehicle is stopped on the side of the road.
- The vehicle behind you passes your vehicle from a short distance while driving.
- The vehicle behind you approaches your vehicle rapidly to a close distance while driving or stopped.

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning light will flash and/or warning messages will turn on. (→P. 687, 696)

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Certification

CE 0891

Hereby, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declares that this 2710000-3060 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir FUJITSU TEN LIMITED yfir því að 2710000-3060 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

Con la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dichiara che questo 2710000-3060 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Käesolevaga kinnitab FUJITSU TEN LIMITED seadme 2710000-3060 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Hierbij verklaart FUJITSU TEN LIMITED dat het toestel 2710000-3060 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ FUJITSU TEN LIMITED ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 2710000-3060 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Härmed intygar FUJITSU TEN LIMITED att denna 2710000-3060 står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Por medio de la presente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que el 2710000-3060 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

FUJITSU TEN LIMITED týmto vyhlasuje, že 2710000-3060 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

FUJITSU TEN LIMITED izjavlja, da je ta 2710000-3060 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

FUJITSU TEN LIMITED tímto prohlašuje, že tento 2710000-3060 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 2710000-3060 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklart FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, dass sich das Gerät 2710000-3060 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED erklærer herved at udstyret 2710000-3060 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Alulírott, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED nyilatkozom, hogy a 2710000-3060 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED vakuuttaa täten että 2710000-3060 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Par la présente FUJITSU TEN LIMITED déclare que l'appareil 2710000-3060 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Niniejszym FUJITSU TEN LIMITED oświadcza, że 2710000-3060 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
FUJITSU TEN LIMITED declara que este 2710000-3060 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, jiddikjara li dan 2710000-3060 jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn rilevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Ar šo, FUJITSU TEN LIMITED, deklarē, ka 2710000-3060 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo FUJITSU TEN LIMITED deklaruoja, kad šis 2710000-3060 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

 CAUTION

■ Precautions for the radar sensor and rear bumper

The rear bumper of vehicles with a rear pre-crash safety system is a functional part that has radio wave permeability. Observe the following to ensure the system can function effectively:

- Keep the rear bumper clean at all times.
Raindrops, ice or snow may deteriorate radar sensor performance.
- Do not subject the radar sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
If the sensor moves even slightly out of position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subjected to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and repaired by authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not disassemble the radar sensor.
- Do not attach a towing hitch, bike holder, protective film or stickers to the center portion of the rear bumper.
- Do not replace the rear bumper with non-genuine parts or modify it.
- For painting or repair of the rear bumper, consult with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified professional.

■ Precaution for the pre-crash intelligent head restraints

Do not put head restraint covers.

FarmaSOS.com

2-5. Driving information

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

CAUTION

■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk.

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the item may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident.
 - Driver's feet
 - Front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
 - Package tray
 - Instrument panel
 - Dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

 CAUTION

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.
Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-5. Driving information

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

■ Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
 - Engine oil
 - Engine coolant
 - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.

- When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

- When parking the vehicle

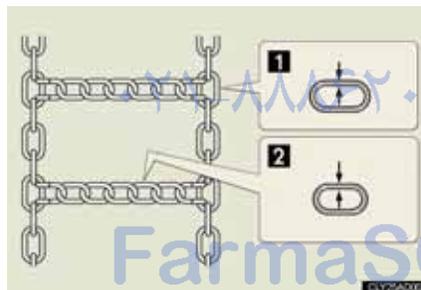
Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to “P” without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

2

When driving

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the snow chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



- 1 Side chain
(3 mm [0.12 in.] in diameter)
- 2 Cross chain
(4 mm [0.16 in.] in diameter)

Regulations on the use of snow chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Install the chains on the rear tires.
- Retighten the chains after driving 0.5 - 1.0 km (1/4 - 1/2 mile).

2-5. Driving information

■ Tire chains

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires. Do not install tire chains on front tires.
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying manual.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

 NOTICE

- Repairing or replacing snow tires (with tire pressure warning system)
Request repairs and obtain replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire air pressure sensor.
- Fitting tire chains (with tire pressure warning system)
The tire air pressure sensor may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

2

When driving

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

2-5. Driving information

Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your Lexus is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-1. Using the touch screen		Listening to Bluetooth®	
Touch screen	374	audio	454
Set up screen	381	Listening to a USB	
Information screen	385	memory/iPod	467
3-2. Using the air conditioning		Optimal use of the	
system and defogger		audio/video system	478
Front air conditioning		Using the AUX port.....	480
system	387	Using the rear seat	
Rear air conditioning		audio controls	481
system	402	Using the steering	
Rear window and outside		wheel audio switches.....	485
rear view mirror		3-4. Using the rear seat	
defoggers.....	408	entertainment system	
Windshield wiper de-icer.....	409	Rear seat entertainment	
3-3. Using the audio system		system features	489
Audio system types	411	Using the radio.....	496
Using the radio	415	Using the DVD player	497
Using the CD/DVD		Playing an audio CD and	
player	420	MP3/WMA discs	498
Playing an audio CD and		Playing a DVD video/	
MP3/WMA discs	424	audio	499
Playing DVD video/audio	429	Playing a video CD.....	509
Playing a video CD	442	DVD player and DVD	
CD/DVD player and		video disc information...	513
DVD video disc		Using the video mode	515
information	445	Changing other setting.....	517

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>3-5. Using the hands-free system
(for cellular phone)
Hands-free system
(for cellular phone) 519
Using the Bluetooth®
phone..... 526
Setting the hands-free
system 540</p> <p>3-6. Using the interior lights
Interior lights list..... 569</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Interior lights 570 • Personal lights..... 571 <p>3-7. Using the storage
features
List of storage features..... 573</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Glove box..... 574 • Coin holder 575 • Door pockets 575 • Cup holders 576 • Console box 577 • Non smokers boxes..... 578 • Cool box/auxiliary
box 579 • Auxiliary boxes..... 581 | <p>3-8. Other interior features
Sun visors 583
Vanity mirrors 584
Clock..... 585
Outside temperature
display..... 587
Ashtrays 588
Cigarette lighters..... 589
Power outlets 591
Heated steering wheel..... 593
Climate control seats/
seat heaters..... 595
Armrest 598
Rear sunshade 599
Rear door sunshades 601
Trunk storage extension... 604
Coat hooks 606
Floor mat..... 607
Trunk features 608</p> |
|--|--|

3-1. Using the touch screen

Touch screen

By touching the screen with your finger, you can control the audio system and air conditioning system, and adjust the screen display, etc.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.



A With navigation system

B Without navigation system

This illustration is for left-hand drive vehicle.

FarmaSOS.com

3-1. Using the touch screen

Button	Page
“CLIMATE”	P. 387
“AUDIO”	P. 411/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“SETUP”	P. 381/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“DISP”	P. 376/ Navigation System Owner’s Manual
“MAP/VOICE”	Navigation System Owner’s Manual

3

Interior features

The initial screen



If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is set to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the initial screen will be displayed for a few seconds as the system starts up.

3-1. Using the touch screen

Adjusting the display

STEP 1 Press “DISP”.

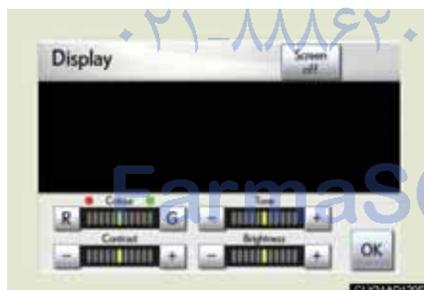
STEP 2 Adjust the display as desired using “-” / “+” / “R” / “G”.

If you do not touch the screen for 20 seconds, the system will return to the previous screen.

► With CD mode



► With DVD mode



	“R”	“G”
“Colour”	Red	Green
	“-”	“+”
“Tone”	Lighter	Darker
“Contrast”	Weaker	Stronger
“Brightness”	Darker	Brighter

- To avoid damaging the touch screen
 - Touch the screen lightly with your finger. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen and try again.
 - Remove any dirt on the screen by wiping with a soft cloth. Do not use detergent.
- When using the touch screen
 - If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
 - The screen may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses. Change your angle of viewing, adjust the display on the “Display” screen or remove your sunglasses.
- Changing between day mode and night mode



When the headlights are turned on, the screen dims.

However, the screen can be switched to day mode by touching “Day mode”.

The screen will stay in day mode when the headlights are turned on until “Day mode” is touched again.

The screen will not be displayed if the instrument panel light control is set to the brightest level.

- To turn off the display
 - If “Screen off” is touched, the screen display is turned off, and guidance is by voice only.
- Turning on or off the rear display (if equipped)



Touch “Rear”.

3-1. Using the touch screen

Inputting letters and numbers/List screen operation

Letters and numbers can be input via the screen.

■ To input letters and numbers

▶ Letters



Enter letters by touching the keys directly.

 : Backspace

 : To enter in lower case

 : To enter in upper case

 : Space

 : To select a keyboard language

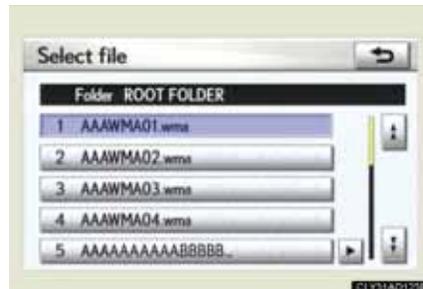
▶ Numbers and symbols



 : To display numbers and symbols (→P. 380)

 : To display other symbols

■ List screen operation



When a list is displayed, use the appropriate button to scroll through the list.

  : To shift to the next or previous page. Touch

 or  to scroll through the displayed list.

 : Shows the displayed screen position.

  : If  appears to the right of the item name, the complete name is too long for the display. Touch  to scroll to the end of the name. Touch  to scroll to the beginning of the name.

3-1. Using the touch screen

- If you touch 

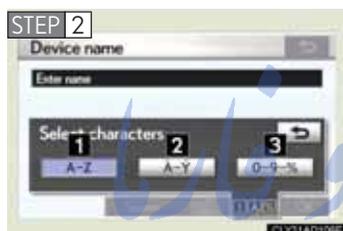
The display returns to the previous screen.

- Changing the keyboard layout

Keyboard layout can be changed. →P. 383

- To input the letters with accent marks, numbers or symbols

STEP 1 Touch  on the input screen.



Select the desired characters.

- 1 Letters
- 2 Letters with accent marks
- 3 Numbers and symbols

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-1. Using the touch screen Set up screen (without navigation system)

You can change the touch screen to your desired settings.
Press “SETUP” to display the “Setup” screen.



Switch	Page
“General”	P. 382
“Clock”	P. 585
“Voice”	P. 384
“Telephone”	P. 540
“Audio”	P. 457
“Vehicle”	P. 271

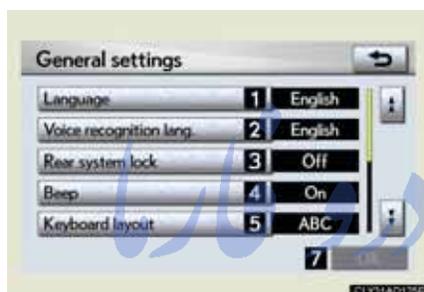
3-1. Using the touch screen

General settings

This screen is used for various settings such as language selection and setting operation sounds.

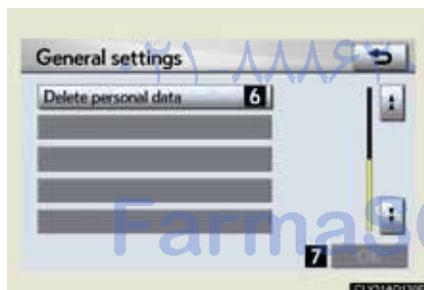
Touch “General” on the “Setup” screen.

► Page 1



- 1 Select language
- 2 Select voice recognition language
- 3 Rear seat entertainment system lock (if equipped)
- 4 Beep on/off
- 5 Select keyboard layout

► Page 2



- 6 Delete personal data
 - 7 Save the settings
- Make sure to save after changing settings.

■ Rear system lock setting

The operation lock on the rear seat entertainment system can be turned on or off.

- Keyboard layout setting
The keyboard layout can be changed.
- ▶ “ABC” type



- ▶ “QWERTY” type



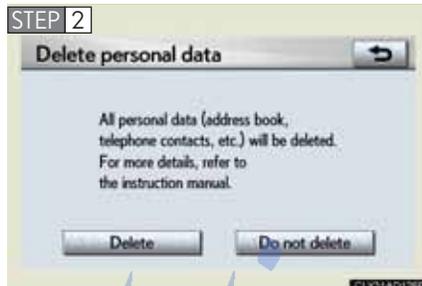
- ▶ “AZERTY” type



3-1. Using the touch screen

■ Delete personal data

STEP 1 Touch “Delete personal data” on the “General settings” screen.



Touch “Delete”.

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

STEP 3 A confirmation screen will be displayed. Touch “Yes”.

The following personal data can be deleted or turned to their default settings.

- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Voice tag data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Volume setting
- Details setting

Voice settings

Touch “Voice” on the “Setup” screen.



1 Select the voice guidance volume

2 Select the voice recognition talkback

3 Restore default settings

4 Save the settings

Make sure to save after changing settings.

3-1. Using the touch screen

Information screen (without navigation system)

“Information” screen can be used to display the fuel consumption information or operate the hands-free system.

Press “INFO/TEL” to display the “Information” screen.



Switch	Page
“Telephone”	P. 526
“Fuel consumption”	P. 386

FarmaSOS.com

3-1. Using the touch screen

Fuel consumption

Fuel consumption information from recent resets will be displayed.

Touch “Fuel consumption” on the “Information” screen.



- 1 Resetting the consumption data
- 2 Previous fuel consumption per minute
- 3 Current fuel consumption per minute
- 4 Cruising range

Average fuel consumption for the past 30 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode.

FarmaSOS.com

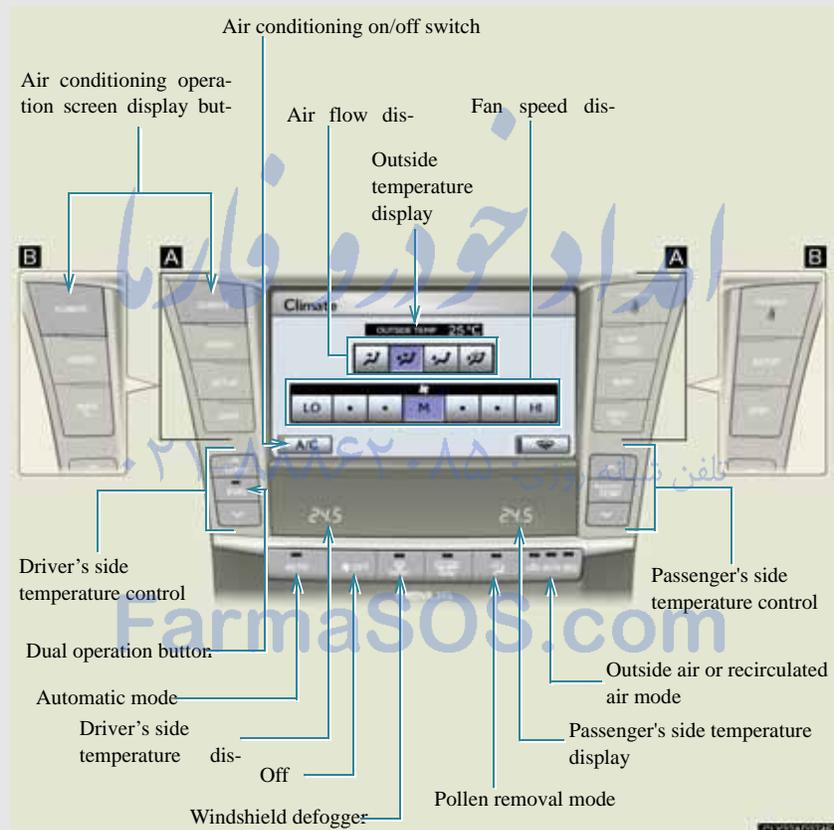
3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front air conditioning system

Air flow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press "CLIMATE" to display the air conditioning operation screen.

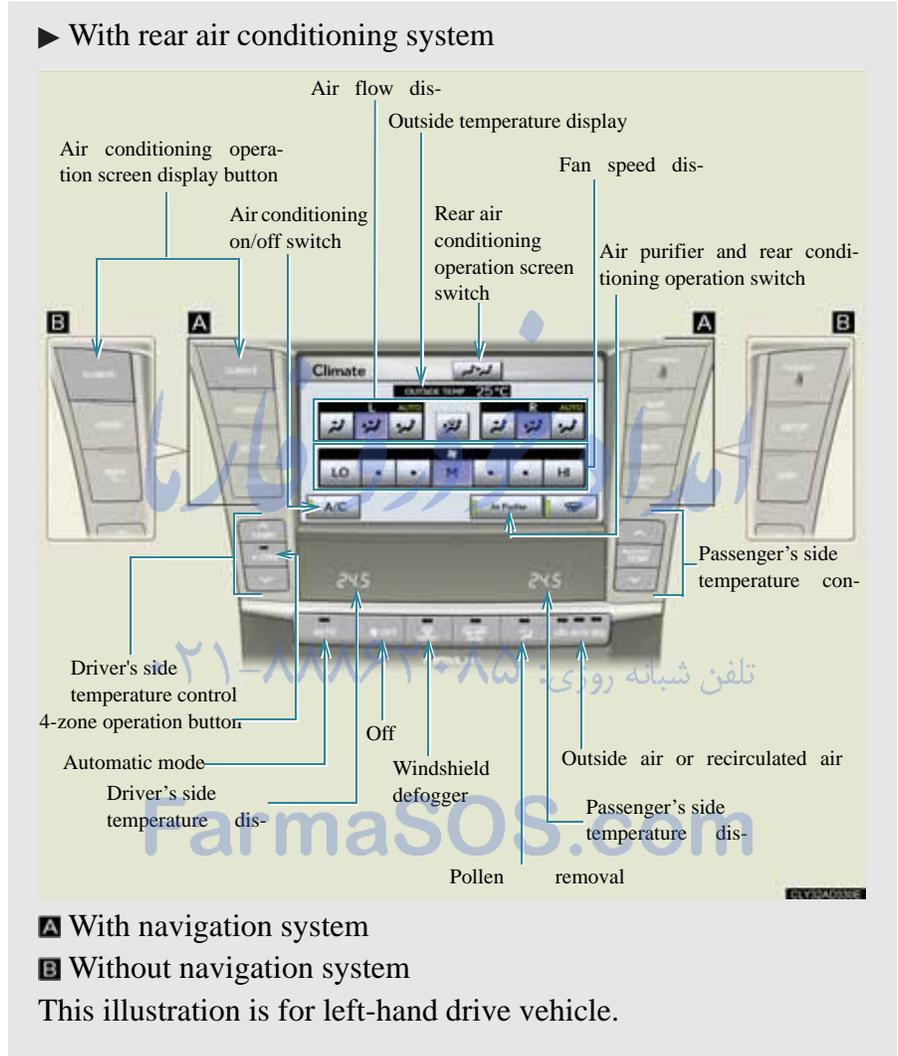
► Without rear air conditioning system



A With navigation system

B Without navigation system

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger



Using the speech command system (with navigation system)

The speech command system is used to turn the air conditioning system on and off and to change temperature settings.

▶ Without paddle shift switches



Pull  to operate the speech command system. (→“Navigation System Owner’s Manual”)

▶ With paddle shift switches



Press  to operate the speech command system. (→“Navigation System Owner’s Manual”)

Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press “AUTO”.

➔ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

➔ The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

STEP 3 Press “^” on “TEMP” or “PASSENGER TEMP” to increase the temperature and “v” to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately. (without rear air conditioning system)

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting. (with rear air conditioning system)

Adjusting the settings

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

▶ Without rear air conditioning system

Press “^” on “TEMP” or “PASSENGER TEMP” to increase the temperature and “v” to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between dual and simultaneous modes each time “DUAL” is pressed.

Dual mode (the indicator on “DUAL” is on): The temperature for the left-hand seat and right-hand seat can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side temperature control will enter dual mode.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Simultaneous mode (the indicator on “DUAL” is off): Only “^” and “v” on “TEMP” (driver’s side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3

Interior features

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

► With rear air conditioning system

Press “^” on “TEMP” or “PASSENGER TEMP” to increase the temperature and “v” to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time “4-ZONE” is pressed.

Individual mode (the indicator on “4-ZONE” is on): The temperature for the driver’s, front passenger’s and rear seats (→P. 403) can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger’s side temperature control will enter individual mode.

Simultaneous mode (the indicator on “4-ZONE” is off): Only “^” and “v” on “TEMP” (driver’s side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

■ Adjusting the fan speed

Touch any switch of  (decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.

Press  to turn the fan off. تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵۰۱۱۴۷۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

- Changing the air outlets
- ▶ Without rear air conditioning system



Touch any mode on the operation screen.

- ▶ With rear air conditioning system



Touch any mode on the operation screen.

- 1 L: Left-hand front seat
- 2 R: Right-hand front seat

Different air outlets for the left-hand and right-hand front seats can be chosen.

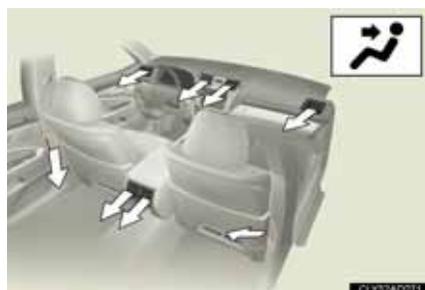
3

Interior features

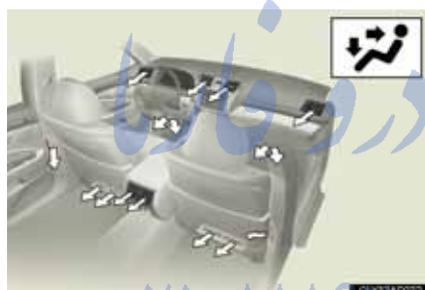
FarmaSOS.com

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.



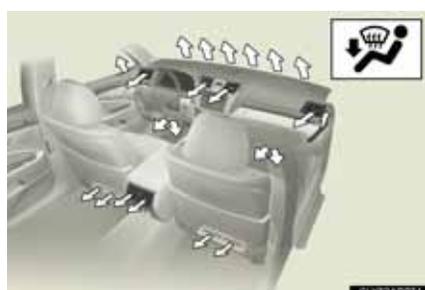
Upper body



Upper body and feet



Feet



Feet and windshield

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press .

The mode switches between  (recycles air inside the vehicle), “AUTO” and  (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the air intake control system is switched to automatic mode, it operates automatically.

Turning the air purifier off (with rear air conditioning system)

Touch “Air Purifier” on the operation screen.

The air purifier will turn off when the indicator on the switch goes off. Air will not flow from the roof vents.

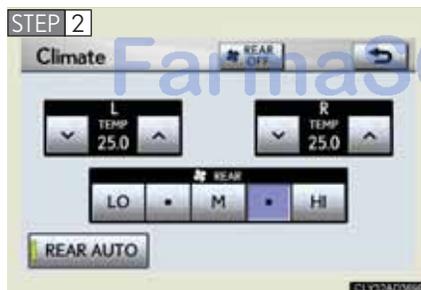
To turn the air purifier on, touch “Air Purifier” again.

Operating the rear air conditioning system on the operation screen (with rear air conditioning system)

■ Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Touch  on the operation screen.

STEP 2 Touch “REAR AUTO”.



➔ The air conditioning system and air purifier will operate, and air outlets and fan speed will be set automatically.

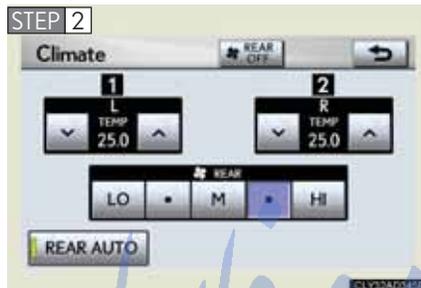
STEP 3 Touch “^” on “TEMP” to increase the temperature and “v” to decrease the temperature.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

STEP 1 Touch  on the operation screen.



STEP 2

Touch “^” (increase) or “v” (decrease) on the operation screen. Operating the switch will enter individual mode.

1 L: Left-hand rear seat

2 R: Right-hand rear seat

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time “4-ZONE” is pressed.

■ Adjusting the fan speed (air purifier and cooler from the roof vents)

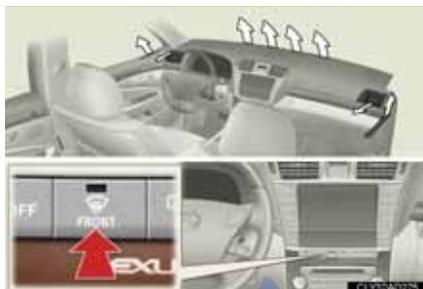
STEP 1 Touch  on the operation screen.

STEP 2 Touch any switch of  (decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.

According to the air outlets currently selected, the fan speed of either the cool air from the roof vents or air purifier will be adjusted.
(→P. 406)

Touch  on the operation screen to turn the fan off.

Defogging the windshield



Press  .

The air conditioning system operates automatically.

Pollen removal mode



Press  .

Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body. تلفن: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

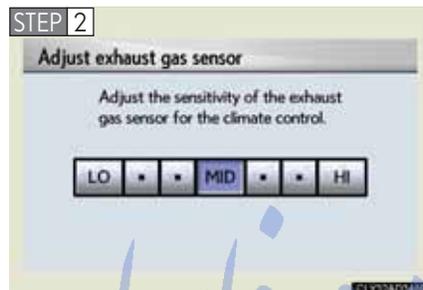
Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 1 to 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, press  again.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode

STEP 1 Press  until the “Adjust exhaust gas sensor” screen appears while the vehicle is stopped.



Touch any switch of  (lower sensitivity ↔ higher sensitivity) on the operation screen.

Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

► Front center outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

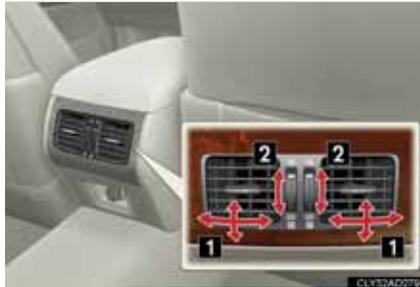
► Front side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

► Rear center outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

► Rear side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

► Roof side outlets (with rear air conditioning system)



- Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode

■ Customization

The air conditioning control of Eco drive mode can be changed to the same setting as that used in normal drive mode.
(Customizable features →P. 762)

■ Using the automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- Immediately after “AUTO” is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ Using the system in recirculated air mode

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

■ Window defogger feature

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ When outside temperature approaches 0°C (32°F)

The air conditioning system may not operate even when “A/C” is touched.

■ Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the air conditioning is off, and the fan is operating, turning the “AUTO” mode on will activate the air conditioning system.

■ Pollen removal mode

● In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur:

- Outside air mode does not switch to .
- The air conditioning system operates automatically.
- The operation cancels after 1 minute.

● In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

■ Air purifier (with rear air conditioning system)

The air purifier will turn on when turning the rear air conditioning system on.

■ Air conditioning odors

● During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.

● To reduce potential odors from occurring:

- It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
- The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

CAUTION

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger



NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

امداد خودرو فارما

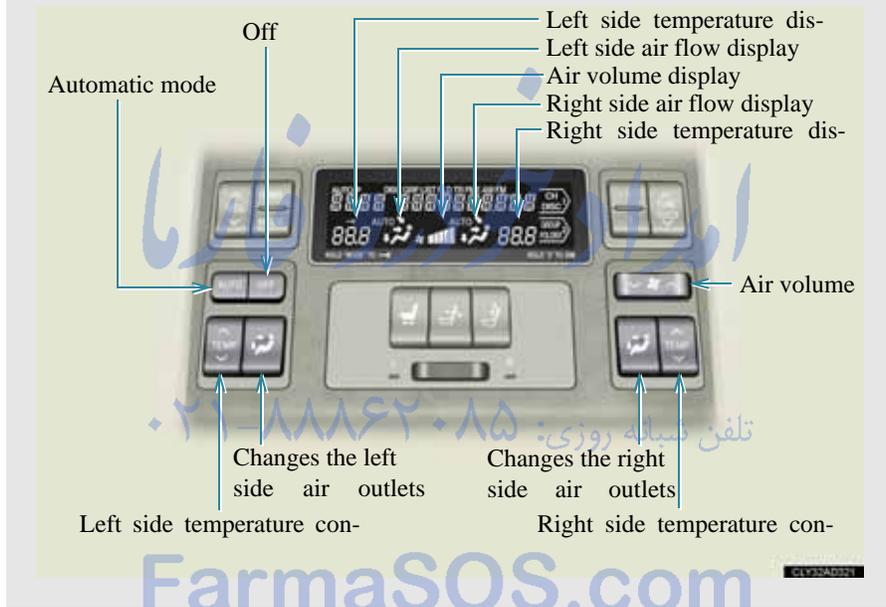
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Air flow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

► Rear controller



*: If equipped

Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press “AUTO”.

➔ The air conditioning system and air purifier will operate, and air outlets and fan speed will be set automatically.

“AUTO” will be displayed on the control panel.

STEP 2 Press “^” on “TEMP” to increase the temperature and “v” to decrease the temperature.

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

Adjusting the settings

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press “^” on “TEMP” to increase the temperature and “v” to decrease the temperature.

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

■ Changing the air outlets

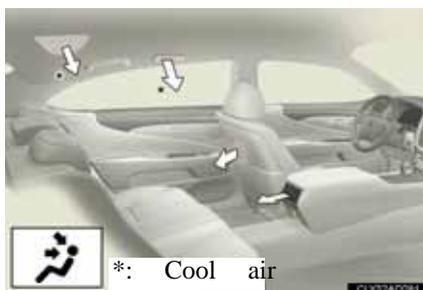
Press  ArmaSOS.com

The air outlets change as follows each time the  is pressed.

Different air outlets for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be chosen.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.



Upper body

When the indicator on “A/C”
(on the front operation screen)
is on



Upper body

When the indicator on “A/C”
(on the front operation screen)
is off



Upper body and feet



Feet

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Adjusting the air volume

The volume of cool air or air from the air purifier can be adjusted according to the mode selected.

Press “^” (increase) or “v” (decrease) on  .



Cool air flows from roof vents.

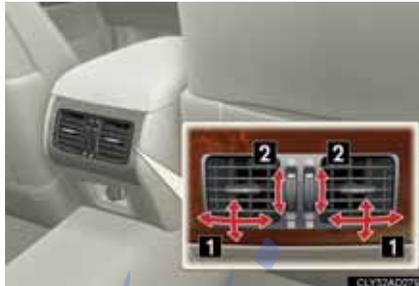


Air purifier operation (air flows from the rear package tray.)

Press “OFF” to turn the fan off.

Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

► Rear center outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

► Rear side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

► Roof side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Button lock function



To prevent inadvertent operation, the buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. Press “MODE” until you hear a beep to lock the buttons. Pressing “MODE” again until you hear a beep will release the lock.

The indicator appears on the display when the buttons are locked.

■ Rear control panel illumination off function



Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. Press “2” until you hear a beep to turn the illumination off. Pressing “2” again until you hear a beep will turn the illumination on.

■ Replacing the rear air conditioning filter

Replacing the air conditioning filter when using rear air conditioning or air purifier reduces air flow or deodorizing performance. (→P. 656)

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove rain-drops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.



On/off

Press  to turn on the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers. The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed. Pressing the button again also turns the defoggers

- The defogger can be operated when
The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

CAUTION

- When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on
Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirrors, as they can become very hot and burn you.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

► Without navigation system

STEP 1



Press “CLIMATE” to display the air conditioning operation screen.

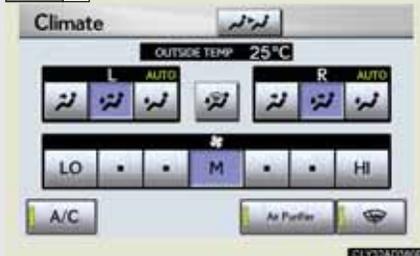
► With navigation system

STEP 1



Press “CLIMATE” to display the air conditioning operation screen.

STEP 2



Touch  to turn on the windshield wiper de-icer. The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.

Touching the switch again also turns the de-icer off.

*: If equipped

- The windshield wiper de-icer can be operated when
The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

 CAUTION

- When the windshield wiper de-icer is on
Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-3. Using the audio system

Audio system types (without navigation system)

CD and (optional) DVD player with changer and AM/FM radio

Press “AUDIO” to display the audio control screen.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner's Manual”.

► Type A (DVD player with changer, and AM/FM radio)



3-3. Using the audio system

► Type B (CD player with changer, and AM/FM radio)



The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

CD player: Plays audio CDs, CD text, MP3 discs and WMA discs.

DVD player: Plays audio CDs, CD text, video CDs, MP3 discs, WMA discs, DVD video discs and DVD audio discs.

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 415
Using the CD/DVD player	P. 420
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs	P. 424
Playing DVD video/audio	P. 429
Playing a video CD	P. 443
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information	P. 446
Listening to Bluetooth® audio	P. 457
Listening to a USB memory/iPod	P. 471
Optimal use of the audio/video system	P. 482
Using the AUX port	P. 484

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

CAUTION

■ Certification for the disc player with changer

This product is a class 1 laser product.

- A laser beam leak may result in hazardous radiation exposure.
- Do not open the cover of the player or attempt to repair the unit yourself. Refer servicing to qualified personnel.
- Laser power: No hazardous

NOTICE

- To prevent battery discharge
Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.
- To avoid damaging the audio system
Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

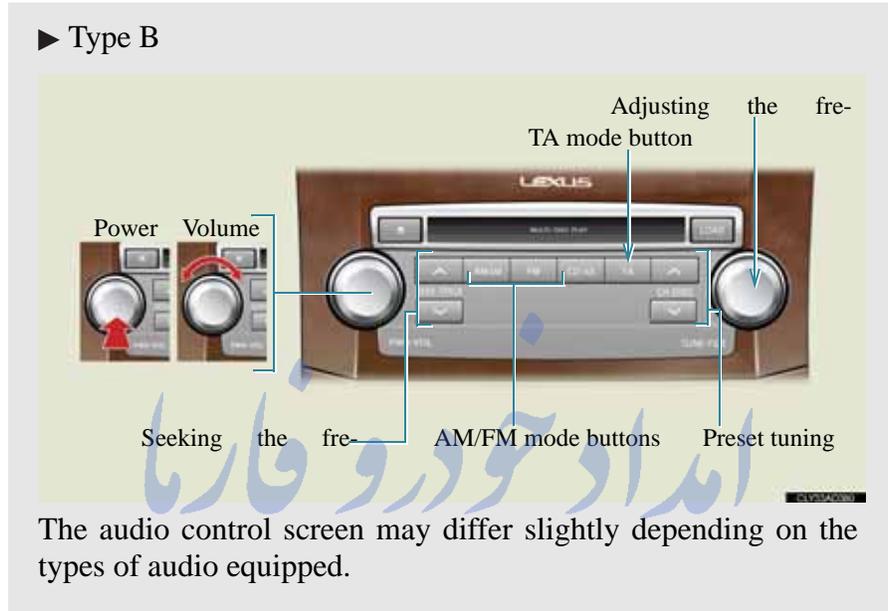
3-3. Using the audio system Using the radio

Press “AM•DAB” or “FM” and touch each tabs on the audio control screen to choose either an MW or FM band.

► Type A



3-3. Using the audio system



Setting station presets

■ Manually

STEP 1 Search for desired stations by turning  or pressing “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK”.

STEP 2 Touch and hold one of the preset stations (1 - 6) until you hear a beep.

■ Automatically (MW mode)

Touch and hold “AST” on the screen until you hear a beep.

➔ Up to 6 stations are set in order of reception quality. When the settings are finished, 2 beeps will be heard.

RDS (Radio Data System)

■ Listening to stations of the same network



Touch “AF” on the screen.

“AF” on, “REG” off modes: The station among those of the same network with strong reception is selected.

“AF” on, “REG” on modes: The station among those of the same network with strong reception and broadcasting the same program is selected. *تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۸۵*

“AF” off, “REG” off modes: The “AF” function does not work.

Each time “AF” is touched, the mode changes in the order of “AF” on, “REG” off → “AF” on, “REG” on → “AF” off, “REG” off.

■ Traffic information

Press “TA”.

TP mode: The system automatically switches to traffic information when a broadcast with a traffic information signal is received.

The station returns to the previous one when the traffic information ends.

If any type program station is not found, “Nothing” appears on the screen.

TA mode: Traffic information can be heard only when a signal is received. The system switches to the mute mode when a signal is not received. In the CDs, MP3/WMA or DVD mode, the system automatically switches to traffic information when a signal is received.

The audio system returns to the mute, CD, MP3/WMA or DVD mode when the traffic information ends.

If any type program station is not found, “Nothing” appears on the screen.

The audio system mode change as follows each time “TA” is pressed.

FM mode: “TP” → “TA” → off

Modes other than the radio modes: “TA” → off

■ Emergency broadcast reception mode



“Alarm” appears on the screen in the event that an emergency broadcast is received, and the emergency broadcast is aired.

■ EON (Enhanced Other Network) system (for traffic announcement function)

If the RDS station (with EON data) you are listening to is not broadcasting a traffic information program and the audio system is in the TA (Traffic announcement) mode, the radio will be switched automatically to a station broadcasting a traffic information program in the EON AF list when traffic information begins.

■ When the battery is disconnected

All preset stations are erased.

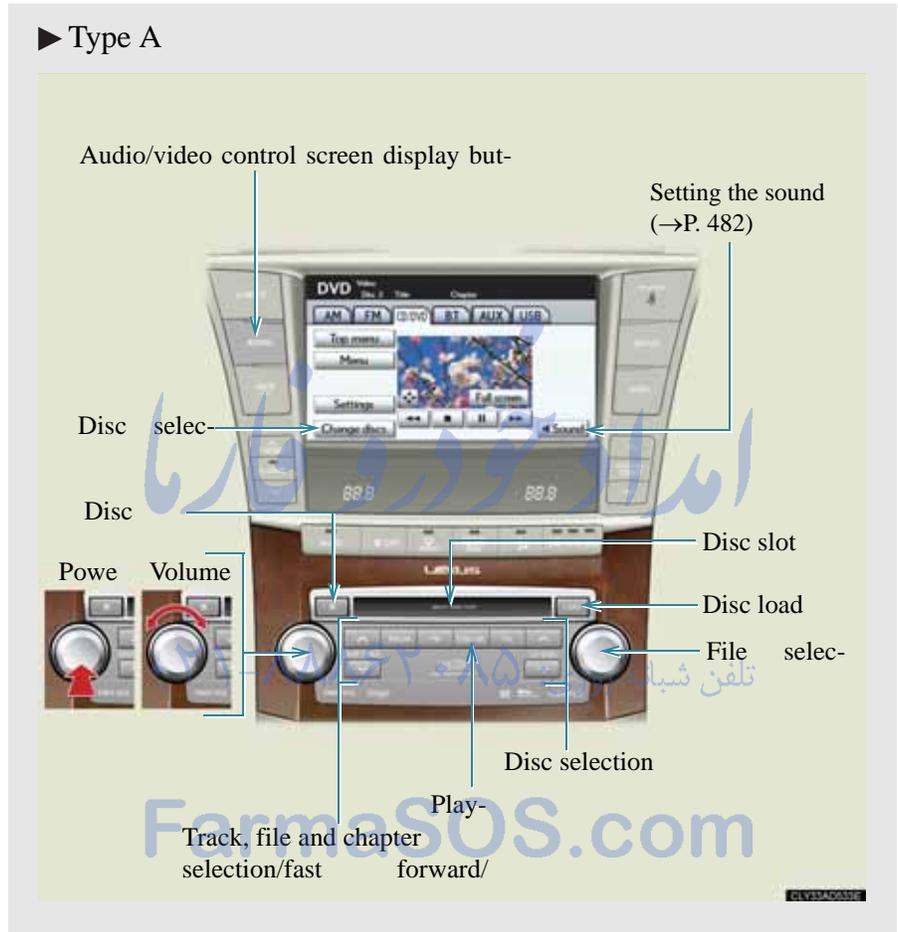
■ Reception sensitivity

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- When “AST” is used, automatic station selection and automatic registering of stations may not be possible.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

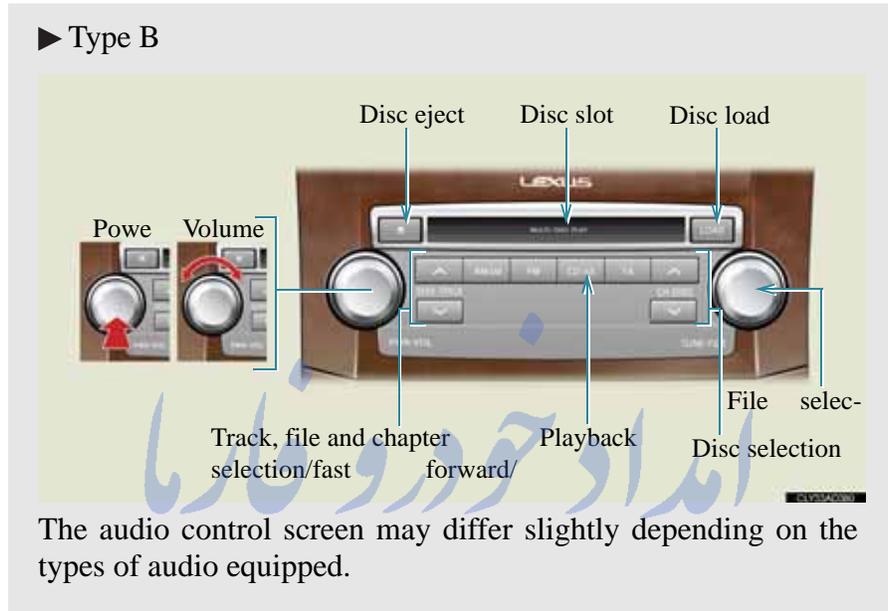
■ Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) radio

The optional radio antenna and tuner are necessary for the use of Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) radio.

3-3. Using the audio system
 Using the CD/DVD* player



*: If equipped



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Loading discs

■ Loading a single disc

STEP 1 Press “LOAD”.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.

■ Loading multiple discs

STEP 1 Press and hold “LOAD” until you hear a beep.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.

STEP 3 After inserting a disc, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next disc after the disc slot door has opened.

STEP 4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all discs.

To cancel the operation, press the “LOAD”, “DISC•AUX” or “CD•AUX”. If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

Ejecting discs

■ Ejecting a disc

STEP 1 Select the disc to be ejected.

STEP 2 Press  and remove the disc.

■ Ejecting all discs

Press and hold  until you hear a beep, then remove the discs.

Selecting a disc

- To select a disc
Press “^” or “v” on “CH•DISC”.

- Selecting a disc from the disc list

STEP 1 Touch “Change discs” on the screen.

STEP 2

Touch the desired disc.



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-3. Using the audio system

Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs

Insert a disc or press “DISC•AUX” or “CD•AUX” or touch “CD/DVD” tab or “CD” tab on the audio control screen with a disc inserted.

■ Control icon screen

▶ CD mode



- 1 Selecting a track
- 2 Selecting a file
- 3 4 Selecting a folder
- 5 Selecting a disc (→P. 423)
- 6 Repeat play
- 7 Random playback
- 8 Search playback
- 9 Setting the sound (→P. 482)

▶ MP3/WMA mode



The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the

Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning tracks

■ Selecting a track

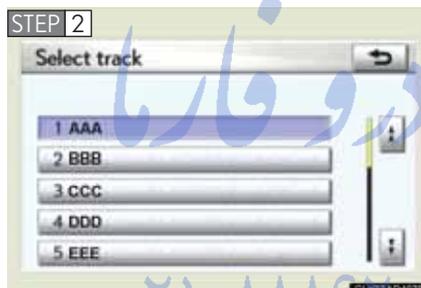
Press “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” to select the desired track number.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” until you hear a beep.

■ Selecting a track from the track list

STEP 1 Touch “Select” of “Track” on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired track number.

↑ or ↓ : changes the list by 5 track groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Scanning a disc

STEP 1 Touch “SCAN” on the screen.

“SCAN” appears on the screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

STEP 2 Touch “SCAN” once again when the desired track is reached.

■ Scanning loaded discs

STEP 1 Touch and hold “SCAN” on the screen until “D.SCAN” appears.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on each disc will be played.

STEP 2 Touch “SCAN” once again when the desired disc is reached.

Selecting a folder

- Selecting a folder

Touch “Folder ▲” or “▼” on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

- Selecting a folder from the folder list

STEP 1 Touch “Select” of “Folder” on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired folder number.



or : changes the list by 5 folder groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

- Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder
Touch and hold “SCAN” on the screen until “FLD.SCAN” appears. Touch “SCAN” once again when the desired folder is reached.

FarmaSOS.com

Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning files

■ Selecting one file at a time

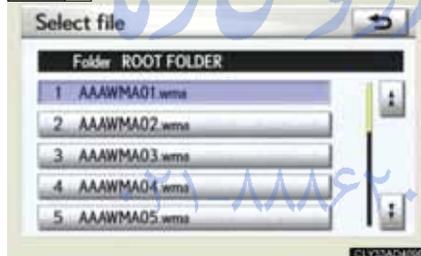
Turn  or press “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” to select the desired file.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” until you hear a beep.

■ Selecting a file from the file list

STEP 1 Touch “Select” of “File” on the screen.

STEP 2 Touch the desired file number.



 or  : changes the list by 5 file groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Selecting a desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Touch “SCAN” on the screen.

Touch “SCAN” once again when the desired file is reached.

Random playback

▶ Audio CD

■ Current disc

Touch “RAND” on the screen.

Tracks are played in random order.

■ All discs

Touch and hold “RAND” on the screen until “D.RAND” appears.

Tracks on all loaded discs are played in random order.

- ▶ MP3/WMA disc
 - Playing files from a particular folder in random order
Touch “RAND” on the screen.
 - Playing all the files on a disc in random order
Touch and hold “RAND” on the screen until “FLD.RAND” appears.

Repeating a track or a disc

- ▶ Audio CD
 - Repeating a track
Touch “RPT” on the screen.
 - Repeating a disc
Touch and hold “RPT” on the screen until “D.RPT” appears.
- ▶ MP3/WMA disc
 - Repeating a file
Touch “RPT” on the screen.
 - Repeating all of the files in a folder
Touch and hold “RPT” on the screen until “FLD.RPT” appears.

-
- Canceling scan, random and repeat playback
Touch “SCAN”, “RAND”, or “RPT” on the screen once again.
 - Displaying the title and artist name
If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the titles of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 letters can be displayed.
 - Error messages
→P. 446

3-3. Using the audio system Playing DVD video/audio*

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

When a DVD video disc or DVD audio disc is inserted while driving, the main story will automatically be played. However, some discs may not be played automatically.

Insert a disc or press “DISC•AUX” or touch “CD/DVD” tab on the

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3

Interior features

*: If equipped

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Control icon screen

Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching a video, and the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



1 2 Menu screen appears

3 Settings screen appears
(→P. 431)

4 Selecting a disc (→P. 423)

5 Display menu control key
(→P. 432)

6 Returns to the full screen
(only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)

7 Rewind

8 Stop

9 Pause

Touch  to play

10 Fast forward

11 Setting the sound (→P. 482)

▶ DVD audio mode



■ Settings screen

Touch “Settings” on the control icon screen, the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



▶ DVD audio mode



- 1 Search by title/group number
- 2 Change audio language/audio format
- 3 Change angle
- 4 Change initial setting
- 5 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
- 6 Change subtitle language
- 7 Change screen size
- 8 Returns to the full screen (only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)
- 9 Return to previous page
- 10 Select menu number
- 11 Go to next page
- 12 Repeat play
- 13 Random playback
- 14 Search playback

3-3. Using the audio system

Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Touch and hold  or  on the control icon screen or press and hold “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” until you hear a beep.

Slow playback

Touch  and then touch  on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching .

Using the DVD menu

STEP 1 Touch “Menu” or “Top menu” on the control icon screen.

Touch  if the menu control key does not appear on the menu screen.

STEP 2



Touch menu item on the screen or touch , ,  or  to select a menu item and then touch “Enter” to select.

Note that specific items or the operating method differs from one DVD to another. Refer to the manual that comes with the DVD disc. (The above image is an example.)

Searching a desired screen

■ Searching by title (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Touch “Search” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired title number and then touch “OK”.

■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch “Search” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired group number and then touch “OK”.

■ Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode, if the DVD has bonus options)

STEP 1 Touch “Search” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired bonus group number and then touch “OK”.

■ Searching by chapter/track

Press “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” to select the desired chapter/track.

■ Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch “Select number” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired menu number and then touch “OK”.

Changing the subtitle language

STEP 1 Touch “Subtitles” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Each time you touch “Change”, the next available language is selected.

“Hide”: hides the subtitles

3-3. Using the audio system

Changing the audio language (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Touch “Audio” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2

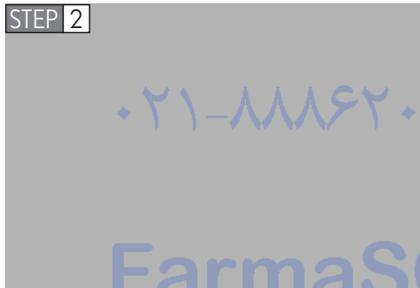


Each time you touch “Change”, the next available language is selected.

Changing the audio format (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch “Audio” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Each time you touch “Change”, the next available audio format is selected.

Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Touch “Angle” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Each time you touch “Change”, the next available angle is selected.

Changing screen size

STEP 1 Touch “Wide” on the “Settings” screen.



Touch the desired switch and then touch “OK”.

- 1** Displays a 3 : 4 screen, with either side in black
- 2** Widens the 3 : 4 screen horizontally to fill the screen
- 3** Widens the 3 : 4 screen vertically and horizontally, in the same ratio, to fill the screen

Changing the page (DVD audio mode)

Touch “Previous page” or “Next page” on the “Settings” screen to change the page.

Repeating a track (DVD audio mode)

Touch “RPT” on the “Settings” screen.

Random playback (DVD audio mode)

Touch “RAND” on the “Settings” screen.

Tracks are played in random order.

Scanning tracks (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch “SCAN” on the “Settings” screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

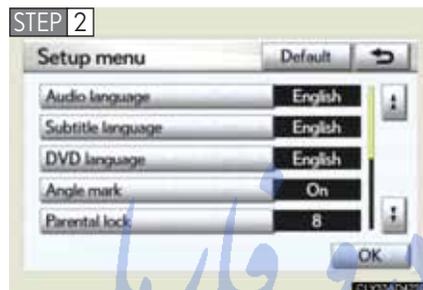
STEP 2 Touch “SCAN” once again when the desired track is reached.

Initial DVD setup

■ Displaying “Setup menu” screen

STEP 1 Touch “DVD Video settings” or “DVD Audio settings” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2



After you change the initial settings, touch “OK”.

“Default”: restores default settings



■ Setting audio language (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Touch “Audio language” on the “Setup menu” screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 438)

■ Setting subtitle language

STEP 1 Touch “Subtitle language” on the “Setup menu” screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 438)

■ Setting menu language

STEP 1 Touch “DVD language” on the “Setup menu” screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 438)

■ Setting angle mark

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

STEP 1 Touch “Angle mark” on the “Setup menu” screen.

STEP 2 Select “On” or “Off”.

■ Setting parental lock (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Touch “Parental lock” on the “Setup menu” screen.

STEP 2 Input the 4-digit personal code and then touch “OK”.

Touch  10 times to reset the personal code.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 448)

■ Setting the auto start

Discs that are inserted while the vehicle is in motion will automatically start playing.

STEP 1 Touch “Auto start” on the “Setup menu” screen.

STEP 2 Select “On” or “Off”.

Certain discs may not play if you set to “On”.

■ Setting sound dynamic range (DVD video mode)

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

STEP 1 Touch “Sound dynamic range” on the “Setup menu” screen.

STEP 2 Select “MAX”, “STD” or “MIN”.

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Entering a language code

If you touch “Other” on the “Audio language” screen, “Subtitle language” screen or “DVD language” screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.

Input the 4-digit language code and then touch “OK”.

● Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1001	Japanese
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1009	Yiddish
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1023	Javanese
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1101	Georgian

0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1111	Kazakh
------	--------	------	---------	------	--------

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3

Interior features

3-3. Using the audio system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1112	Greenlandic
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1113	Cambodian
0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scots-Gaelic	1114	Kannada
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto-Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sangho	2012	Tagalog
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo-Croatian	2014	Setswana
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tonga

1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-3. Using the audio system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

■ When the menu screen is first displayed



This screen appears after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ When a rear passenger selects “Setup Menu”



To cancel the set up operation from the rear seat, touch “Play”.

■ Canceling repeat, random and scan playback

Touch “RPT”, “RAND” or “SCAN” on the screen once again.

■ Rear system lock

→P. 408

■ Error messages

If “Region code error” is displayed, check the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

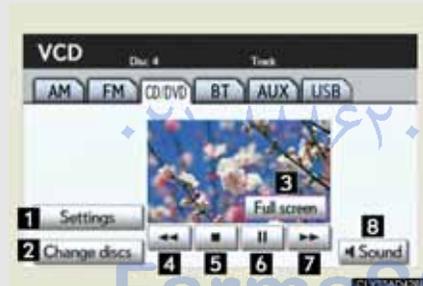
If a different message is displayed: →P. 446

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

Insert a disc or press “DISC•AUX” or touch “CD/DVD” tab on the audio control screen with a disc inserted.

■ Control icon screen

Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching a video, and the following screen appears.



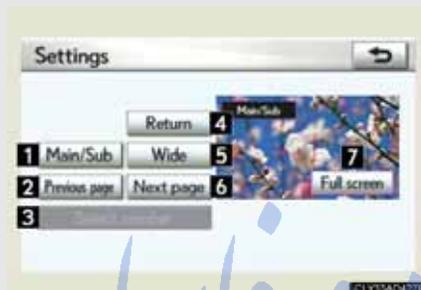
- 1 Settings screen appears (→P. 444)
- 2 Selecting a disc (→P. 423)
- 3 Returns to the full screen (only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)
- 4 Rewind
- 5 Stop
- 6 Pause
- Touch  to play
- 7 Fast forward
- 8 Setting the sound (→P. 423)

*: If equipped

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Settings screen

Touch “Settings” on the control icon screen, the following screen appears.



- 1 Change sound-multiplex
- 2 Return to previous page
- 3 Select menu number (→P. 433)
- 4 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
- 5 Change screen size (→P. 435)
- 6 Go to next page
- 7 Returns to the full screen (only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)

If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the opera-

Selecting a track

Press “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” to select the desired track number.

Fast forwarding/rewinding a video CD

Touch and hold  or  on the control icon screen or press and hold “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” until you hear a beep.

3-3. Using the audio system

Slow playback

Touch  and then touch  on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching .

Using the video CD menu

Touch “Return” on the “Settings” screen.

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Touch “Main/Sub” on the “Settings” screen. The mode cycles through each time “Main/Sub” is touched.

“Main” → “Sub” → “Main/Sub”



Changing the page

▶ Disc menu displaying

Touch “Previous page” or “Next page” on the “Settings” screen to change the previous/next page.

▶ While playing the video

Touch “Previous page” or “Next page” on the “Settings” screen to change the previous/next track.

■ Error messages

→P. 446

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Error messages

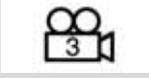
Refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause	Correction Procedures
No disc found.	There is no disc in the player.	Insert a disc.
Check CD X or Check disc X	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The disc X is dirty or damaged. • The disc X is inserted upside down. • The disc X is not playable with the player. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the disc. • Insert the disc correctly. • Confirm the disc is playable with the player.
CD error or DVD error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is a malfunction within the system. • Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Eject the disc. • Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.
No music files found.	This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc.	Eject the disc.

■ DVD video discs

- The DVD player conforms to PAL color TV formats.
- Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as “ALL”, “2” (except for Morocco) or “5” (for Morocco), you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, “Region code error” appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.

■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates PAL format
	Indicates the number of audio tracks
	Indicates the number of language subtitles
	Indicates the number of angles
	Indicates the screen display ratios available Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc's region code ALL: in all countries Number: region code

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.

Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.

▶ With CD player



▶ With DVD player



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

■ CD/DVD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ If discs are left inside the CD/DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD/DVD player.

■ DVD video disc information

● DVD video discs

A DVD video disc is a Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted “MPEG2”, one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

- **Viewer restrictions**

This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.
- **Multi-angle option**

You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.
- **Multi-language option**

You can select the subtitle and audio languages.
- **Region codes**

The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. (→P. 447)
- **Audio**

This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVDs. Other decoded types cannot be played.
- **Title and chapter**

Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ Sound

● Dolby Digital

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories

“Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U. S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation.

Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

● DTS

“DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater System, Inc.

■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

• Compatible standards

MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)

• Compatible sampling frequencies

MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)

MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)

• Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)

MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)

MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)

• Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

3-3. Using the audio system

- WMA file compatibility
 - Compatible standards
WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
 - Compatible sampling frequencies
32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
 - Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)
- Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.
- Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

 - Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
 - File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)

MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

 - Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
 - Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
 - Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
 - Maximum number of files per disc: 255
- File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.
- Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-3. Using the audio system

- ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

- MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

- Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

- Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **DVD video precaution**

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or startled when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Discs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of discs, 8 cm (3 in.) disc adapters or Dual Disc.

Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 12 cm (4.7 in.).
- Low-quality or deformed discs.

3-3. Using the audio system

NOTICE



- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area.



- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.

■ Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.
- Do not insert more than one disc at a time.



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-3. Using the audio system

The Bluetooth® audio system enables users to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speaker via wireless communication.

This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.

Press “DISC•AUX” or “CD•AUX” until the “BT” tab appears or touch the “BT” tab on the audio control screen.

► Type A



► Type B



The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

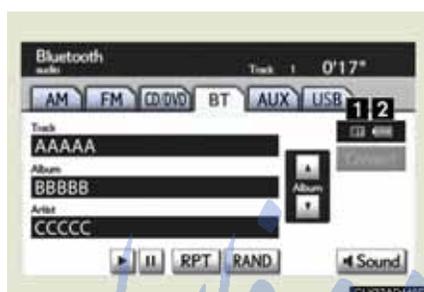
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-3. Using the audio system

Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the screen.



1 Connection status

2 Battery charge

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Blue: Good Yellow: Bad BT : Not connected
Battery charge	Full ↔ Empty  ↔ 

FarmaSOS.com

Setting up the Bluetooth® audio system

STEP 1 Press "SETUP".



Touch "Audio" on the "Setup" screen.

- 1 Select portable player
- 2 Setting up Bluetooth® audio

■ Select portable player

STEP 1 Touch "Select portable player" on the "Audio settings" screen.



A portable player can be selected for connection.

Where no player is registered, "(empty)" is displayed.

When "Portable player info" is touched, the following screen is displayed:



"Device name" and "Connection method" can be changed.

3-3. Using the audio system

- Changing the device name

STEP 1 Touch “Edit” on the “Portable player information” screen.

STEP 2 Enter the desired name.

- Changing the connection method



Touch “From vehicle” or “From portable player”.

“From vehicle”: Connect the audio system to the portable player.

“From portable player”: Connect the portable player to the audio system.

- Setting up Bluetooth® audio

Touch “Bluetooth* audio settings” on the “Audio settings” screen.



1 Register/remove Bluetooth® audio

2 Automatic connection on/off (⇒P. 465)

3 Display passcode

4 Display device name

5 Display device address

6 Restore default settings

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

● Registering Bluetooth® audio

STEP 1 Touch “Register” on the “BT audio settings” screen.



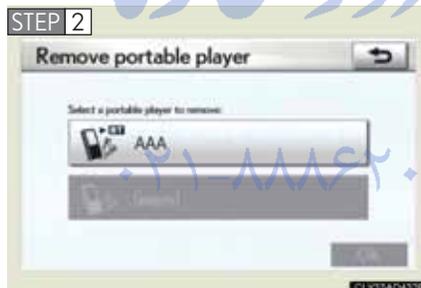
STEP 2 Enter the passcode into the portable player.

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

● Removing Bluetooth® audio

STEP 1 Touch “Remove” on the “BT audio settings” screen.



STEP 2 Touch the player to remove.

A confirmation message will be displayed, touch “Yes” to remove the player.

FarmaSOS.com

3-3. Using the audio system

- Changing the passcode

STEP 1 Touch “Edit” of “Passcode” on the “BT audio settings” screen.

STEP 2 Enter the desired passcode.

The passcode can be between 4 and 8 characters in length, and is set to “0000” by default.

- Changing the device name

STEP 1 Touch “Edit” of “Device name” on the “BT audio settings” screen.

STEP 2 Enter the desired name.

- Restoring the default settings

STEP 1 Touch “Default” on the “BT audio settings” screen.

STEP 2 A confirmation message will be displayed, touch “Yes” to restore the default settings.

- When setting the connection method to “From portable player”

- Connection methods differ by audio player. Consult your audio player’s manual.

- Automatic connection cannot be set to “On”.

- When using Bluetooth® audio player

A confirmation message will be displayed if an attempt is made to remove a portable player.

Touch “Yes” to disconnect and remove the player.

Connecting Bluetooth® audio player

To use the Bluetooth® audio system, you need to enter your portable player into the system. Once registered, you can enjoy your music on the vehicle's audio system. (→P. 462)

For the operation procedure for the portable player, consult your player's accompanying instruction manual.

■ When the connection method is set to "From vehicle"

▶ When auto connection is "On"

When the portable player is on standby for the connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ When auto connection is "Off"

Manually connect the portable player in accordance with the following procedure.



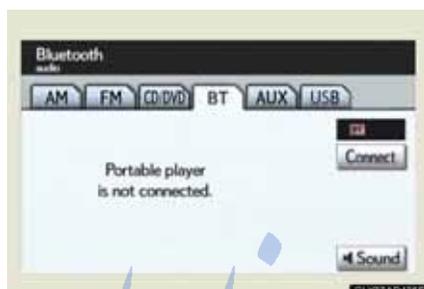
Touch "Connect".

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

3-3. Using the audio system

- When the connection method is set to “From portable player”
Operate the portable player and connect it to the Bluetooth® audio system.

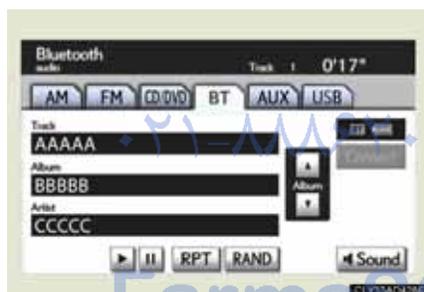


Touch “Connect”.

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

Playing Bluetooth® audio



Touch  or  to play/pause.

Some titles may not be displayed depending on the type of portable player.

3-3. Using the audio system

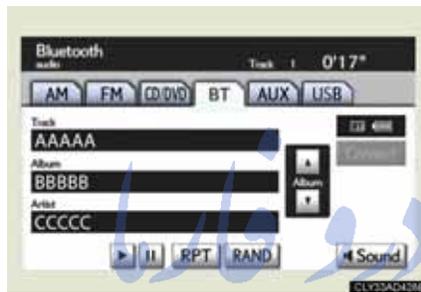
Selecting a track/album

■ Selecting a track

Press “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” to select the desired track number.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” until you hear a beep.

■ Selecting an album



Touch “Album ▲” or “▼” to select the desired album.

Random playback

Touch “RAND” on the screen.

Tracks are played in random order.

Repeating a track

Touch “RPT” on the screen.

3-3. Using the audio system

■ When using the Bluetooth® audio system

- In the following conditions, the system may not function.
 - If the portable player is turned off
 - If the portable player is not connected
 - If the portable player's battery is low
- There may be a delay if phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio play.
- Depending on the type of portable player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■ Bluetooth® antenna

The antenna is built in to the instrument panel. If the portable player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ Battery charge/signal status

This display may not correspond exactly with the portable player, and this system does not have a charging function.

■ About Bluetooth®



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Compatible models

Portable players must correspond to the specifications.

- Bluetooth[®] specifications:
Ver. 1.1, or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
- Profiles:
 - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0, or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.2)
 - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.3)

However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

Please go to the website at <http://www.lexus.com/> to find approved portable players for this system.

■ Certification

→P. 523

■ Reconnecting the portable player

If the portable player is disconnected with a poor reception when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable player.

If you have switched off the portable player yourself, follow the instructions below to reconnect:

- Select the portable player again
- Enter the portable player

■ Canceling random and repeat playback

Touch “RAND” or “RPT” on the screen once again.

■ When transferring ownership of your vehicle

Be sure to remove the registered portable player from the system.

3-3. Using the audio system

CAUTION

■ While driving

Do not use the portable player or connect the Bluetooth® system.

NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable player.

امداد خودرو فارما

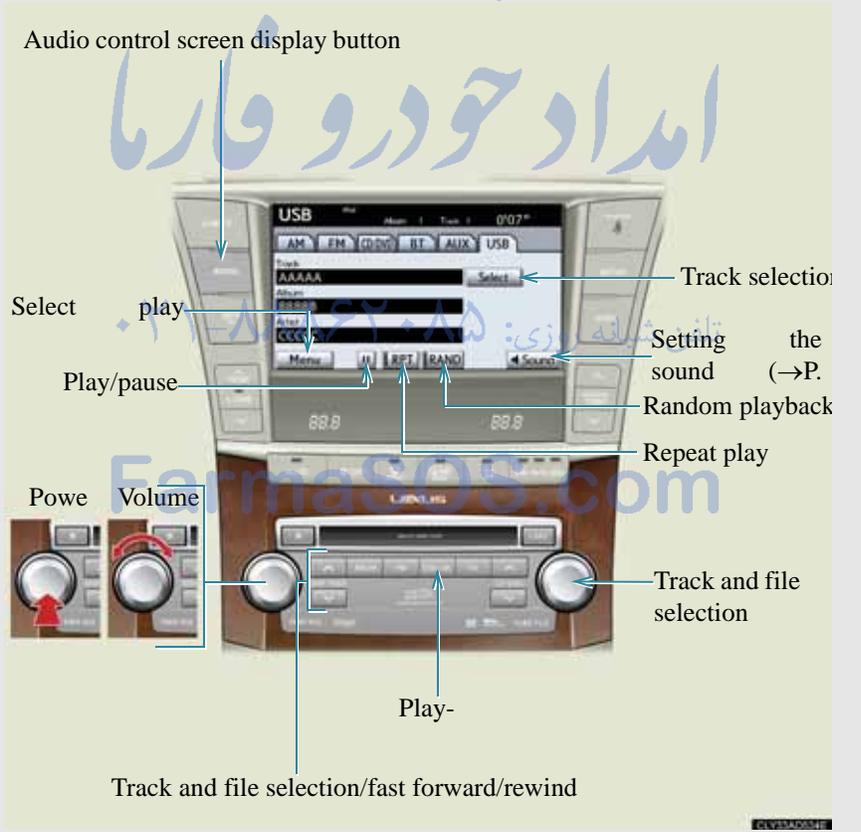
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Connecting a USB memory or iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

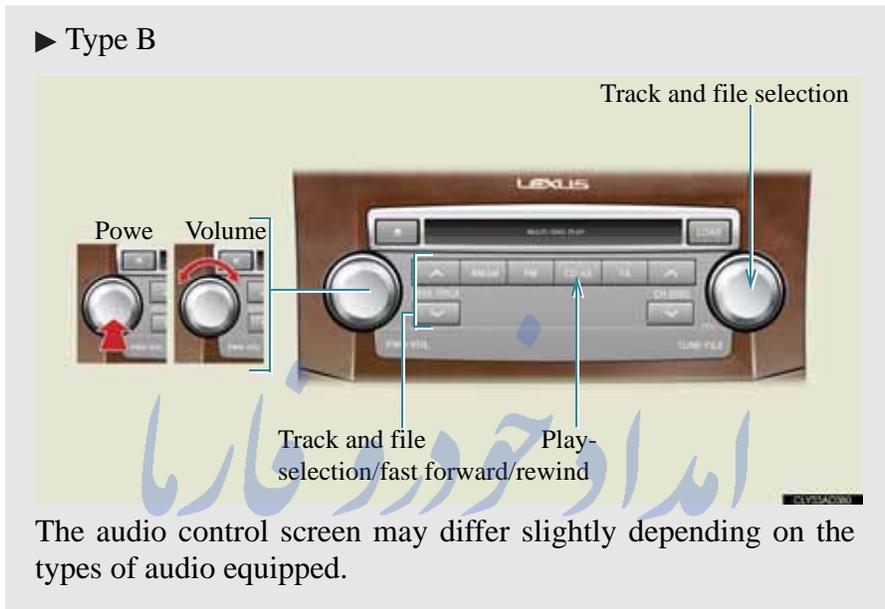
Press “DISC•AUX” or “CD•AUX” until the “USB” tab appears or touch the “USB” tab on the audio control screen.

► Type A



The above illustration shows an iPod screen.

3-3. Using the audio system



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Connecting the USB memory/iPod



Open the cover and connect the player using a cable.

Turn on the power of the USB memory or iPod if it is not turned on.

Playing an iPod

■ Play/pause



Touch  or  to play/pause.

■ Selecting a play mode

STEP 1 Touch “Menu” on the screen.



Select the desired play mode by touching the “Playlists”, “Artists”, “Albums”, “Songs”, “Podcasts”, “Audiobooks”, “Genres” or “Composers” tabs.

3-3. Using the audio system

Selecting a folder (USB memory)

■ Selecting a folder

Touch “Folder ▲” or “▼” on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

■ Selecting a folder from the list

STEP 1 Touch “Select” of “Folder” on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired folder number.



or :changes the list by 5 folder groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

- Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder
Touch and hold “SCAN” on the screen until “FLD.SCAN” appears. Touch “SCAN” once again when the desired folder is reached.

Selecting a file/track

■ Selecting one file/track at a time



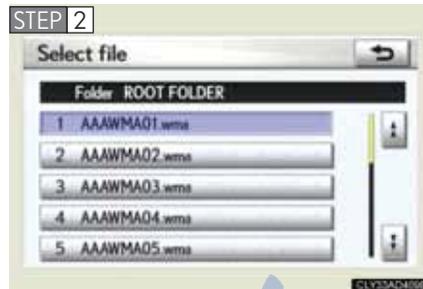
Turn or press “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” to select the desired file/track.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold “^” or “v” on “SEEK•TRACK” until you hear a beep.

- Selecting a file/track from the list

STEP 1 Touch “Select” of “File”/“Track”.

STEP 2



Touch the desired file/track number.



or



:changes the list by 5 file/track groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving. (USB memory)

- Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder (USB memory)

Touch “SCAN” on the screen.

Touch “SCAN” once again when the desired file is reached.

Random playback

► USB memory

- Playing files from a particular folder in random order

Touch “RAND” on the screen.

- Playing the all files from a USB memory in random order

Touch and hold “RAND” on the screen until “FLD.RAND” appears.

► iPod

- Playing tracks from one playlist or album in random order

Touch “RAND” on the screen.

- Playing tracks all the playlists or albums in random order

Touch and hold “RAND” on the screen until “A.RAND” appears.

Repeat play

■ Repeating a file/track

Touch “RPT” on the screen.

■ Repeating all of the files in a folder (USB memory)

Touch and hold “RPT” on the screen until “FLD.RPT” appears.

■ Canceling scan, repeat and random playback

Touch “SCAN”, “RPT” or “RAND” on the screen once again.

■ About iPod

- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ iPod functions

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- While connected to the system, the iPod cannot be operated with its own controls. It is necessary to use the controls of the vehicle's audio system instead.

■ USB memory functions

- Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, the device itself may not be operable and certain functions may not be available. If the device is inoperable or a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- If the USB memory still does not begin operation after being disconnected and reconnected, format the memory.

■ iPod problems

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it. For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner's Manual.

■ Error messages for iPod

“Connection error.”: This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.

“There are no files available for playback.”: This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.

“No items available.”: This indicates that some available songs are not found in a selected playlist.

■ Error messages for USB memory

“Connection error.”: This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection.

“There are no files available for playback.”: This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included in the USB memory.

■ Compatible models

Model	Generation	Software version
iPod	5th generation	Ver. 1.2.0 or higher
iPod nano	1st generation	Ver. 1.3.0 or higher
	2nd generation	Ver. 1.1.2 or higher
	3rd generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher
iPod touch	1st generation	Ver. 1.1.0 or higher
iPod classic	1st generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher

Depending on differences between models or software version etc., some models listed above might be incompatible with this system.

iPod 4th generation and earlier models are not compatible with this system.

iPhone, iPod mini, iPod shuffle and iPod photo are not compatible with this system.

3-3. Using the audio system

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum number of lists in device: 9999
- Maximum number of songs in device: 65535
- Maximum number of songs per list: 65535

■ USB memory

- Compatible devices
USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback
- Compatible device formats
The following device formats can be used:
 - USB communication formats: USB2.0 FS (12 Mbps)
 - File formats: FAT16/32 (Windows)
 - Correspondence class: Mass storage class

MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 999 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 65025
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255
- MP3 and WMA files
MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format. Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.
WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format. This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.
There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

- MP3 file compatibility
 - Compatible standards
MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
 - Compatible sampling frequencies
MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
MPEG2.5: 8, 11.025, 12 (kHz)
 - Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-160 (kbps)
MPEG2.5: 32-160 (kbps)
 - Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural
- WMA file compatibility
 - Compatible standards
WMA Ver. 9
 - Compatible sampling frequencies
HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
 - Compatible bit rates
HIGH PROFILE 32-320 (kbps, VBR)
- File names
The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.
- ID3 and WMA tags
ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.
The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags.
(The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)
WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

3-3. Using the audio system

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be skipped (not played).

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.



CAUTION

■ While driving

Do not connect or disconnect an iPod or USB memory or operate the controls while driving. Doing so may lead to inattention to driving and cause a serious accident.

3-3. Using the audio system



NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the player or its terminal
 - Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The temperature inside of the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
 - Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the player while it is connected.
 - Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

امداد خودرو فارما

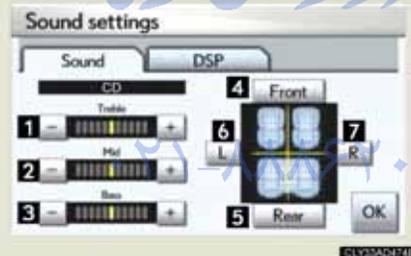
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-3. Using the audio system



► “Sound” tab



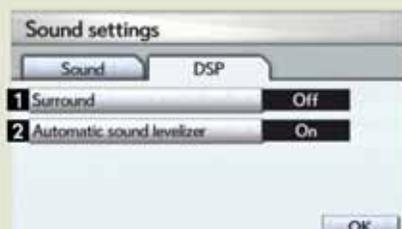
Touch “Sound” to adjust the sound settings.

1 2 3 Touch “-” and “+” to adjust the treble, mid or bass to a level between -5 to 5.

4 5 Touch “Front” and “Rear” to adjust the front/rear audio balance to a level between F7 and R7.

6 7 Touch “L” and “R” to adjust the left/right audio balance to a level between L7 and R7.

► “DSP” tab



1 Surround on/off (with DVD player)

2 Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) on/off

- The sound quality level is adjusted individually
The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted for the each audio mode separately.
- About Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)
ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed, wind noise or other noise.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-3. Using the audio system

This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

STEP 1



Open the cover and connect the portable audio device.

STEP 2

Press "DISC•AUX" or "CD•AUX" or touch "AUX" tab on the audio control screen.

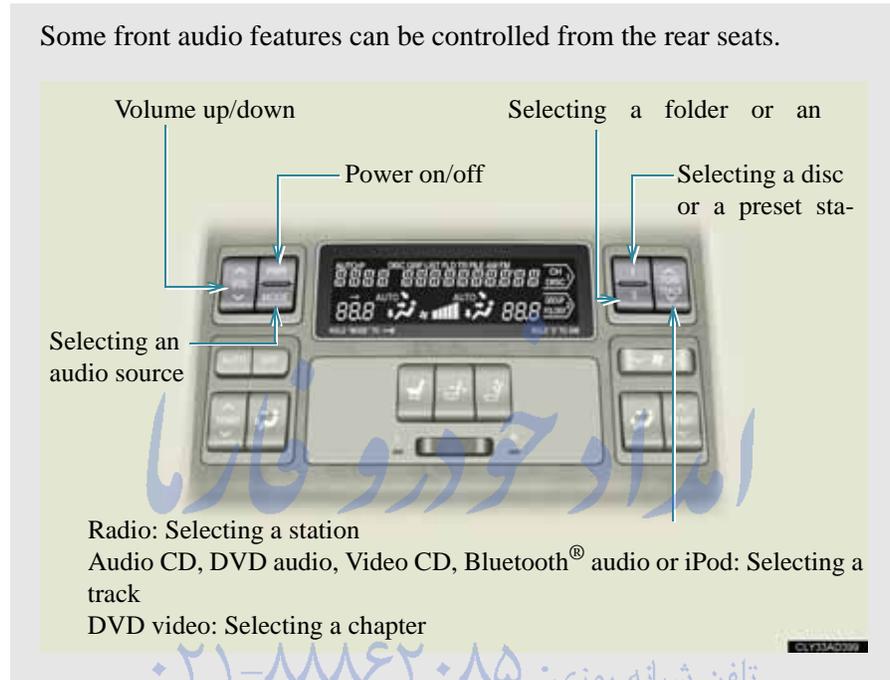
■ Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

3-3. Using the audio system Using the rear seat audio controls*



3

Interior features

Turning the power on/off

Press “PWR” to turn the front audio system on.

Pressing the button again turns the system off.

*: If equipped

Changing the audio source

Press “MODE” to change the audio source. The audio source changes as follows each time the button is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, or if the external device is not connected, that mode will be skipped.

With CD player:

FM1→FM2→FM3→CD player→Bluetooth® audio player→
AUX→iPod or USB memory→MW

With DVD player:

FM1→FM2→FM3→DVD player→Bluetooth® audio
player→
VTR→AUX→ iPod or USB memory→MW

Adjusting the volume

Press “^” on “VOL” to increase the volume and “v” to decrease the volume.

Press and hold the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

■ Select a radio station

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select a frequency band.

STEP 2 Press “^” or “v” on “TUNE TRACK” to seek the frequency.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold “TUNE TRACK” until you hear a beep.

■ Select a preset station

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select a frequency band.

STEP 2 Press “1” (CH) to select a preset station.

Selecting a track

▶ Audio CD, DVD audio or Video CD

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select the CD player or DVD player.

STEP 2 Press “1” (DISC) to select a disc.

STEP 3 Press “^” or “v” on “TUNE TRACK” to select a track.

▶ Bluetooth® audio player

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select the Bluetooth® audio player.

STEP 2 Press “2” to select an album.

STEP 3 Press “^” or “v” on “TUNE TRACK” to select a track.

▶ iPod

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select the iPod.

STEP 2 Press “^” or “v” on “TUNE TRACK” to select a track.

Selecting a chapter (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select the DVD player.

STEP 2 Press “1” (DISC) to select a disc.

STEP 3 Press “^” or “v” on “TUNE TRACK” to select a chapter.

Selecting a file

▶ MP3 CD or WMA CD

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select the CD player or DVD player.

STEP 2 Press “1” (DISC) to select a disc.

STEP 3 Press “2” (FOLDER) to select a folder.

STEP 4 Press “^” or “v” on “TUNE TRACK” to select a file.

▶ USB memory

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select the USB memory.

STEP 2 Press “2” (FOLDER) to select a folder.

STEP 3 Press “^” or “v” on “TUNE TRACK” to select a file.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a track, chapter, or file

Press and hold “^” or “v” on “TUNE TRACK”.

■ Button lock function

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 408)

■ Rear control panel illumination off function

Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. (→P. 408)

■ When “ERROR”, “WAIT” or “NO MUSIC” is shown on the display

Refer to the following and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

“ERROR”: This indicates a trouble either in the disc or inside the player. The disc may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

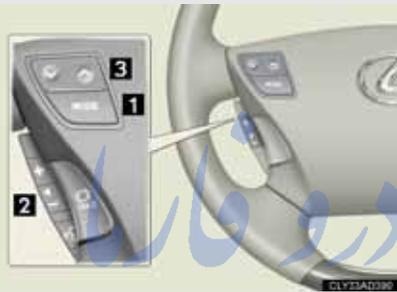
“WAIT”: Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.

“NO MUSIC”: This indicates that an MP3/WMA file is not included in the disc.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.

► Without paddle shift switches



- 1 Turns the power on, selects audio source
- 2 Volume
- 3 Radio mode: Selects radio stations
CD mode: Selects tracks, files (MP3 and WMA) and discs

► With paddle shift switches



- DVD mode: Selects tracks, chapters and discs
- Bluetooth® audio player mode:
Selects tracks and albums
- iPod mode: Selects tracks
- USB memory mode:

3-3. Using the audio system

Turning on the power

Press “MODE” when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding until you hear a beep.

Changing the audio source

Press “MODE” when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the switch is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, or if the external device is not connected, that mode will be skipped.

With CD player:

FM1→FM2→FM3→CD player→Bluetooth® audio player→
AUX→iPod or USB memory→MW

With DVD player:

FM1→FM2→FM3→DVD player→Bluetooth® audio player→
VTR→AUX→iPod or USB memory→MW

Adjusting the volume

▶ Without paddle shift switches

Pull “+” to increase the volume and “-” to decrease the volume.

Hold the switch in that position to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

▶ With paddle shift switches

Press “+” to increase the volume and “-” to decrease the volume.

Hold the switch in that position to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press “^” or “v” on  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold “^” or “v” on  until you hear a beep.

Selecting a track/file or chapter

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select the CD, DVD, Bluetooth® audio player, iPod or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press “^” or “v” on  to select the desired track/file or chapter.

Selecting a disc

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select the CD or DVD mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold “^” or “v” on  until you hear a beep.

Selecting a folder

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold “^” or “v” on  until you hear a beep.

Selecting an album

STEP 1 Press “MODE” to select Bluetooth® audio player mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold “^” or “v” on  until you hear a beep.

3-3. Using the audio system

- Canceling automatic selection of a radio station
Press the same switch.

 CAUTION

- To reduce the risk of an accident
Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Rear seat entertainment system features* (without navigation system)

The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video separately from the front audio system.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner's Manual”.



- 1 Front audio system
- 2 Display
- 3 Rear seat entertainment system controller
- 4 A/V input port

3

Interior features

*: If equipped

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Rear seat entertainment system controller



To use the buttons under the cover, slide the cover down.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Opening or closing the display

■ Opening or closing the display



● Open

Press **OPEN/CLOSE**, “ON”, “DVD”, “VIDEO”, “SOURCE” or



● Close

Press **OPEN/CLOSE** or “OFF”.

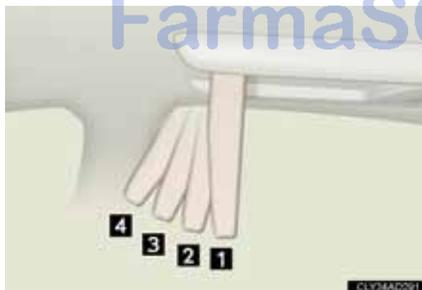
If the display is closed with an image shown, the image will automatically turn off. (When

you press **OPEN/CLOSE**, the sound will not be turned off.)

Opening and closing operations can be performed from the front seat.

(→P. 377)

■ Tilting the display



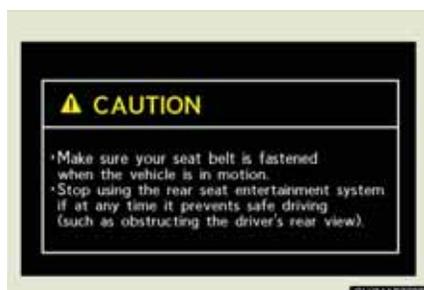
The display angles change as follows each time **TLT** is pressed.

1 → **2** → **3** → **4** → **1**

The display angle is memorized and will be recalled when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode again.

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

■ Caution screen



This screen appears for a few seconds when the rear display is opened. During this time, only **OPEN/CLOSE** can be operated.

Changing the source



Press "SOURCE" to display the source screen.



Select an audio source using "ENT".

Changing the speaker output



To play the rear audio over the speakers in the vehicle, turn “Speaker Output” on.

- The rear seat entertainment system can be used when The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.
- Jam protection function
The display will stop closing and return to its previous position if something gets in the way of it closing.
- When  appears on the screen
It indicates that the selected icon cannot be used at this time.
- Rear system lock
→P. 408
- Before using the controller (for new vehicle owners)



An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being depleted. Remove the insulating sheet before using the remote control.

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

- When the controller batteries are fully depleted



Remove the depleted batteries and install new batteries.

- Headphones

With some headphones generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch signals properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Contact your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

- Volume

- Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.
- Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Be sure to adjust the volume with this in mind.

 CAUTION

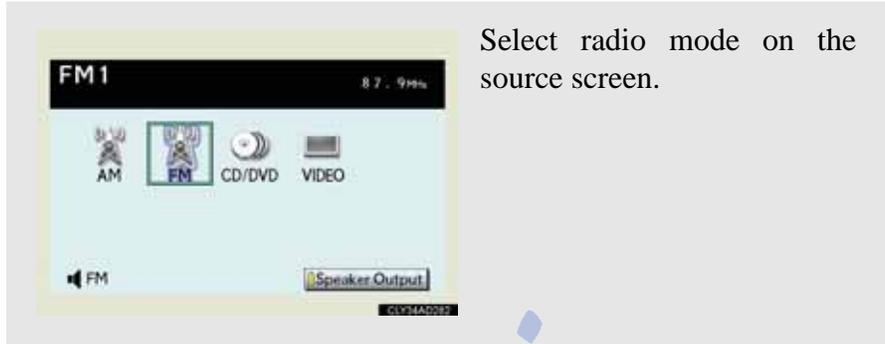
- When the rear seat entertainment system is not used
Keep the display closed.
In the event of an accident or sudden braking, an occupant may hit the opened display, resulting in injury.
- To prevent accidents and electric shock
Do not disassemble or modify the remote control.
- When the remote controller is not used
Stow the remote controller.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Closing the display
Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

 NOTICE

- Cleaning the display
Wipe the display with a dry soft cloth.
If the screen is wiped with a rough cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.
- To prevent damage to the remote control
 - Keep the remote control away from direct sunlight, high temperature and high humidity.
 - Do not drop or knock the remote control against hard objects.
 - Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the remote control.
- Closing the display
Do not close the display using your hand. Doing so may result in a malfunction.

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Using the radio



Select radio mode on the source screen.

Selecting a preset station

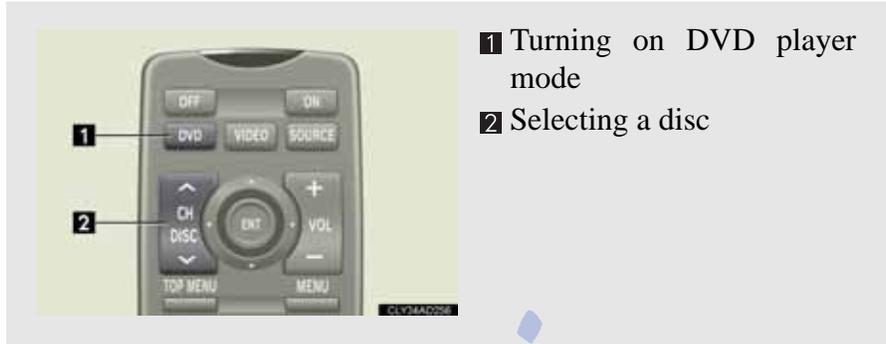
Press “^” or “v” on “CH DISC” until the desired station appears on the screen.

Tuning the station

Press  or  until the desired station appears on the screen.

Press and hold  or , the stations will be searched automatically.

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system
Using the DVD player



Selecting a disc



Press “^” or “v” on “CH DISC” until the desired slot number appears on the screen.

- Audio CD, MP3/WMA discs →P. 498
- DVD video/audio →P. 499
- Video CD →P. 509

3

Interior features

FarmaSOS.com

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs

■ Selecting a track/file



Press  or  until the desired track/file number appears on the screen.

■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a track/file

Press and hold  or .

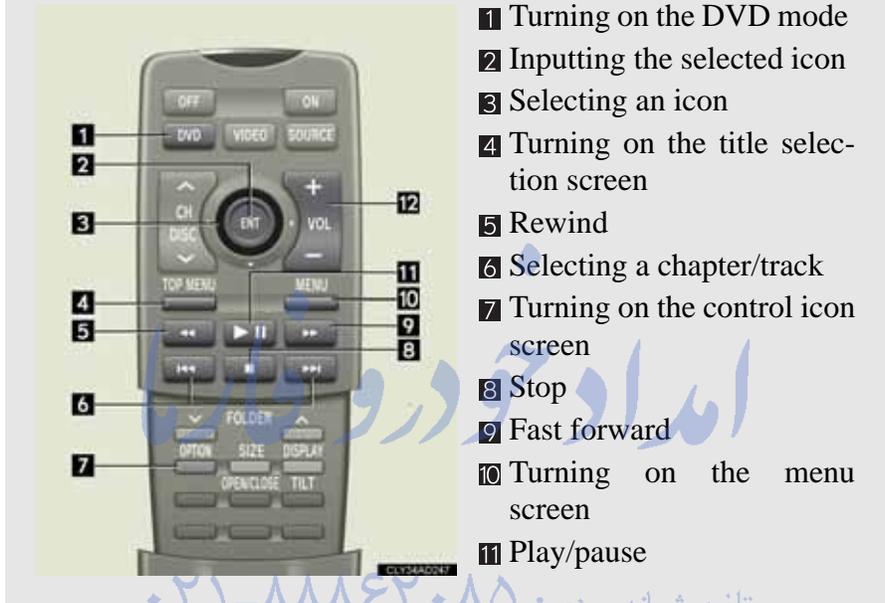
■ Selecting a folder



Press “^” or “v” on  FOLDER  until the desired folder number appears on the screen.

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system
Playing a DVD video/audio

■ Controller



3

Interior features

FarmaSOS.com

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

■ Control icon screen

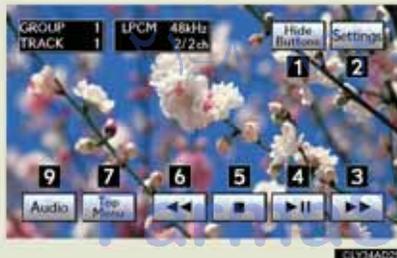
Press **OPTION** if no icons are shown while watching a DVD video/audio, and the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



- 1 Hide the buttons
- 2 Settings screen appears (→P. 501)
- 3 Fast forward
- 4 Play/pause
- 5 Stop
- 6 Rewind
- 7 8 Menu screen appears
- 9 Change audio format

▶ DVD audio mode



If  appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

■ Settings screen

Select “Settings” on the control icon screen, the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



- 1 Change initial setting
- 2 Select menu number
- 3 Return to previous screen
- 4 Change angle
- 5 Change subtitle language
- 6 Change audio language/ audio format
- 7 Go to next page
- 8 Return to previous page
- 9 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
- 10 Search by title/group number

▶ DVD audio mode



3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Turning on or off the control icons

Press  to turn on the control icons.

Press  once again or select “Hide Buttons” on the control icon screen to turn off the control icon.

Turning on the title selection screen

Press  or select “Top Menu” on the control icon screen to turn on the title selection screen. For the operation of the title selection screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Turning on the menu screen (DVD video mode)

Press  or select “Menu” on the control icon screen to turn on the menu screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Perform either of the following:

- Select  or  on the control icon screen by pressing and holding “ENT”.
- Press and hold  or .

Slow playback

Perform either of the following:

- Select  and then select . Video is played slowly when you select  by pressing and holding “ENT”.
- Press  and then press and hold . Video is played slowly while  is being pressed.

Searching a desired screen

■ Searching by title (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Select “Search” on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired title number and then select “OK”.

■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Select “Search” on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired group number and then select “OK”.

■ Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode, if the DVD has bonus options)

STEP 1 Select “Search” on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired bonus group number and select “OK”.

■ Searching by chapter/track

Press  or  to select the desired chapter/track.

■ Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode)

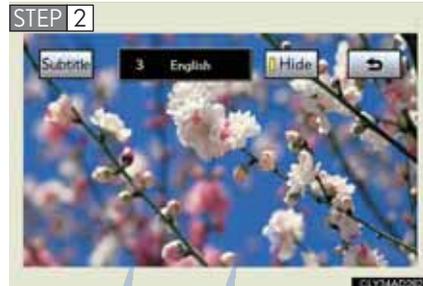
STEP 1 Select “Select Number” on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired menu number and select “OK”.

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Changing the subtitle language

STEP 1 Select “Subtitle” on the settings screen.



Select “Subtitle”.

Each time you press “ENT”, the next available language is selected.

“Hide”: hide the subtitle

Changing the audio language (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Select “Audio” on the settings screen.



Select “Audio”.

Each time you press “ENT”, the next available language is selected.

Changing the audio format (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Select “Audio” on the control icon screen.

STEP 2



Select “Audio”.

Each time you press “ENT”, the next available audio format is selected.

Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Select “Angle” on the settings screen.

STEP 2



Select “Angle”.

Each time you press “ENT”, the next available angle is selected.

Changing the page (DVD audio mode)

Select “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” on the settings screen to change the page.

Initial DVD setup

■ Displaying “Setup Menu” screen

STEP 1 Select “Setup” on the settings screen.

STEP 2



After you change the initial settings, select “OK”.

“Default”: restores default settings

“Page 2→”: goes to Page 2

■ Setting audio language (DVD Video mode)

STEP 1 Select “Audio Language” on the “Setup Menu 1” screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 507)

■ Setting subtitle language

STEP 1 Select “Subtitle Language” on the “Setup Menu 1” screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 507)

■ Setting menu language

STEP 1 Select “DVD Language” on the “Setup Menu 1” screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select “Other” and input the desired language code. (→P. 507)

■ Setting angle mark

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

STEP 1 Select “Angle Mark” on the “Setup Menu 1” screen.

STEP 2 Select “ON” or “OFF”.

■ Setting parental lock (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Select “Parental Lock” on the “Setup Menu 1” screen.

STEP 2 Input the 4-digit personal code and then select “OK”.

Select  10 times to reset the personal code.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 448)

■ Setting sound dynamic range (DVD video mode)

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

STEP 1 Select “Sound Dynamic Range” on the “Setup Menu 2” screen.

STEP 2 Select “MAX”, “STD” or “MIN”.

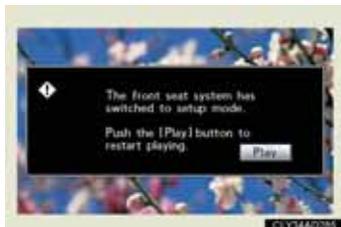
■ Entering a language code

If you select “Other” on the “Audio Language” screen, “Subtitle Language” screen or “DVD Language” screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code (→P. 438) if that language is available.

Input the 4-digit language code and then select “OK”.

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

■ When a front passenger selects “Setup menu”



To cancel the set up operation from the front seat, select “Play”.

■ Rear system lock

→P. 382

■ Error messages

If “Region code error” is displayed, check the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 446

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system
Playing a video CD



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

■ Control icon screen

Press **OPTION** if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, and the following screen appears.

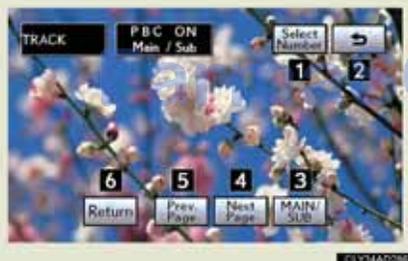


- 1 Hide the buttons
- 2 Settings screen appears
- 3 Fast forward
- 4 Play/pause
- 5 Stop
- 6 Rewind

If  appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

■ Settings screen

Select “Settings” on the control icon screen, and the following screen appears.



- 1 Select menu number
- 2 Return to previous screen
- 3 Change sound-multiplex
- 4 Go to next page
- 5 Return to previous page
- 6 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there

Turning on or off the control icons

Press  to turn on the control icons.

Press  once again or select “Hide Buttons” on the control icon screen to turn off the control icon.

Fast forwarding/rewinding the video CD

Perform either of the following:

- Select  or  on the control icon screen by pressing and holding “ENT”.
- Press and hold  or .

Slow playback

Perform either of the following:

- Select  and then select . Video is played slowly while you select  by pressing and holding “ENT”.
- Press  and then press and hold . Video is played slowly while  is being pressed.

Using the video CD menu

Select “Return” on the settings screen.

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Selecting a desired screen

■ Selecting a menu number

STEP 1 Select “Select Number” on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired menu number on the screen and select “OK”.

■ Searching manually

Select “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” on the settings screen, or press  or  until the desired screen appears.

Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Select “MAIN/SUB” on the settings screen. The mode cycles through each time “ENT” is pressed.

“Main” → “Sub” → “Main/Sub”



تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

DVD player and DVD video disc information

- Error messages

→P. 446

- DVD video discs

→P. 447

- Symbols shown on DVD video discs

→P. 447

- Discs that can be used

→P. 448

- DVD player protection feature

→P. 448

- If discs are left inside the DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

→P. 448

- Lens cleaners

→P. 448

- DVD video disc information

→P. 448

- Sound

→P. 451

- MP3 and WMA files

→P. 451

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

CAUTION

- DVD video precaution
→P. 455

NOTICE

- Discs and adapters that cannot be used
→P. 455
- Player precautions
→P. 456

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

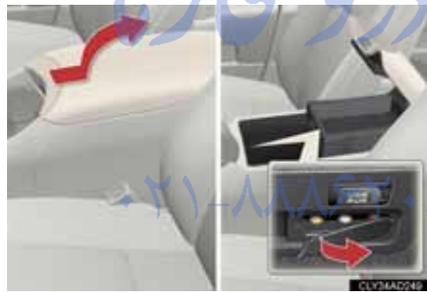
3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system Using the video mode



Press "VIDEO" to select the video mode.

Before switching to the video mode, connect the audio-video equipment source to the A/V input port.

Using the port



Open the cover.

The A/V input port is composed of 3 input ports.

Yellow: Image input port
White: Left channel audio input port
Red: Right channel audio input port

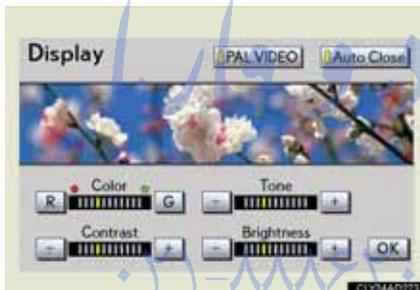
FarmaSOS.com

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Changing the PAL format



Press  .



If the video does not appear, turn “PAL VIDEO” on.

■ A/V input port

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input port. For details, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

■ Power outlet

The power outlet is used to connect audio-video equipment. (→P. 591)

NOTICE

■ When the A/V input port is not in use

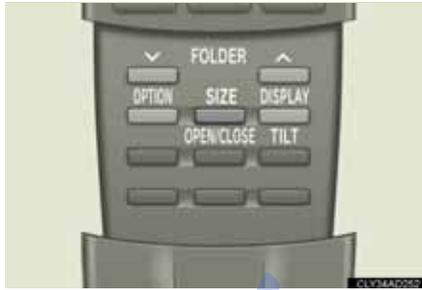
Keep the A/V input port cover closed.

Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or a short circuit.

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Changing other setting

Setting the display mode



Pressing **SIZE** changes the display modes sequentially as follows:

Normal → Wide 1 → Wide 2



Adjusting the screen



Press **DISPLAY**.

Select the brightness, contrast, tone or color, and make adjustments. Press **DISPLAY** or select "OK".

	"R"	"G"
"Color"	Red	Green
	"_"	"+"
"Tone"	Lighter	Darker
"Contrast"	Weaker	Stronger
"Brightness"	Darker	Brighter

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Automatic closing of the rear display



Press **DISPLAY**.

If "Auto Close" is on, the display will automatically close when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF.

The display will automatically open when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)
Hands-free system (for cellular phone) (without navigation system)

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your mobile phone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows the mobile phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and make/receive calls.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner's Manual”.

■ Telephone switch



- 1 Sending/Receiving/“Telephone” screen display
- 2 End call/Refuse call

■ Microphone



The person you are speaking to can be heard from the driver's side speaker.

To use the hands-free system, you must register a Bluetooth® phone in the system. (→P. 527)

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the “Telephone” screen.



- 1 Connection status
- 2 Battery charge
- 3 Call area
- 4 Signal strength

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Blue: Good Yellow: Bad [Red X]: Not connected
Battery charge	Full  ↔  Empty
Call area	“Rm”: Roaming area “Hm”: Home area
Signal strength	Excellent  ↔  Too bad

- When using the hands-free system
 - The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
 - If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
 - If the received call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
 - Try to face the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
 - In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
 - When driving on unpaved roads
 - When driving at high speeds
 - If a window is open
 - If the air-conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
 - If the air-conditioning is set to high
 - There is an effect from the network of the cellular phone
- Conditions under which the system will not operate
 - If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®
 - If the mobile phone is turned off
 - If you are outside service range
 - If the mobile phone is not connected
 - If the mobile phone's battery is low
- Bluetooth® antenna

The antenna is built into the instrument panel. If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.
- Battery charge/Signal status

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.
- When using Bluetooth® audio and hands-free system at the same time

The following problems may occur.

 - The Bluetooth® connection may be cut.
 - Noise may be heard on the Bluetooth® audio playback.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ About the phonebook in this system

The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Phonebook data
- Voice tag
- All of call history
- Speed dial

When you delete the phone, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.

■ When you release your car

Be sure to initialize your data. (→P. 384)

■ About Bluetooth®



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Compatible models

This system supports the following service.

- Bluetooth® Specification:
Ver. 1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
- Profiles:
 - HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.5)
 - OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1
 - PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone, and take OPP or PBAP service individually.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ Certification

Pioneer



Manufacturer's Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer: Pioneer Corporation
4-1, 1-Chome, Meguro, Meguro-Ku
TOKYO, 153 - 8654, JAPAN

EU Representative: Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1067, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

1999/5/EC R&TTE Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council
2006/95/EC Low Voltage Directive

The product covered by this declaration

CD RDS Receiver Head Unit

model **DVZ-MG4947**

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the Low Voltage Directive and the R&TTE Directive above by meeting following standards: EN300328 V1.7.1 ; 2006/ EN301489-1 V1.6.1 ; 2005, EN301489-17 V1.2.1 ; 2002, ISO7637-2:2004 and EN60065:2002 + A1 : 2006

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the LVD and R&TTE has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE08-001F

The CE mark was first applied in: 2009

Done at Melsele

12/06/2009

Ivan Vietinck
Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1067 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telephone +32 (0) 370 05 11 - Fax +32 (0) 370 08 86 - URL <http://www.pioneer-eur.com> - BTW BE 406.999.132 - RPR Dendermonde

3

Interior Features

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Pioneer



Manufacturer's Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer: Pioneer Corporation
4-1, 1-Chome, Meguro, Meguro-Ku
TOKYO, 153 - 8554, JAPAN

EU Representative: Pioneer Europe NV
Haven 1067, Keetberglaan 1
9120 MELSELE, BELGIUM

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

1999/5/EC R&TTE Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council
2006/95/EC Low Voltage Directive

The product covered by this declaration

CD RDS Receiver Head Unit

model **DEX-MG9397**

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the Low Voltage Directive and the R&TTE Directive above by meeting following standards:
EN300328 V1.7.1 : 2006, EN301489-1 V1.6.1 : 2005, EN301489-17 V1.2.1 : 2002, ISO7637-2:2004 and EN60065:2002 + A1 : 2006

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirements of the LVD and R&TTE has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer.

Technical File No: KCE08-002C

The CE mark was first applied in: 2009

Done at Melsele

05/03/2009

Ivan Vlietinck

Manager Public Affairs

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1067 - Keetberglaan 1 - 9120 Melsele - Belgium
Telephone +32 (0)3 570 05 11 - Fax +32 (0)3 570 08 86 - URL: <http://www.pioneer-eur.com> - BTW BE 406.999.112 - RPR Dendermonde

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

CAUTION

■ While driving

Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.

NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your mobile phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Using the Bluetooth[®] phone



The screenshot shows a mobile phone's telephone dial pad interface. At the top, the word "Telephone" is displayed. Below it, there is a field for "Phone #: Enter a telephone number" with "AAA" entered. To the right of this field is a "Back" arrow icon. Below the input field is a numeric keypad with letters associated with each number: 1, 2 ABC, 3 DEF, 4 GHI, 5 JKL, 6 MNO, 7 PQRS, 8 TUV, 9 WXYZ, *, *, 0, #. To the left of the keypad are buttons for "Contacts", "Speed dials", and "Call history". To the right are buttons for "Redial" and "Connect telephone". A green call icon is located at the bottom right of the keypad area. Four numbered callouts point to specific elements: 1 points to the device name "AAA", 2 points to the Bluetooth connection status icon, 3 points to the back arrow, and 4 points to the call icon.

1 Device name
2 Bluetooth[®] connection status
3 Character deletion
4 Make a call

To display the screen shown above, press “INFO/TEL”, and touch  on the “Information” screen.

Registering a Bluetooth® phone

You can register up to 4 phones in the system.

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2



Touch “Yes”.

STEP 3



Input the passcode displayed on the screen into your phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select “Cancel”.

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

Connecting a Bluetooth® phone

There are two connection methods available-automatic and manual.

► Automatic



When you register your phone, auto connection will be activated. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone on the place where connection can be established.

When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will search for a nearby cellular phone you have registered. Next, the system automatically connects with the most recent of the phones connected to in the past. Then, the connection result is displayed.

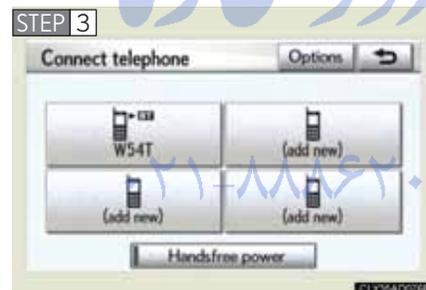
► Manual

When the auto connection has failed or “Handsfree power” is turned off, you must connect Bluetooth® manually.

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)



Touch “Connect telephone”.



Touch “Handsfree power”, or touch the phone to connect.



The “Connect Bluetooth*” screen is displayed.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

*:Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ Reconnecting to the Bluetooth® phone

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.

If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, connection must be made manually, or the phone must be re-selected or re-entered.

■ Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

- Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.
- It may take time to be connect.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲-۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

Making a call

Once the Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

■ Dialing

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2



Input the phone number.

To delete the inputted phone number, touch .

To dial the last inputted phone number, touch “Redial”.

STEP 3 Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ Dialing from the phone book

You can dial a number from the phonebook data imported from your mobile phone. The system has one phonebook for each telephone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in total for phonebooks. (→P. 547)

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2 Touch “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.

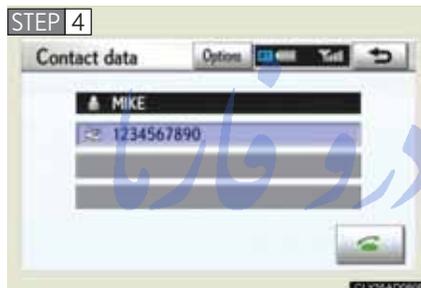
3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Choose the desired data to call from the list.

If the phonebook is empty, a message will be displayed.

If you want to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone, touch “Yes”.



Choose the number and then touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ Calling using speed dial

You can make a call using numbers registered from the phone book. (→P. 555)

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2 Touch “Speed dials” on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 3 Select the desired tab and choose the desired number to make a call.



■ Dialing from history

You can use the call history which has the 4 functions shown below.

“All”: all the numbers below which were memorized

“Missed”: calls which you missed

“Received”: calls which you received

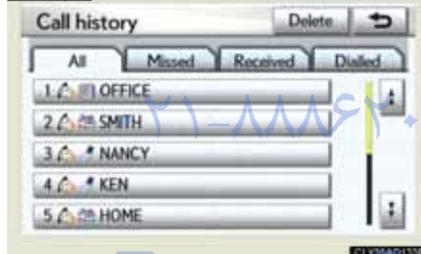
“Dialled”: numbers which you called

You can call using the 5 most recently called numbers shown by “All” while driving.

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2 Touch “Call history” on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 3



Select the desired tab and choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4



Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

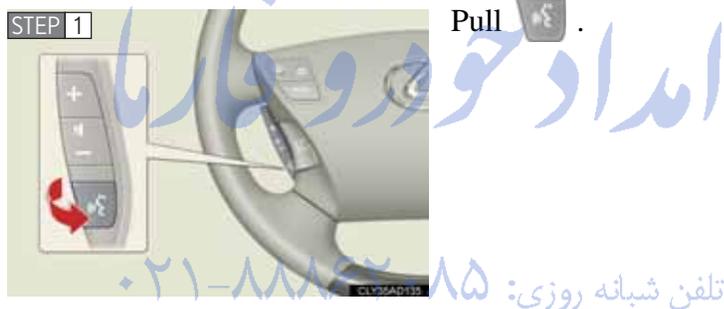
■ Calling using voice recognition

Speech commands can also be used for “Dial by number”, “Dial by name”, “Redial”, and “Call history”. The procedure below shows “Dial by name”. Follow similar procedures for the other three operations.

● Dial by name

You can call by giving a voice tag registered in the phonebook.
(→P. 561)

▶ Without paddle shift switches



▶ With paddle shift switches



STEP 2 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep, and then say “Dial by name”.

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep, and then say the desired name.

STEP 4 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep, and then say the desired number.

STEP 5 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say “Dial” or press  on the steering wheel.

■ Call history list

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phone book, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the dialled history.
- Calls where the number is unavailable, such as public telephones, are not stored in the call history.

■ When driving

The functions “Dialing”, “Dialing from the phonebook”, and “Dialing from history” (except for call using the 5 most recently called numbers shown by “All” tab) are unavailable.

■ International calls

You may not be able to make international calls, depending on the mobile phone in use.

■ Calling by using the latest call history item

STEP 1 Press  on the steering wheel to display the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 2 Press  on the steering wheel to display the “Call history” screen.

STEP 3 Press  on the steering wheel to select the most recent number in the history.

STEP 4 Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ To cancel voice recognition

- Pull and hold  or press and hold .
- Press  on the steering wheel.
- Touch or say “Cancel”.

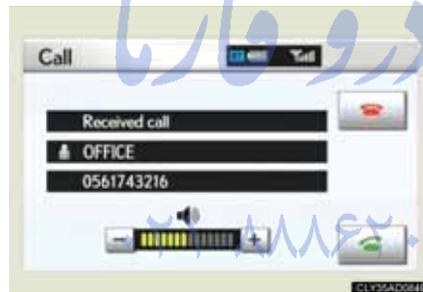
3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ When using voice recognition

- Commands operable by a speech command are marked with . Say the command displayed on the screen.
- Speak clearly when using the voice recognition, otherwise the system may not correctly recognize your voice. Wind or other noises may also cause the system not to recognize your voice.

Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.



Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ To refuse a call

Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ To adjust the ring tone volume

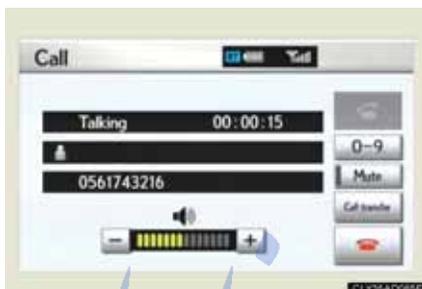
Touch “-” or “+”. You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

■ International calls

Received international calls may not be displayed correctly, depending on the mobile phone in use.

Speaking on the phone

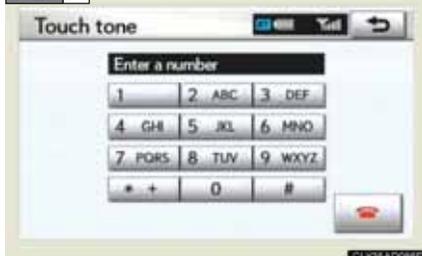
The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.



- To adjust the receiver volume
Touch “-” or “+”. You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.
- To prevent the other party from hearing your voice
Touch “Mute”.
- Inputting tones
When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the phone book.

STEP 1 Touch “0-9”.

STEP 2



Input the number.

If repeated tone symbols* are stored in the phone book, “Send” and “Exit” are displayed on the right side of the screen.

*:Repeated tone symbols are symbols or numbers displayed as p or w, that come after the phone number.
(e.g. 056133w0123p#1☎)

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

STEP 3 Confirm the number displayed on the screen, and touch “Send”.

If you touch “Exit”, this function will end.

■ To transfer a call

Touch “Call transfer”.

■ To hang up

Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ Call waiting

When a call is interrupted by a third party while talking, the receiving call message will be displayed.

● To talk with the other party: Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

● To refuse the call: Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

Every time you touch  or press  on the steering wheel during call waiting, you will be switched to the other party.

If your cellular phone is not compliant with HFP Ver. 1.5, this function cannot be used.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ Transferring calls

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to the mobile phone while driving.
- If you transfer from the mobile phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the mobile phone used.
- For operation of the mobile phone in use, see the phone's manual.

■ Call waiting operation

Call waiting operation may differ depending on your phone company and cellular phone.

■ While driving

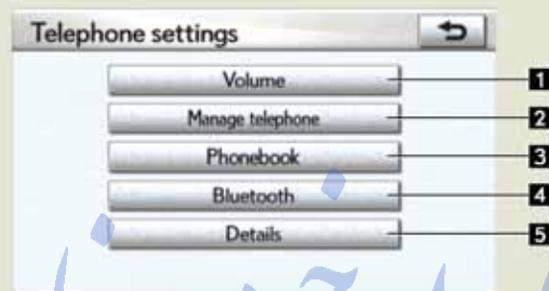
Key input is unavailable.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)
Setting the hands-free system

You can set the hands-free system to your desired settings.



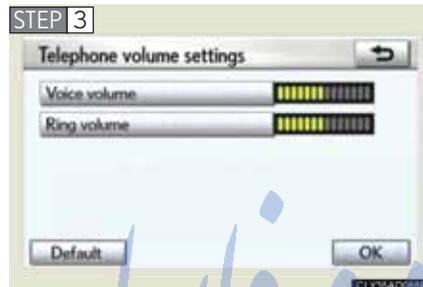
- 1 Setting the volume
- 2 Managing the phone
- 3 Phonebook settings
- 4 Bluetooth® settings
- 5 Details settings

To display the screen shown above, press “SETUP”, touch “Telephone” on the “Setup” screen.

Setting the volume

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 540)

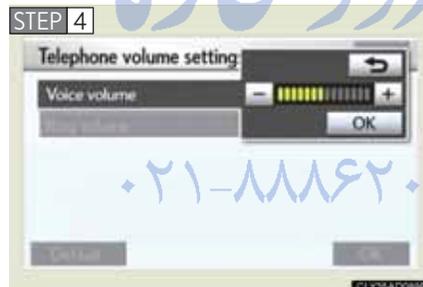
STEP 2 Touch “Volume” on the “Telephone settings” screen.



Choose the volume setting switch.

“Voice volume”:changes the speaker volume

“Ring volume”:changes the ring volume



Touch “-” or “+” to lower or raise the volume, and then “OK”.

STEP 5 When you complete all settings, touch “OK”.

■ Adaptive volume control

When traveling at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the system automatically raises the volume one level.

If the vehicle speed drops to 70 km/h (43 mph), the volume will return to its original level.

■ To return to the default volume settings

Touch “Default”, and then “Yes”.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

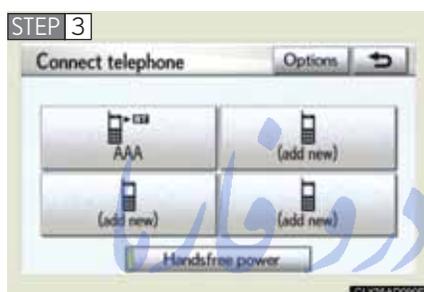
Managing the phone

■ Registering a Bluetooth® phone

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage telephone” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

STEP 3



Touch “(add new)” to register your cellular phone to the system.

STEP 4



Input the passcode displayed on the screen into your phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select “Cancel”.

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

■ Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

If multiple Bluetooth® phones are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth® phone to be used. You may only use one phone at a time.

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage telephone” on the “Telephone settings” screen.



Select the phone to be used.

The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the phone.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

■ Editing a Bluetooth® phone

You can see the information of the Bluetooth® phone on the system or edit.

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 540)

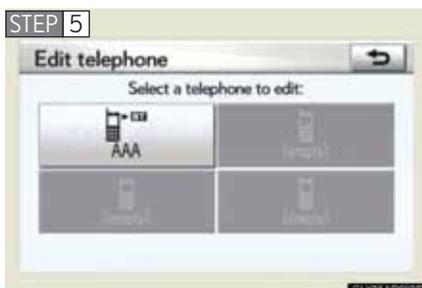
STEP 2 Touch “Manage telephone” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Options” on the “Connect telephone” screen.

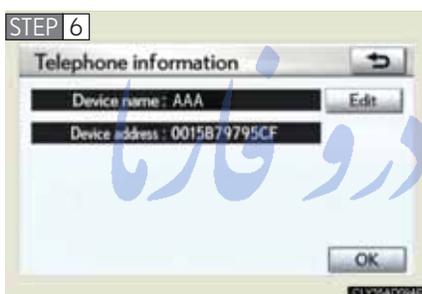


Touch “Edit telephones”.

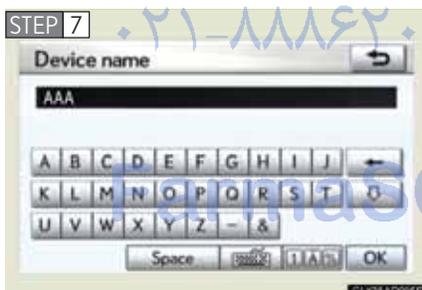
3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Select a phone to edit.



Touch "Edit".



Input the device name, and touch "OK".

STEP 8 Confirm the device name, and touch "OK".

■ Removing a Bluetooth® phone

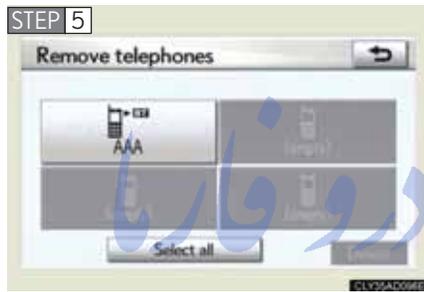
STEP 1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage telephone” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Options” on the “Connect telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch “Remove telephones” on the “Telephones” screen.

STEP 5 Select the desired phone. If you want to remove all phones, touch “Select all”.



STEP 6 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ Registering a Bluetooth® phone in a different way

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage telephone” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Options” on the “Connect telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch “New telephone” on the “Telephones” screen.

STEP 5 Touch “(empty)” on the “Telephone position” screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps for “Registering a Bluetooth® phone” from “STEP4”. (→P. 542)

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

- When another Bluetooth® device is connected during registering or selecting a phone

When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch “Yes”.

- When Bluetooth® audio is connected while registering a phone

When you register your phone, Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish registration. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

- Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing

Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish connecting the phone. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

- Setting the “Handsfree power”

The mode changes between on and off every time you select “Handsfree power” on the “Connect telephone” screen. When “Handsfree power” is on, the Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when you turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

- Editing the “Device name”

If you change a device name, the name registered in your cellular phone is not changed.

- About “Device address”

The address peculiar to the system. You cannot be changed. If you have registered two Bluetooth® phones with the same device name and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to this address.

- When you delete a Bluetooth® phone

The phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

Phonebook settings

The phonebook manages a maximum of 4 phonebooks in total. The data for up to 1000 contacts (up to 3 numbers per contact) can be registered in total for phonebooks.



- 1 Setting the phonebook
- 2 Speed dials setting
- 3 Deleting the call history
- 4 Setting the voice tag

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Phonebook” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

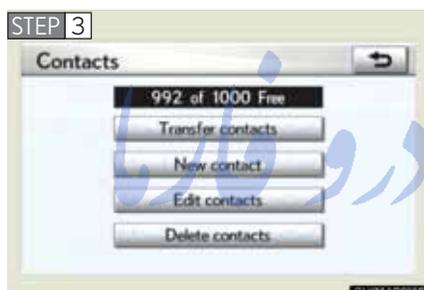
- Setting the phonebook
- Transferring a phone number

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system.

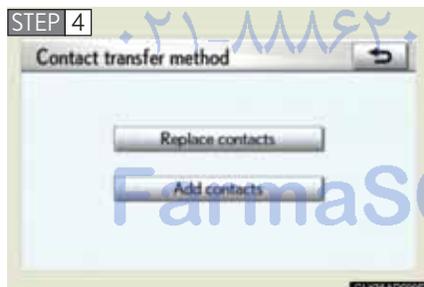
STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Transfer contacts”.

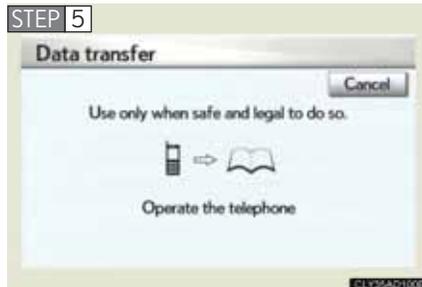


STEP 4 Select “Replace contacts” or “Add contacts”.



In the case that the phonebook contains phonebook data, this screen is displayed.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



STEP 5 Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

If you wish to cancel the transfer before it finishes, touch “Cancel”.

If the transferring is interrupted midway through the process, the phonebook data transferred until then can be memorized in the system.

STEP 6 In the case that you have selected “Add contacts”, a message is displayed.
If you want to transfer another phonebook, touch “Yes”.

● Registering the phonebook data

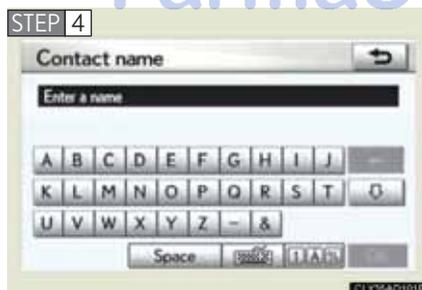
You can register the phonebook data. Up to 3 numbers per person can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “New contact” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4 Input the name, and touch “OK”.

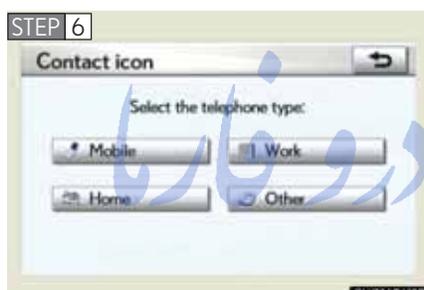


3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Input the phone number, and touch “OK”.

If you want to use the tone signal after the phone number, input the tone signal too.



Touch the desired phone type.

When two or less numbers in total are registered to this contact, a message is displayed. When you want to add a number to this contact, touch “Yes”.

FarmaSOS.com

● Editing the phonebook data

You can register the phone number separately.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Edit contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4 Choose the data to edit.



Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5 Choose “Edit” for the desired name or number.



Choose “Edit” for the desired name or number.

STEP 6 Edit the name or number. After editing, touch “OK”.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

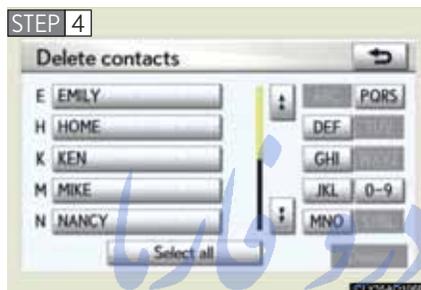
● Deleting the phonebook data

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage contacts” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select all”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ Phonebook data

Phonebook data is managed for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

■ Setting the phonebook in a different way (To display the “Contacts” screen)

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2 Touch “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Options” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4 Touch “Manage contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

- When transferring a phone number
Transfer the phone number while engine is running.
- When you have selected “Replace contacts” to transfer the phone number
 - If your cellular phone does not support PBAP or OPP service, you cannot use this function.
 - If your phone supports PBAP service, you can transfer the phonebook data without operating your phone.
 - If your phone does not support PBAP service, you must transfer the phonebook data by operating your phone.
- When you have selected “Add contacts” to transfer the phone number
If your cellular phone does not support OPP service, you cannot use this function.
You can transfer the phonebook data only by operating your phone.
- When another Bluetooth® device is connected during transferring a phonebook
When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch “Yes”.
- Transferring the phone number while Bluetooth® audio is playing
Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when data transfer finishes. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.
- Editing the phonebook data in a different way (From “Contact data” screen)
 - STEP 1** Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)
 - STEP 2** Touch “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.
 - STEP 3** Choose the desired data from the list.
 - STEP 4** Touch “Options” on the “Contact data” screen.
 - STEP 5** Touch “Edit contact” on the “Contact data” screen.
 - STEP 6** Follow the steps “Editing the phonebook data” from “STEP5”. (→P. 551)

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ Editing the phonebook data in a different way (From “Call history” screen)

- STEP 1** Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)
- STEP 2** Touch “Call history” on the “Telephone” screen.
- STEP 3** Choose the desired data from the list.
- STEP 4** Touch “Add contact” or “Update contact”.
- STEP 5** If you touch “Add contact”, follow the steps “Editing the phonebook data” from “STEP5”. (→P. 551)
If you touch “Update contact”, follow the steps “Editing the phonebook data” from “STEP4”. (→P. 551)

■ Deleting the phonebook data in a different way

- STEP 1** Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)
- STEP 2** Touch “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.
- STEP 3** Choose the desired data from the list.
- STEP 4** Touch “Options” on the “Contact data” screen.
- STEP 5** Touch “Delete contact” on the “Contact data” screen.
- STEP 6** A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

FarmaSOS.com

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ Speed dials setting

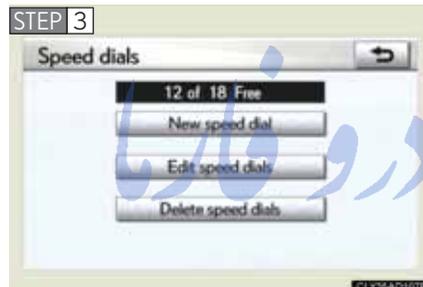
● Registering the speed dial

You can register the desired phone number from phonebook. Up to 18 numbers per phone can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage speed dials” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3



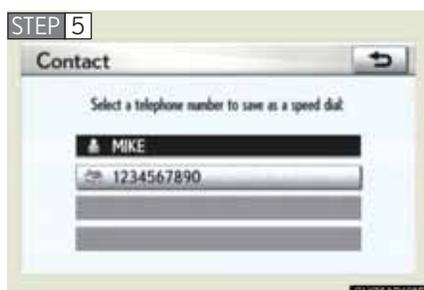
Touch “New speed dial”.

STEP 4

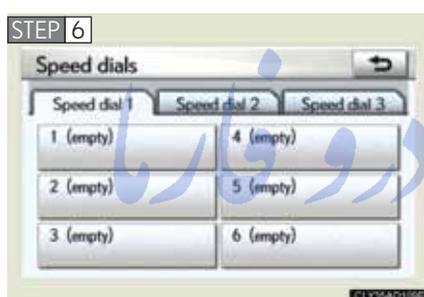


Choose the data to register.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Touch the desired phone number.



Touch the switch you want to register the number in.

STEP 7 If you select a switch you registered before, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to replace it, touch "Yes".

FarmaSOS.com

● Editing the speed dial

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage speed dials” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Edit speed dials” on the “Speed dials” screen.

STEP 4 Choose the data to edit.



Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5 Touch “Edit”.



Touch “Edit”.

STEP 6 Edit the name. After editing, touch “OK” and then “OK”.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

● Deleting the speed dial

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage speed dials” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete speed dials” on the “Speed dials” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select all”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ Setting the speed dials in a different way (To display the “Speed dials” screen)

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2 Touch “Speed dials” on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Options” on the “Speed dials” screen.

■ Registering the speed dial in a different way (From “Speed dials” screen)

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2 Touch “Speed dials” on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “(add new)” on the “Speed dials” screen.

STEP 4 Touch “Yes” to set new speed dial.

STEP 5 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 7 Follow the steps “Registering the speed dial” from “STEP6”. (→P. 555)

■ Registering the speed dial in a different way (From “Contact data” screen)

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2 Touch “Contacts” on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch “Options” on the “Contact data” screen.

STEP 5 Touch “Set speed dial” on the “Contact data” screen.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

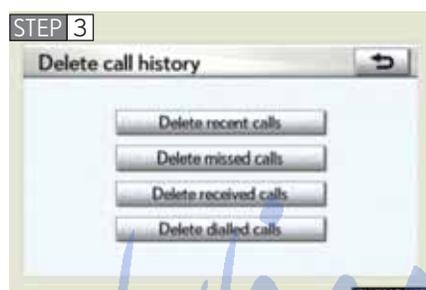
STEP 7 Follow the steps “Registering the speed dial” from “STEP6”. (→P. 555)

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ Deleting call history

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Delete call history” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.



Choose the desired history to delete.



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select all”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ Deleting call history in a different way

- STEP 1** Display the “Telephone” screen. (→P. 526)
- STEP 2** Touch “Call history” on the “Telephone” screen.
- STEP 3** Touch “Delete” on the “Call history” screen.
- STEP 4** Follow the steps “Deleting call history” from “STEP4”. (→P. 560)

■ Setting the voice tag

● Registering the voice tag

You can register a voice tag. Up to 20 numbers can be registered.

- STEP 1** Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)
- STEP 2** Touch “Manage voice tags” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “New voice tag”.

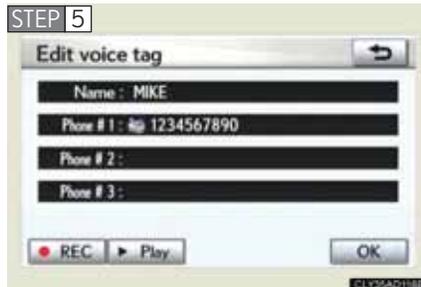


Touch “New voice tag”.

STEP 4 Choose the data to register.



3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Touch “● REC”, and record a voice tag.

To play the voice tag, touch “▶ Play”.

STEP 6 When you complete the voice tag registration, touch “OK”.

● Editing the voice tag

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage voice tags” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Edit voice tags” on the “Voice tags” screen.

STEP 4 Choose the data to edit.



STEP 5 Edit the voice tag. After editing, touch “OK”.

● Deleting the voice tag

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook settings” screen. (→P. 547)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage voice tags” on the “Phonebook settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete voice tags” on the “Voice tags” screen.



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch "Select all".

STEP 5 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ Setting the voice tag in a different way (To display the "Voice tags" screen)

STEP 1 Display the "Telephone" screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Manage voice tags" on the "Contacts" screen.

■ When using the voice tag

Do not change the language setting from the language setting used when registering. If they are different, the voice recognition cannot recognize the voice tag that you have registered.

■ When recording a voice tag

Do so in a quiet environment.

■ Registering the voice tag in a different way

STEP 1 Display the "Telephone" screen. (→P. 526)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact data" screen.

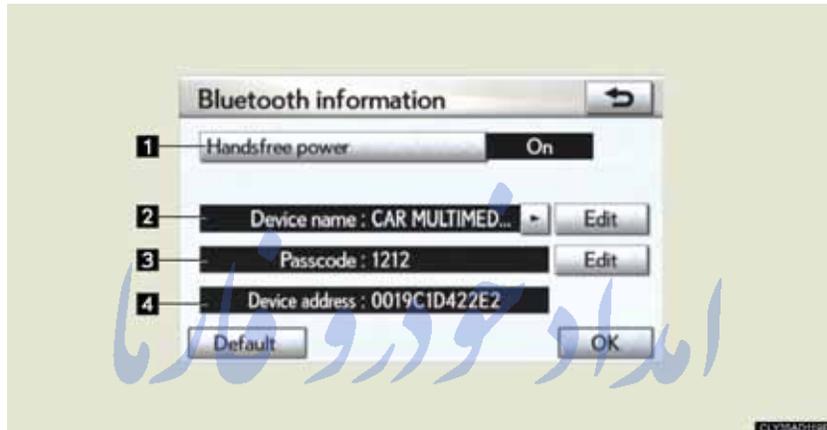
STEP 5 Touch "Set voice tag" on the "Contact data" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps "Registering the voice tag" from "STEP5". (→P. 561)

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Bluetooth® settings

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.



- 1 Changing the handsfree connection status
- 2 Changing the name in the Bluetooth® network
- 3 Changing the passcode that you registered your cellular phone in the system
- 4 The address peculiar to the system

You cannot change this address. If the same device name is displayed on the screen of your phone, refer to it.

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Bluetooth*” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ Changing the handsfree power

The Bluetooth[®] phone is automatically connected when you turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. You can change between “On” or “Off”.

STEP 1 Display the “Bluetooth* information” screen. (→P. 564)

STEP 2 Touch “Handsfree power” on the “Bluetooth* information” screen.



Touch “On” or “Off”, and then “OK”.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ Editing the device name

STEP 1 Display the “Bluetooth* information” screen. (→P. 564)

STEP 2 Touch “Edit” of “Device name” on the “Bluetooth* information” screen.

STEP 3 Input the device name, and touch “OK”.

STEP 4 Touch “OK” on the “Bluetooth* information” screen.

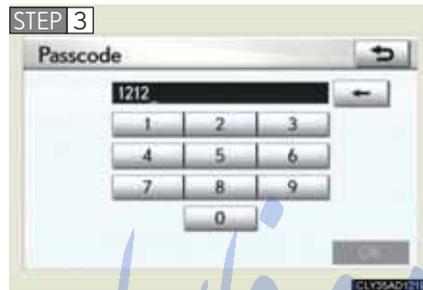
*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ Editing the passcode

STEP 1 Display the “Bluetooth* information” screen. (→P. 564)

STEP 2 Touch “Edit” of “Passcode” on the “Bluetooth* information” screen.



Input a passcode, and touch “OK”.

STEP 4 Touch “OK” on the “Bluetooth* information” screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ While driving

You cannot change “Handsfree power” mode from “On” to “Off” while driving.

■ About “Device name”

The device names are common Bluetooth® audio and Bluetooth® phone.

If you change the device name of the phone, the device name of the audio will change at same time. However, passcodes can be set separately.

■ To return to the default Bluetooth® settings

Touch “Default”, and then “Yes”.

If the state of “Handsfree power” mode is changed from “Off” to “On”, Bluetooth® connection will begin.

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Details settings



1 Changing the received call display mode

2 Changing the display telephone status

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the “Telephone settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Details” on the “Telephone settings” screen.

3

Interior features

FarmaSOS.com

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

■ Changing the received call display mode

You can select the method of the received call display.

STEP 1 Display the “Detailed telephone settings” screen. (→P. 567)

STEP 2 Touch “Received call display mode” on the “Detailed telephone settings” screen.



Touch “Full screen” or “Drop down”, and touch “OK”.

“Full screen”:

The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

“Drop down”:

A message is displayed at the top of the screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

■ Changing the display telephone status

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting.

STEP 1 Display the “Detailed telephone settings” screen. (→P. 567)

STEP 2 Touch “Display telephone status” on the “Detailed telephone settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “On” or “Off”, and then “OK”.

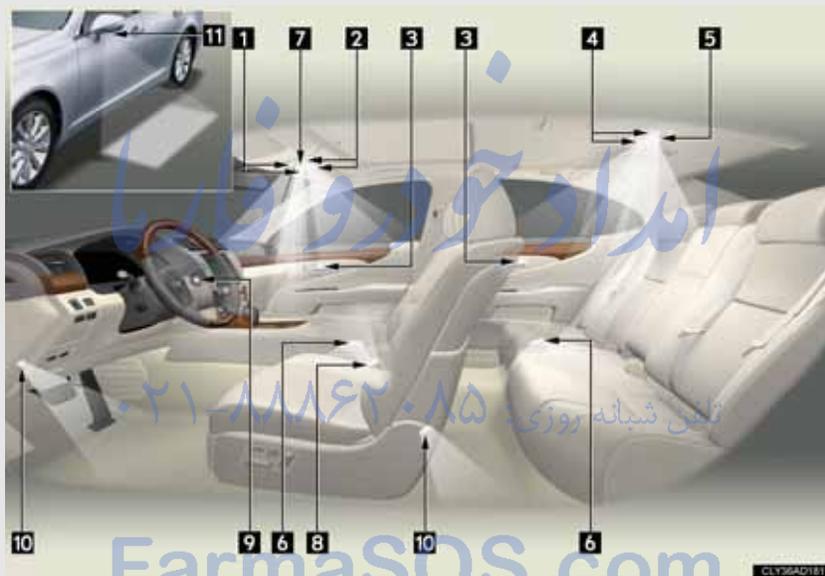
■ To return to the default detailed telephone settings

Touch “Default”, and then “Yes”.

3-6. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list

Your Lexus is equipped with the illuminated entry system to assist in entering the vehicle. Owing to the function of the system, the lights shown in the following illustration automatically turn on/off according to the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, whether the doors are opened/closed, and the “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode.



- 1 Front personal lights (→P. 571)
- 2 Front interior lights (→P. 570)
- 3 Inside door handle lighting
- 4 Rear personal lights (→ P. 571)
- 5 Rear interior light (→ P. 570)
- 6 Door courtesy lighting
- 7 Shift lever lighting (when the “ENGINE START STOP”

- 8 Seat belt buckle lighting
- 9 "ENGINE START STOP" switch lighting
- 10 Footwell lighting
- 11 Outer foot lights

Interior lights

► Front



- 1 "OFF"
- 2 Door position on/off
- 3 "ON"

► Rear



On/off

If door position on is selected for the front interior light, the rear interior light is also turned on/off by the opening and closing of a door.

Personal lights

► Front



On/off

► Rear (without rear seat entertainment system)



On/off

► Rear (with rear seat entertainment system)



- 1 On/off
- 2 Press the knob to release it, and turn the knob to the desired brightness.
- 3 Darker
- 4 Brighter

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

If the interior lights remain on when the door is not fully closed and the front interior light switch (door position on/off) is on, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ Customization that can be configured at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

Settings (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 762)

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-7. Using the storage features
List of storage features



- 1 Glove box
- 2 Auxiliary boxes
- 3 Non smokers boxes (if equipped)
- 4 Door pockets
- 5 Cool box/auxiliary box (if equipped)
- 6 Cup holders
- 7 Console box
- 8 Coin holder

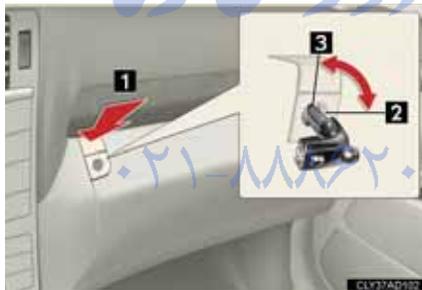
3

Interior features

⚠ CAUTION**■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces**

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

Glove box

- 1** Open (push button)
- 2** Lock with the mechanical key
- 3** Unlock with the mechanical key

■ Trunk opener main switch

The trunk opener main switch is located in the glove box. (→P. 76)

⚠ CAUTION**■ Caution while driving**

Keep the glove box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

3-7. Using the storage features

Coin holder and door pockets

Coin holder



Press in the button.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the coin holder closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Door pockets (front)



The front door pockets can be opened and closed.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the door pockets closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Cup holders

► Front



Press down the lid on the side farthest to the driver.

► Rear



Press in and release the cup holder.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ When not in use

Keep the cup holders closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Console box



- 1 Slide the armrest while pressing the button.
- 2 Lift the armrest.

Tray in the console box



The tray can be raised backward.

Opening and closing assist function

When the console box is opened or closed partway, this function will apply force in the appropriate direction, helping open or close the console box.

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

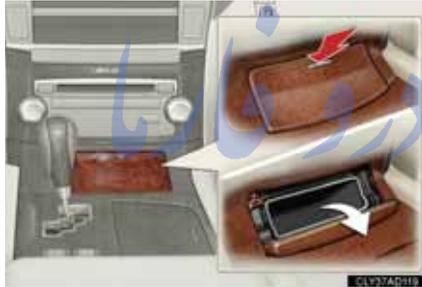
 NOTICE

■ Tray

Do not insert items exceeding the height of the tray. Doing so may prevent opening and closing of the lid.

■ Non smokers boxes (if equipped)

► Front



Press in the lid.

► Rear



Open the lid.

3-7. Using the storage features

Non smokers boxes and cool box/auxiliary box

■ Removing the non smokers box (front)



Holding the left edge of the non smokers box, pull upward.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the non smokers box

Do not use the non smokers boxes as an ashtray.

■ Caution while driving

Keep the non smokers boxes closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Cool box/auxiliary box (if equipped)

STEP 1 Pull down the armrest. (→P. 598)

STEP 2 Pull the lever.





Open the cool air intake lid.

■ Cool box operating conditions



- The rear air conditioning system is on.
-  is displayed on the rear control panel.

■ Items unsuitable for the cool box

- Drinks in unsealed containers
- Fragile items, perishables or anything with strong odor

■ Using a cool box as an auxiliary box



Close the cool air intake lid to turn off the cool box system.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

Always keep the cool box/auxiliary box closed to reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

Auxiliary boxes

► **Overhead**



Press in the button.

This box is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

► **Rear seat**

STEP 1 Pull down the armrest. (→P. 598)

STEP 2



1 Press the button.

2 Lift the lid.

The lid cannot be lifted while it is slid back. (→P. 598)

 CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving.
Items may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

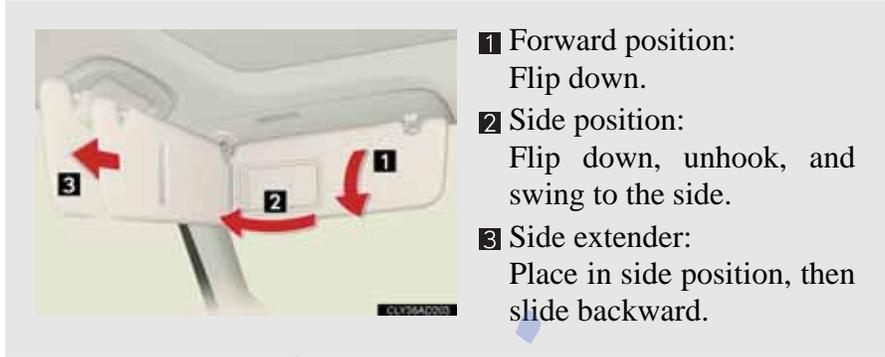
امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-8. Other interior features

Sun visors



امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3

Interior features

3-8. Other interior features

Vanity mirrors

► Front



Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

► Rear



Press the button to open.

The vanity light turns on.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When not in use

Keep the rear vanity mirror closed.

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is stopped.

3-8. Other interior features

Clock

The clock is displayed when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. Perform the following steps to adjust the clock.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.



STEP 1

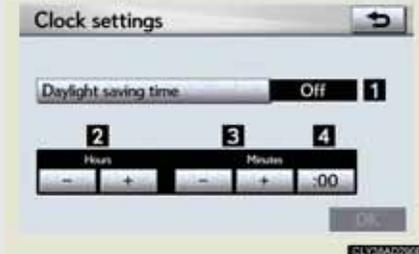


Press “SETUP”.

STEP 2

Touch “Clock” on the “Setup” screen.

STEP 3



1 Turns daylight saving time on/off

2 Adjusts the hour

3 Adjusts the minutes

4 Rounds to the nearest hour*

After setting, touch “OK”.

*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00

■ When the battery is disconnected

The time display will automatically be set to 1:00.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

3-8. Other interior features

Outside temperature display

The displayed temperature ranges from -40°C (-40°F) up to 50°C (122°F) when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

► Air conditioning system display (if equipped)



► Touch screen (if equipped)



■ When “- -” or “E” is displayed

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified professional.

■ Display

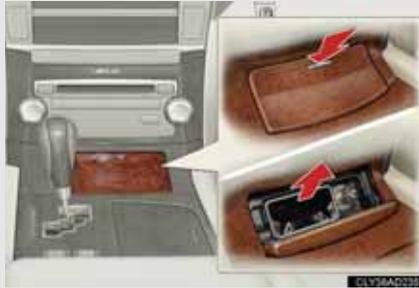
In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

3-8. Other interior features

Ashtrays*

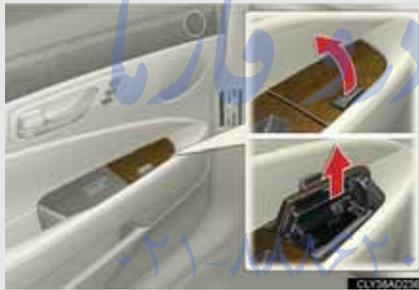
► Front



Push the front part of the lid to open. Push the lid again to close.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards.

► Rear



Open the ashtray lid.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed.

Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ To prevent fire

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

*: If equipped

3-8. Other interior features Cigarette lighters*

► Front



Push the front part of the lid to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when it is ready for use.

► Rear



Push the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop out when it is ready for use.

- The cigarette lighter can be used when
The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

*: If equipped

3-8. Other interior features

CAUTION

- To avoid burns or fires
 - Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
 - Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
 - Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.
- When not in use
 - Keep the ashtray closed.
 - Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

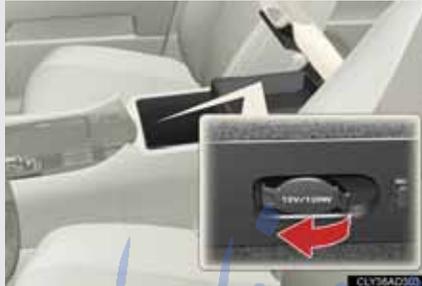
FarmaSOS.com

3-8. Other interior features

Power outlets

The power outlet can be used for 12 V accessories that run on less than 10 A.

► Front



► Rear (if equipped)



3

Interior features

■ The power outlet can be used when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

 NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the power outlet
Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.
- To prevent the fuse from being blown
Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged
Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

3-8. Other interior features

Heated steering wheel*

The heated steering wheel can be used to heat the leather portion of the steering wheel.



On/off

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.

■ Operating condition

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Timer

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes. *تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵*

■ If the indicator light flashes

Press the button to turn the heated steering wheel off and then press the button again. If the indicator light still flashes, a malfunction may be occurring. Turn the heated steering wheel off and have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: If equipped

 CAUTION

■ Burns

Only appropriately qualified and capable non-impaired persons should operate the vehicle. However, care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes into contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

 NOTICE

■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

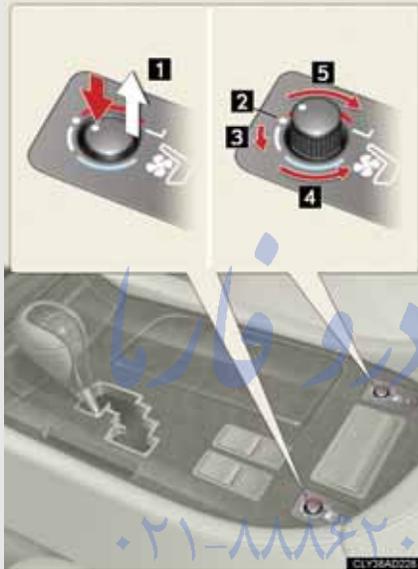
Turn the switch off when the engine is not running.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: +۹۰ ۸۵ ۸۸۶۲ ۲۱
FarmaSOS.com

Climate control seats/seat heaters

The temperature of the seats can be adjusted individually.

■ Front climate control seats



1 Press the knob to release it, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

2 Off

3 Ventilation

4 Cool air

5 Warm the seat

Press the knob to lock it when not in use.

■ Rear climate control seats (if equipped)

STEP 1 Slide the armrest lid. (→P. 598)



1 Press the knob to turn the system on, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

Press the knob again to turn the system off.

2 Ventilation

3 Cool air

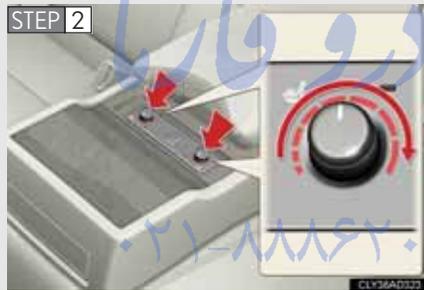
4 Warm the seat



The rear climate control seats can also be turned on and off from the front seats.

■ Rear seat heaters (if equipped)

STEP 1 Slide the armrest lid. (→P. 598)



Press the knob to turn the system on, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

The further you turn the knob clockwise, the warmer the seat temperature becomes. Press the knob again to turn the system off.



The rear seat heaters can also be turned on and off from the front seats.

■ Operating condition

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Replacing the air filters

Filters are installed in the climate control seats. For replacement of the filters, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

 CAUTION

■ Burns/excessive cooling

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat to avoid the possibility of burns or excessive cooling:
 - Babies, small children, elderly persons, sick persons and persons with a physical disability
 - Persons who have sensitive skin
 - Persons who are fatigued
 - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs which induce sleep, such as sleeping drugs and cold remedies
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the climate control seat or seat heater. Using the climate control seat or seat heater with a blanket or cushion may increase or decrease the temperature of the seat, resulting in overheating or overcooling.
- Do not use the climate control seat or seat heater more than necessary. Doing so may cool the occupants excessively or may cause minor burns or overheating.

 NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the climate control seat and seat heater
Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects, such as needles and nails, into the seat.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged
Do not leave the system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

3-8. Other interior features

Armrest



Pull the armrest down.

■ When operating the switches in the armrest



Press the button to release the lock, and slide the lid back.

Press the button again for returning the lid.

⚠ NOTICE

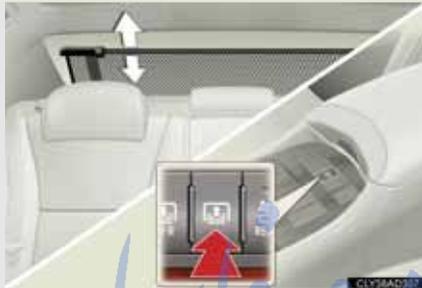
- To prevent damage to the armrest
Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

3-8. Other interior features

Rear sunshade

The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by operating either of the buttons shown below.

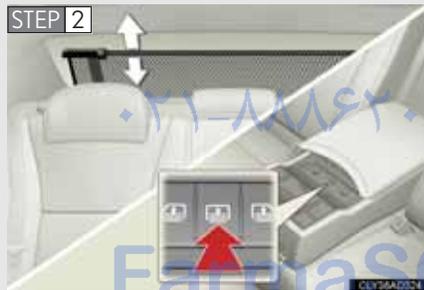
► From front seat



Extend/retract

► From rear seat

STEP 1 Slide the armrest lid. (→P. 598)



Extend/retract

■ The rear sunshade can be used when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the rear sunshade after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The rear sunshade can be operated for approximately 60 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF.

3-8. Other interior features

■ Reverse operation feature

To ensure adequate rear visibility, the rear sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted to “R”.

However, the rear sunshade is raised again if any of the following occurs:

- The button is pressed again.
- The shift lever is shifted to “P”.
- The shift lever is shifted out of “P” and “R”, and the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph).

If the engine is turned off when the rear sunshade has been lowered due to the reverse operation feature, it will not be raised even when the engine is turned on again and the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph). To raise the sunshade again, press the button.

■ Button lock function

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 408)

⚠ CAUTION

- When the rear sunshade is being raised or lowered

Do not place fingers or other objects in the shade mechanism or in the opening as injury may result.

3-8. Other interior features

NOTICE

- To prevent the battery from being discharged
Do not operate the rear sunshade when the engine is not running.
- To ensure normal operation of the sunshade
Observe the following precautions:
 - Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
 - Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
 - Do not attach items to the rear sunshade.
 - Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
 - Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously for long periods of time.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

The rear door sunshades can be extended and retracted by operating either of the buttons shown below.

► From front seat

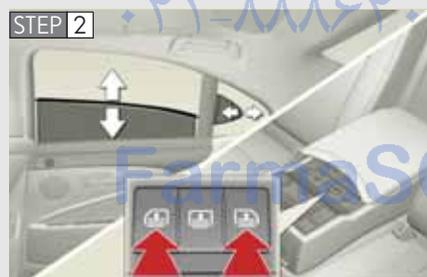


Extend/retract

The rear door sunshades can be extended only when both of left and right rear door sunshades are retracted. Pressing the button with either side retracted will cause both sides to be retracted.

► From rear seat

STEP 1 Slide the armrest lid. (→P. 598)



Extend/retract

*: If equipped

■ Operating conditions

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The rear windows are fully closed.
The rear door sunshades automatically retract when the rear windows are opened.

■ Operating the rear door sunshades after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The rear door sunshades can be operated for approximately 60 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between a rear door sunshade and the window frame, the jam protection function will cause the sunshade to detach from its drive mechanism and retract.

- ▶ If the jam protection function operates when extending the rear door sunshades

Pressing the button will reconnect the sunshade.

Pressing the button again will allow the sunshades to be operated.

If the sunshade does not operate after the button is pressed, press the button again.

- ▶ If the jam protection function operates when retracting the rear door sunshades

Press and hold the button to re-extend the rear door sunshades, and continue pressing for more than 5 seconds after the sunshades have fully extended and stopped.

■ Button lock function

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 408)

■ When reconnecting the battery

The rear door sunshades will always be retracted the first time a button is pressed.

3-8. Other interior features

CAUTION

- When the rear door sunshades are being extended or retracted
Do not place fingers or other objects in the shade mechanism or in the opening as injury may result.
- Jam protection function
Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

NOTICE

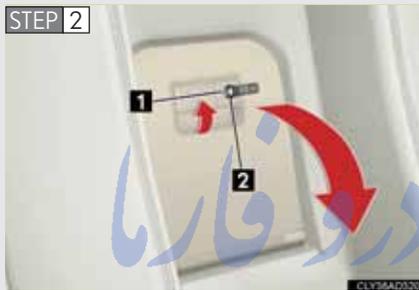
- To prevent the battery from being discharged
Do not operate the rear door sunshades when the engine is not running.
- To ensure normal operation of the sunshades
Observe the following precautions:
 - Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
 - Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
 - Do not attach items to the rear door sunshades.
 - Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
 - Do not operate the rear door sunshades continuously for long periods of time.

FarmaSOS.com

Long objects can be loaded in the vehicle by utilizing the trunk space and rear seat area.

STEP 1 Pull down the armrest. (→P. 598)

STEP 2



Open the armrest door.

The armrest door can be locked and unlocked using the mechanical key.

- 1** Lock
- 2** Unlock

► Opening from the cabin

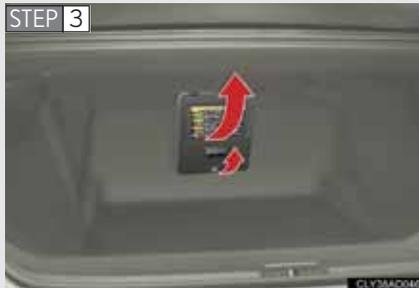
STEP 3



Open the inside trunk door from the cabin, and load baggage or other items.

► Opening from the trunk

STEP 3



Open the inside trunk door from the trunk, and load baggage or other items.

*: If equipped

3-8. Other interior features

CAUTION

■ When not in use

Ensure that the inside trunk door is closed.

In the event of sudden braking, items stored in the trunk may be thrown forward into the cabin, resulting in injury.

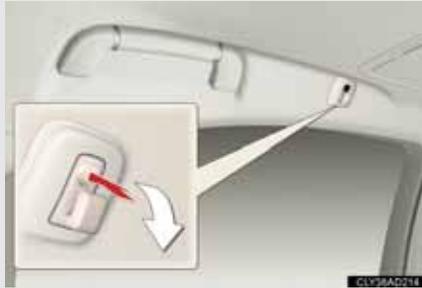
امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

3-8. Other interior features
Coat hooks

▶ Without rear air conditioning system



To use the coat hook, push it on.

▶ With rear air conditioning system



To use the coat hook, push it on.

⚠ CAUTION

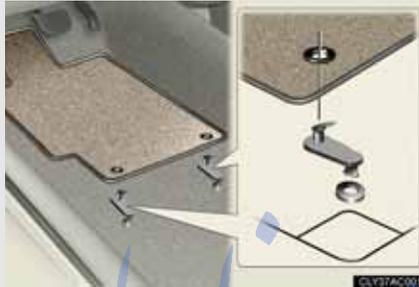
■ Items that must not be hung on the hook

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles that cause death or serious injury.

3-8. Other interior features

Floor mat

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.



Fix the floor mat in place using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) and the fixing procedure of the floor mat for your vehicle may differ from those shown in the illustration. For details, refer to the floor mat retention clip

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving



- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in "P", fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

3-8. Other interior features

■ Cargo net



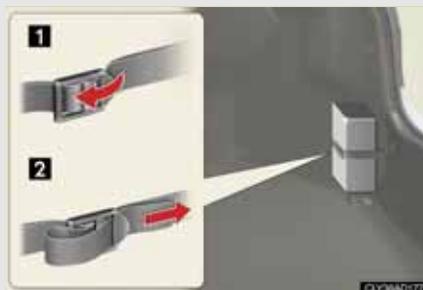
The cargo net is provided for securing loose items on the floor or items inside the trunk.

Raise the cargo hooks on the floor. Hook the net on the cargo hooks.

■ Shopping bag hooks



■ First-aid kit storage belt



1 Loosen

2 Tighten

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the cargo net is not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks on the floor to their stowed positions.

3

Interior features

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

4-1. Maintenance and care	
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior	612
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior	616
4-2. Maintenance	
Maintenance requirements	619
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance	
Do-it-yourself service precautions	622
Hood	625
Positioning a floor jack	626
Engine compartment	628
Tires	643
Tire inflation pressure	652
Wheels	654
Air conditioning filter	656
Electronic key battery	659
Checking and replacing fuses	662
Light bulbs	667

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ Touch-up paint (if equipped)

Touch-up paint may be used to cover small chips or scratches.

Apply the paint soon after the damage occurs or corrosion may set in. To apply the touch-up paint so it is hardly noticeable the trick is to apply it only to the bare spots. Apply only the smallest amount possible and do not paint the surface around the scratch or chip.

■ Aluminum wheels

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ Bumpers and side moldings

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

⚠ CAUTION

■ When cleaning the windshield



Set the wiper switch to off.

If the wiper switch is in “AUTO”, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Caution about the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes and rear bumper diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

■ Precaution regarding the rear bumper with rear pre-crash safety system

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, consult with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified professional.

 NOTICE

- To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)
 - Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
 - After driving near the sea coast
 - After driving on salted roads
 - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
 - If you see dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings on the paint
 - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
 - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
 - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
 - If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
 - To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.
- Cleaning the exterior lights
 - Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
 - Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.
- When using an automatic car wash

Set the wiper switch to off position.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

■ Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

■ Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.
Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

■ Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.

Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.

- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet.

(→P. 138)

An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or severe injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

 NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
 - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach
 - Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

■ Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For full details of your maintenance schedule, read the “Lexus Service Booklet” or “Lexus Warranty Booklet”.

■ Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you're an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer will keep a record of maintenance, which could be useful should you ever require Warranty Service. Should you choose to select a qualified and equipped professional other than an authorized Lexus repairer

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

■ Where to go for service?

In order to maintain your vehicle in the highest possible condition, Lexus recommends that all repairs and service operations be carried out by authorized Lexus dealers or repairers or other duly qualified and equipped professionals. For repairs and services covered by your warranty, please visit an authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, who will use genuine Lexus parts in repairing any difficulties you may encounter. There can also be advantages in utilizing authorized Lexus dealers or repairers for non-warranty repairs and services, as members of the Lexus network will be able to expertly assist you with any difficulties you may encounter.

Your Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle - reliably and economically due to their experience with Lexus vehicles.

■ Does your vehicle need repair?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling, or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driving straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

4-2. Maintenance

CAUTION

- If your vehicle is not properly maintained
It could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.
- Warning in handling of the battery
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling.
(→P. 638)

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedures as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 638)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Warm water• Baking soda• Grease• Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine coolant level (→P. 636)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water.• Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P. 632)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent• Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding oil)
Fuses (→P. 664)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P. 669)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original• Phillips-head screwdriver• Flathead screwdriver• Wrench

Items	Parts and tools
Radiator and condenser (→P. 638)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 653)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 642)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Water washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel

⚠ CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions:

- When working on the engine compartment
 - Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fans and engine drive belt.
 - Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
 - Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
 - Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
 - Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
 - Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.
If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.
If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

 CAUTION

- When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille
Be sure the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is OFF.
With the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 638)
- Safety glasses
Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.

 NOTICE

- If you remove the air cleaner filter
Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.
- If the fluid level is low or high
It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

FarmaSOS.com

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

STEP 1



Pull the hood release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.

STEP 2



Lift the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.

CAUTION

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance Positioning a floor jack

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

■ Front

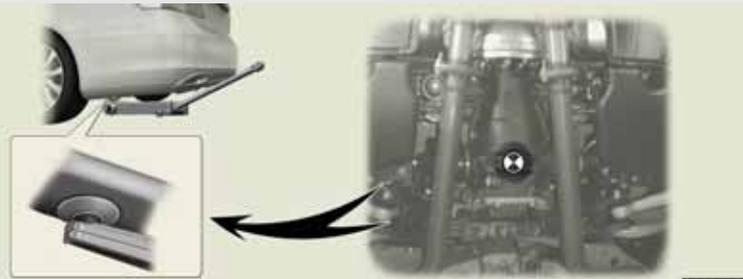
► 2WD models



► AWD models



■ Rear



⚠ CAUTION**■ When raising your vehicle**

Make sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury:

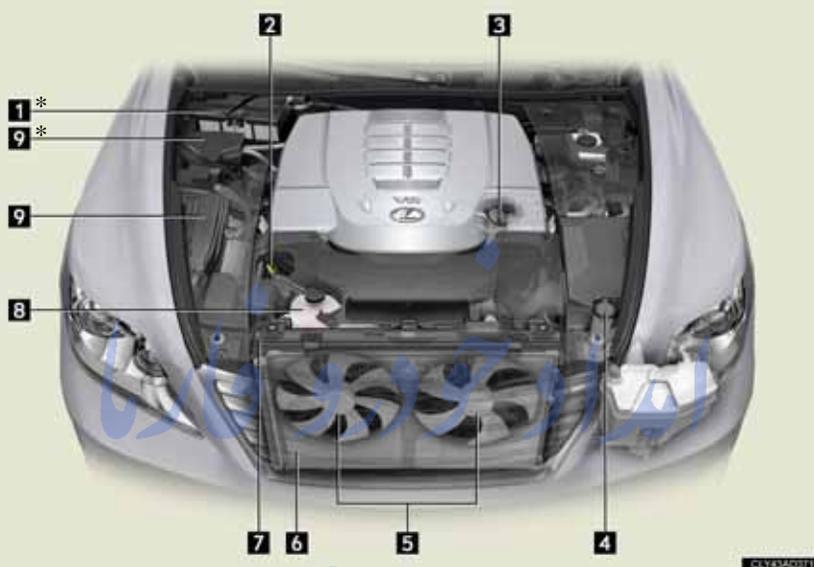


- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.

- When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack.
- Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body or get underneath the vehicle supported only by the floor jack.
- Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the shift lever in "P".
- Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point.
Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the floor jack.
- Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change in the automatic leveling function. (→P. 281)

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance Engine compartment

► 2WD models



- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Battery (→P. 638) | 5 Electric cooling fans |
| 2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 632) | 6 Condenser (→P. 638) |
| 3 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 634) | 7 Radiator (→P. 638) |
| 4 Washer fluid tank(→P. 642) | 8 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 636) |
| 9 Fuse boxes (→P. 664) | |

*: For right-hand drive vehicles:

They are located on the opposite side of the engine compartment.

► AWD models



- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Battery (→P. 638) | 5 Electric cooling fans |
| 2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 632) | 6 Condenser (→P. 638) |
| 3 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 634) | 7 Radiator (→P. 638) |
| 4 Washer fluid tank(→P. 642) | 8 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 636) |
| 9 Fuse boxes (→P. 664) | |

*: For right-hand drive vehicles:
They are located on the opposite side of the engine compartment.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Engine compartment cover

■ Removing the engine compartment covers

► Outside



► Front (type A)



► Front (type B)



■ Installing the clips

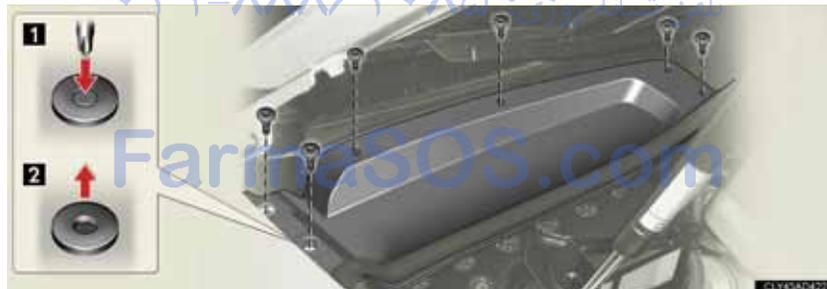


⚠ NOTICE

- After installing an engine compartment cover
Make sure that the cover is securely installed in its original position.

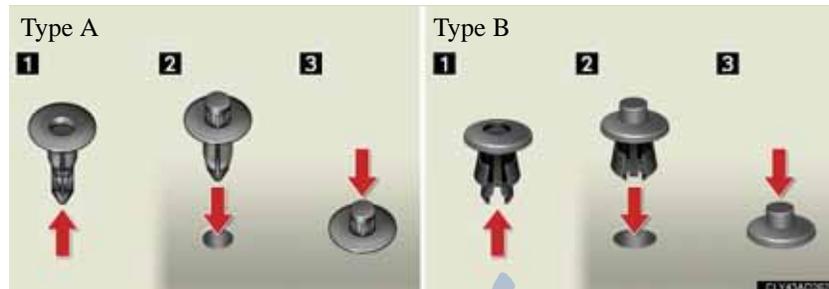
Battery cover

■ Removing the battery cover



4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Installing the clips



⚠ NOTICE

■ When installing the battery cover

Securely install the cover over the battery. Failure to do so may cause water to enter the engine compartment when it rains or the vehicle is washed, resulting in a malfunction.

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

STEP 2 Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

► 2WD models



► AWD models

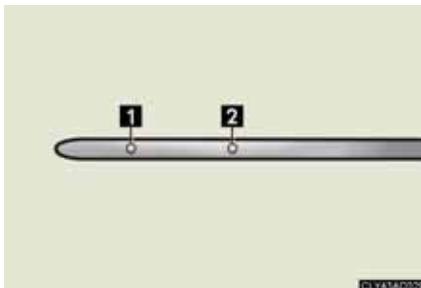


STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



1 Low

2 Full

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 750
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ Engine oil consumption

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds, frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.0 L per 1000 km (1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp. qt./600 miles)
- If your vehicle consumes more than 1.0 L (1.1 qt., 0.9 Imp. qt.) every 1000 km (600 miles), contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
Call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

 NOTICE

- To prevent serious engine damage
Check the oil level on a regular basis.
- When replacing the engine oil
 - Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
 - Avoid overfilling, as the engine could be damaged.
 - Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
 - Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



1 Reservoir cap

2 “FULL”

3 “LOW” تلفن شبانه ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۸

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 739)

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, coolant reservoir cap, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling systems.

■ Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about engine coolant, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

 CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap.

The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

 NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent damage to parts or paint.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser, and clear any foreign objects. If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

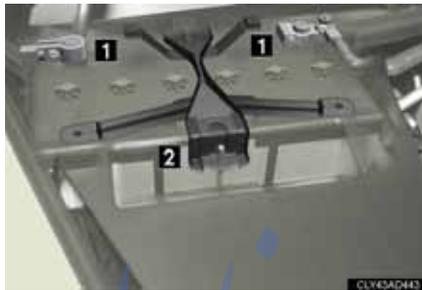
■ Caution symbol

The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks		Battery acid
	Shield eyes		Note operating instructions
	Keep away from children		Explosive gas

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



1 Terminals

2 Hold-down clamp

■ Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

 CAUTION

■ Chemicals in the battery

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

 NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ When replacing the battery

Replace the battery with a battery of the same size.

Installing a battery of a different size will prevent the cover from being properly installed over the battery. This may cause water to enter the engine compartment when it rains or the vehicle is washed, resulting in a malfunction.

For more information about replacing the battery, contact with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified professional.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When refilling the washer fluid

Do not refill the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as the washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary. Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance Tires

Replace the tires when the treadwear indicators show.

■ Checking tires



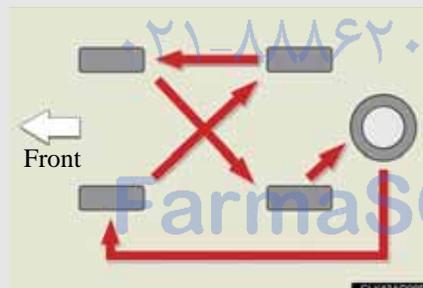
- 1 New tread
- 2 Treadwear indicator
- 3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the “TWI” or “△” marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

With a spare tire: Check spare tire condition and inflation pressure if not rotated.

■ Tire rotation

► With a spare tire



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires approximately at the following intervals:

2WD models

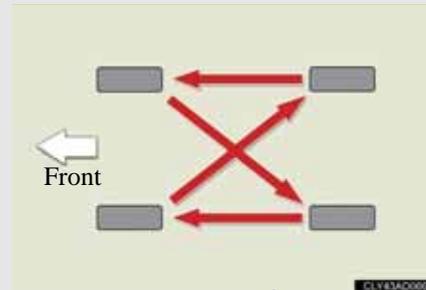
Every 10000 km (6000 miles)

AWD models

Every 5000 km (3000 miles)

With tire pressure warning system: Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning

► With an emergency tire puncture repair kit



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires approximately at the following intervals:

2WD models

Every 10000 km (6000 miles)

AWD models

Every 5000 km (3000 miles)

With tire pressure warning system: Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

■ The tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and

equipped professional. (→P. 646)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

- The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:
 - When rotating the tires on vehicles differing with front and rear tire inflation pressures.
 - When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed.
 - When changing the tire size.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire pressure is set as the pressure benchmark.

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

STEP 1 Park the vehicle in safe place and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

STEP 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 757)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

STEP 3 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance



Push and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times and a message appears on the multi-information display.

The switch is under the driver's side instrument panel, facing the floor above the accelerator pedal.

STEP 5 Wait for a few minutes with IGNITION ON mode, and then turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. Have the ID code registered by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage.
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage.

If you are not sure, consult with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ If the tread wears down 4 mm (0.16 in.) or more on snow tires

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

■ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the tire pressure warning system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ If you push the tire pressure reset switch accidentally

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

■ When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the setting has not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure setting are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times and the setting message does not appear on the multi-information display.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for about 20 minutes.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Certification for tire pressure warning system

CE 0891

<i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> tímto prohlašuje, že tento <i>PMV-107K</i> je ve shodě se z ákladními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr <i>PMV-107K</i> overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklárt <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> , dass sich das Gerät <i>PMV-107K</i> in Ü bereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlagigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Käesolevaga kinnitab <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> seadme <i>PMV-107K</i> vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hereby, <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> , declares that this <i>PMV-107K</i> is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Por medio de la presente <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> declara que el <i>PMV-107K</i> cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ <i>PMV-107K</i> ΣΥΜ ΜΟΡΦΟΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕ ΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Par la présente <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> déclare que l'appareil <i>PMV-107K</i> est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Con la presente <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> dichiara che questo <i>PMV-107K</i> è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Ar šo <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> deklarē, ka <i>PMV-107K</i> atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> deklaruoją, kad šis <i>PMV-107K</i> atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Hierbij verklaart <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> dat het toestel <i>PMV-107K</i> in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Hawnhekk <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> jiddikjara li dan <i>PMV-107K</i> jikkonforma mal-htigijiet essenzjali u ma provvediment oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Direttiva 1999/5/EC.
Alulirott, <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> nyilatkozzom, hogy a <i>PMV-107K</i> megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
<i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> declara que este <i>PMV-107K</i> está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
<i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> izjavlja, da je ta <i>PMV-107K</i> v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
<i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> tímto vyhlásuje, že <i>PMV-107K</i> splňa základné pož iadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
<i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> vakuuttaa täten että <i>PMV-107K</i> tyypinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Härmed intygar <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> att denna <i>PMV-107K</i> står i överensstä mmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgå r av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir <i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> yfir því að <i>PMV-107K</i> er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
<i>PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD</i> erklærer herved at udstyret <i>PMV-107K</i> er i samsvar med de grundlæggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

<i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> tímto prohlašuje, že tento <i>13BCK</i> je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr <i>13BCK</i> overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> , dass sich das Gerät <i>13BCK</i> in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Käesolevaga kinnitab <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> seadme <i>13BCK</i> vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Hereby, <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> declares that this <i>13BCK</i> is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Por medio de la presente <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> declara que el <i>13BCK</i> cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ <i>13BCK</i> ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Par la présente <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> déclare que l'appareil <i>13BCK</i> est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Con la presente <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> dichiara che questo <i>13BCK</i> è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Ar šo <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> deklarē, ka <i>13BCK</i> atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> deklaruoja, kad šis <i>13BCK</i> atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Hierbij verklaart <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> dat het toestel <i>13BCK</i> in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Alulírott, <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> nyilatkozik, hogy a <i>13BCK</i> megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
<i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> declara que este <i>13BCK</i> está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
<i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> izjavlja, da je ta <i>13BCK</i> v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
<i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> tímto vyhlasuje, že <i>13BCK</i> splňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
<i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> vakuuttaa täten että <i>13BCK</i> tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Härmed intygar <i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> att denna <i>13BCK</i> står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
<i>DENSO CORPORATION</i> niniejszym oświadcza, że <i>13BCK</i> spełnia zasadnicze wymagania oraz inne istotne postanowienia dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

⚠ CAUTION**■ When inspecting or replacing tires**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

■ Using tires of a different size

Do not use tires of a different size from those equipped when the vehicle was new, as the front tire steering angle setting is designed for the original tire size. It is dangerous to use an incorrect wheel and tire combination as this may result in reduced vehicle stability.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not push the reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

NOTICE

- Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps
 - When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
 - When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.
- To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 644)
- Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or pot holes. These conditions may cause losses in tire air pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.
- If tire inflation pressures become low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

FarmaSOS.com

Make sure to maintain the proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks.

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Instructions for checking tire pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.

Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

FarmaSOS.com

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

■ Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: Conventionally referred to as “offset”.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
 - Used wheels
 - Bent wheels that have been straightened
- #### ■ Aluminum wheel precautions
- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
 - When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
 - Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ When replacing wheels (with the tire pressure warning system)

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 644)

CAUTION

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing serious injury or death.

NOTICE

■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (with the tire pressure warning system)

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

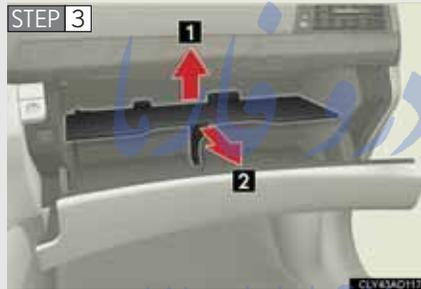
■ Front air conditioning filter

STEP 1 Set the air conditioning system to recirculated mode.
(→P. 395)

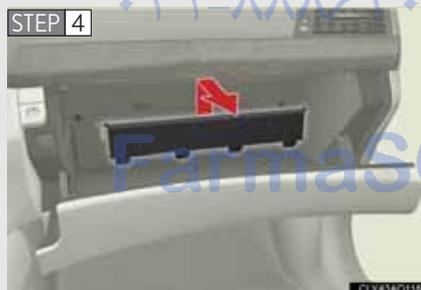
The air conditioning filter case cannot be removed with the system in the outside air mode.

STEP 2 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

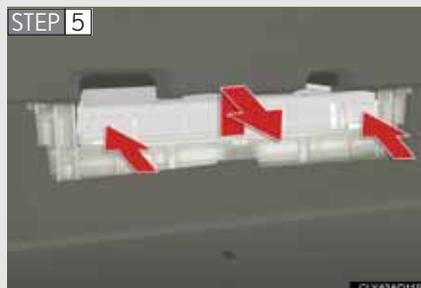
STEP 3 Open the glove box. Lift and remove the partition.



STEP 4 Remove the filter cover.



STEP 5 Remove the filter case.



4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

STEP 6



Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The “↑UP” marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.

STEP 7 Reset the air conditioning filter maintenance data. (→P. 660)

■ Rear air conditioning filter (if equipped)

STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

STEP 2



Open the trunk lid. Remove the filter cover.

STEP 3



Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The “↑UP” marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.

■ Changing interval for the front air conditioning filter

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter when a message is appeared on the multi-information display. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required.

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

■ After changing the air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold  (on the air conditioning panel) for 4 seconds or more.

A buzzer will sound to indicate that the maintenance data has been successfully reset.

■ Rear air conditioning filter (if equipped)

If it is necessary to clean or replace the filter, contact with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified professional.

■ Climate control seat filter

Filters are installed in the seats. When it is necessary to clean or replace the filters, contact with any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified professional.

 NOTICE

■ When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed.

Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

■ You will need the following items:

- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

■ Replacing the battery

STEP 1



Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

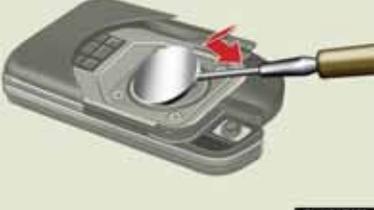
STEP 3



Remove the battery cover bolts and remove the battery cover.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

STEP 4



Remove the depleted battery.
Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal facing up.

■ If the electronic key battery is discharged

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ Use a CR1632 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

 CAUTION

■ Removed battery and other parts

Keep away from children. These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

■ Certification for the key battery

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS

 NOTICE

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

FarmaSOS.com

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

STEP 2 Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 630)

STEP 3 Open the fuse box cover.

► Engine compartment (type A fuse box)



Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

► Engine compartment (type B fuse box)



Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

▶ Driver's side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

▶ Passenger's side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

▶ Trunk



Remove the lid.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

STEP 4



Take out the pullout tool.

Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.

STEP 5 Check if the fuse has blown.

► Type A



1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

► Type B



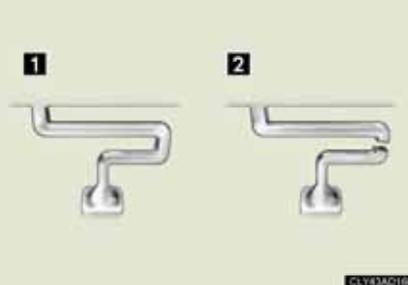
1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

► Type C

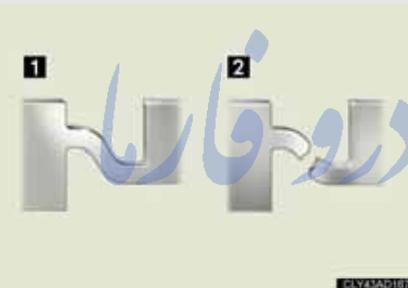


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

► Type D



1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- After a fuse is replaced
 - If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 669)
 - If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- If there is an overload in the circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

- To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire
Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.
 - Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
 - Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
 - Do not modify the fuse or the fuse box.

NOTICE

- Before replacing fuses
Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible.

امداد خودرو فارما
تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

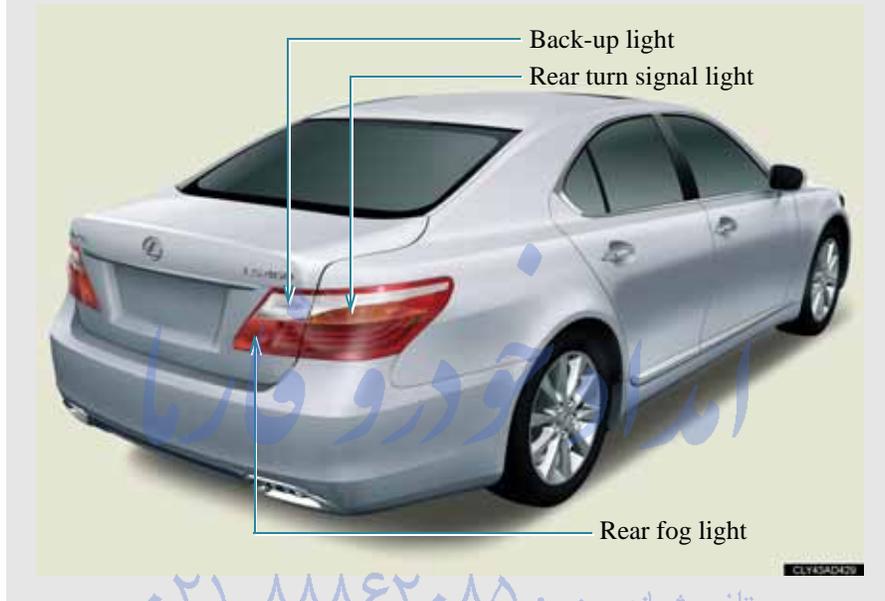
For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Preparing for light bulb replacement
Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 759)
- Remove the engine compartment cover
→P. 630
- Front bulb locations



4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Rear bulb locations



Replacing light bulbs

■ Headlight high beams

STEP 1 Before replacing the bulbs:

► Left side

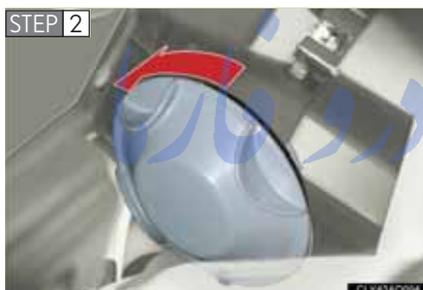


Remove the securing bolt and move the washer fluid filler opening.

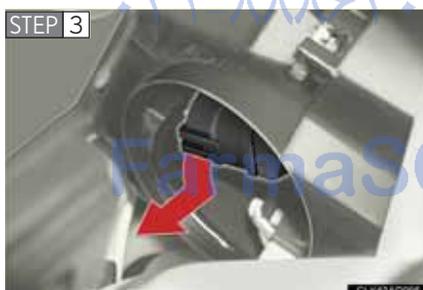
► Right side



Remove the securing bolts and nut, and move the fuse block.



Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Unplug the connector while pulling the lock release.

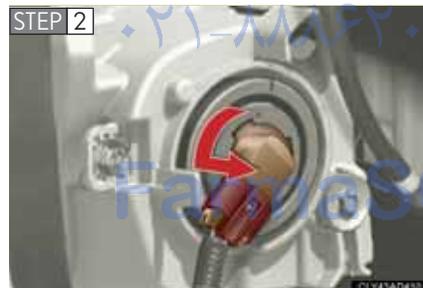
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Front fog lights



To allow enough working clearance, turn the steering wheel to the opposite side of the bulb to be replaced.

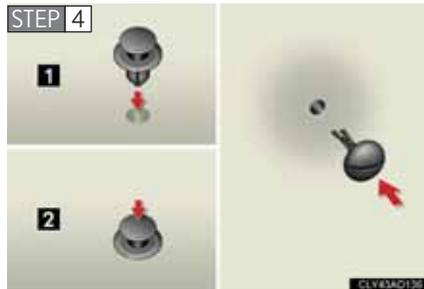
Remove the fender liner bolt and clips, and then remove the fender liner.



Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.



Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.



Install the bolt and clips.

■ Front turn signal lights

STEP 1 Before replacing the bulbs:

► Left side



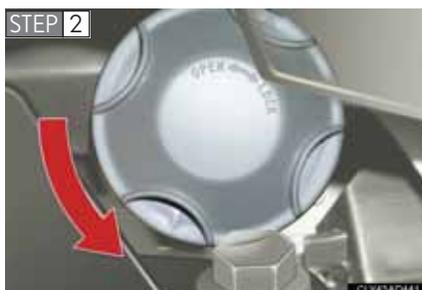
Remove the securing bolt and move the washer fluid filler opening.

► Right side

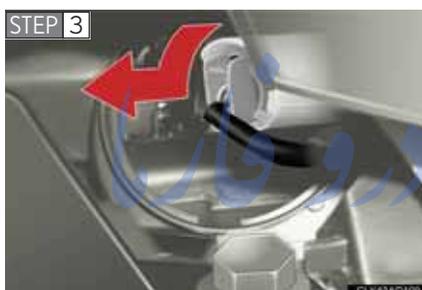


Remove the securing bolts and nut, and move the fuse block.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance



Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

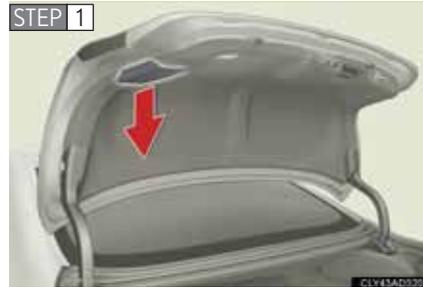


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

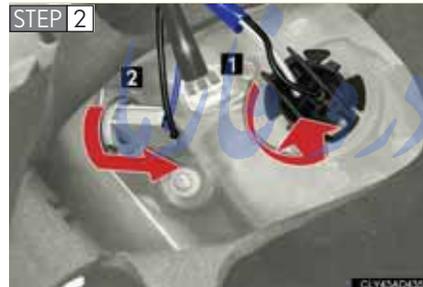


Remove the light bulb.

■ Back-up lights and rear fog lights

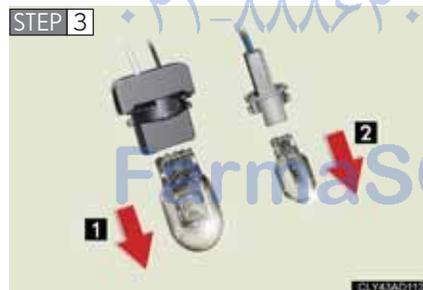


Open the trunk lid and remove the cover.



Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.

- 1 Rear fog light
- 2 Back-up light



Remove the light bulb.

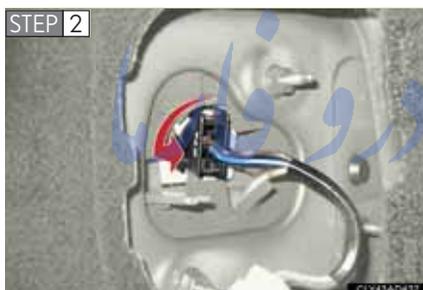
- 1 Rear fog light
- 2 Back-up light

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Rear turn signal lights



Open the trunk lid and remove the cover.



Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

■ Lights other than the above

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Headlight low/high beams (discharge bulb)
- Front position lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Stop lights
- Tail lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

■ Discharge headlights

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

■ LED light bulbs

The front position lights, side turn signal lights, stop lights, tail lights, high mounted stoplight and license plate lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional to have the light replaced.

 CAUTION

- Replacing light bulbs
 - Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
 - Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
 - Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Discharge headlights
 - Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, before replacing discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
 - Do not touch the high-intensity discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
An extremely high voltage of 20000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.
 - Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.
Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.
- To prevent damage or fire
 - Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

When trouble arises

5

- | | |
|--|--|
| 5-1. Essential information | 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency |
| Emergency flashers 678 | If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 687 |
| If your vehicle needs to be towed..... 679 | If a warning message is displayed..... 696 |
| If you think something is wrong 685 | If you have a flat tire (with a spare tire)..... 699 |
| Fuel pump shut off system 686 | If you have a flat tire (with an emergency tire puncture repair kit) 709 |
| | If the engine will not start 723 |
| | If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P” 725 |
| | If the parking brake cannot be released..... 726 |
| | If the electronic key does not operate properly..... 731 |
| | If the battery is discharged..... 735 |
| | If your vehicle overheats . 739 |
| | If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 742 |
| | If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 743 |

5-1. Essential information Emergency flashers

Use the emergency flashers if the vehicle malfunctions or is involved in an accident.



Press the switch to flash all the turn signal lights. To turn them off, press the switch once again.

NOTICE

- To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

5-1. Essential information

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, such as a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flatbed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

2WD models: If towing from the rear, the vehicle's front wheels and axles must be in good condition. (→P. 683)

If the vehicle is damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet(s). This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.



Towing eyelet

- Before emergency towing
 - Release the parking brake.
 - Shift the shift lever to “N”.
 - Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY (engine off) or IGNITION ON mode (engine running).

⚠ CAUTION

- Caution while towing
 - Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelets and the cables or chains. Always be cautious of the surroundings and other vehicles while towing.
 - If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

⚠ NOTICE

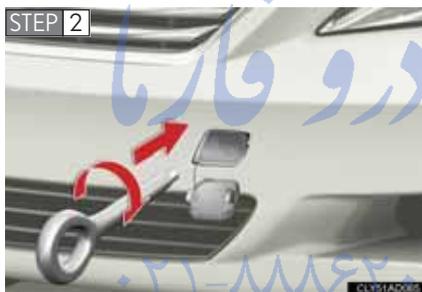
- To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission (2WD models)
Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission.
- To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission and the transfer (AWD models)
Never tow this vehicle with any of the wheels in contact with the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission and the transfer.

Installing towing eyelets



Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body, as shown in the illustration.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench.

- Location of the emergency towing eyelet
→P. 699, 709

5-1. Essential information

CAUTION

■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. This may lead to accidents that cause serious injury or even death.

■ Towing with a sling-type truck



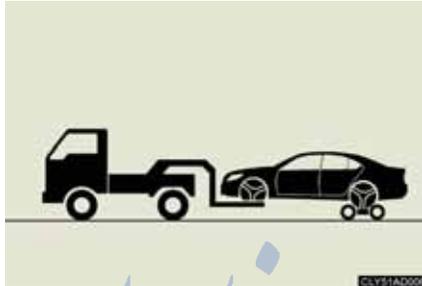
NOTICE

■ To prevent body damage

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

► From the front



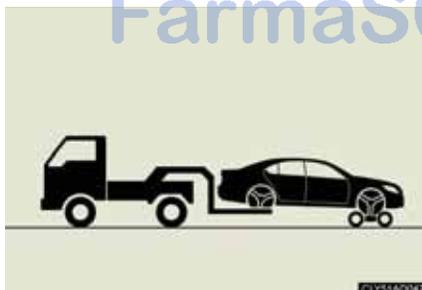
Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

► From the rear (2WD models)



Switch to ACCESSORY mode so that the steering wheel is unlocked.

► From the rear (AWD models)

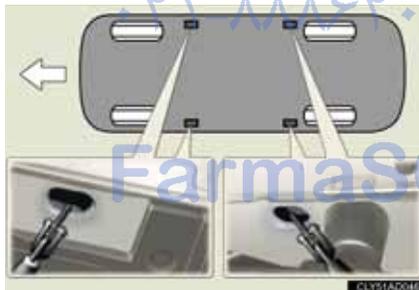


Use a towing dolly under the front wheel.

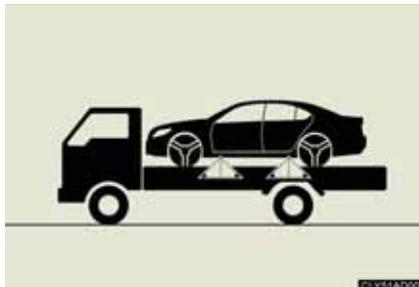
 NOTICE

- To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission (2WD models)
Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.
- To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission and the transfer (AWD models)
Never tow this vehicle with any of the wheels in contact with the ground.
- To prevent damaging the vehicle
 - Do not tow the vehicle with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
 - When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

Using a flat bed truck



If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

5-1. Essential information

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible.

■ Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.

■ Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

■ Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road

5

When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an air-bag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Switch to ACCESSORY mode or OFF.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

- Before starting the engine
Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)* <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Low brake fluid• Malfunction in the electronically controlled brake system

*: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven at a speed of approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) or more.

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Charging system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	<p>Malfunction indicator lamp</p> <p>Indicates a malfunction in:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic automatic transmission control system
	<p>SRS warning light</p> <p>Indicates a malfunction in:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The SRS airbag system; • The seat belt pretensioner system; or • The active head restraints system (if equipped)
	<p>ABS warning light</p> <p>Indicates a malfunction in:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ABS; or • The brake assist system
	<p>Brake system warning light</p> <p>Indicates a malfunction in:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The electronically controlled brake system; or • The electric parking brake
	<p>Electric power steering system warning light</p> <p>Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system</p>

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (Flashes)	Pre-crash safety system warning light (if equipped) Indicates a malfunction in the pre-crash safety system The warning light will operate as follows, even when the system is not malfunctioning: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The light will flash quickly when the system is operating. (→P. 354) • The light will turn on when the pre-crash braking is disabled. (→P. 355) • The light will turn on when the system cannot temporarily be used. (→P. 696)
	Slip indicator Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The VSC system; • The TRC system; or • The hill-start assist control system
 (Flashes)	Cruise control indicator light Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system
 (Flashes)	“AFS OFF” indicator light Indicates a malfunction in the adaptive front lighting system

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

- If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

For some models, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible.

- Electric power steering system warning light

When the voltage is low or drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on.

⚠ CAUTION

- When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.

If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

FarmaSOS.com

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Open door warning light (warning buzzer)* ¹ Indicates that a door or the trunk is not fully closed.	Check that all doors and the trunk are closed.
 In the fuel gauge	Low fuel level warning light Remaining fuel (Approximately 13 L [3.4 gal., 2.8 Imp. gal.] or less)	Refuel the vehicle.
	Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)* ² Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)* ² Warns the front passenger to fasten his or her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Tire pressure warning light (if equipped)	Adjust the tire inflation pressure (including the spare tire [if equipped]) to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Natural causes (→P. 693) • Flat tire (→P. 699, 709) 	
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system (→P. 694)	Have the system checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
	Master warning light A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on or flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	→P. 696

*¹: Open door warning buzzer:

The open door warning buzzer sounds to alert one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]).

*2: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

■ Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust it to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

■ The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ When a tire is replaced with a spare tire (with a spare tire)

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative

The tire pressure warning system will be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 500 kPa (5.1 kgf/cm² or bar, 73 psi) or higher.

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- With a spare tire: If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the trunk.
- If a tire that was repaired using an emergency tire puncture repair kit is used.

■ If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ CAUTION**■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.

- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires.

With spare tire: If a tire is flat, change it to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

With emergency tire puncture repair kit: If a tire is flat, repair it using the emergency tire puncture repair kit and have the flat tire repaired by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur
 The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

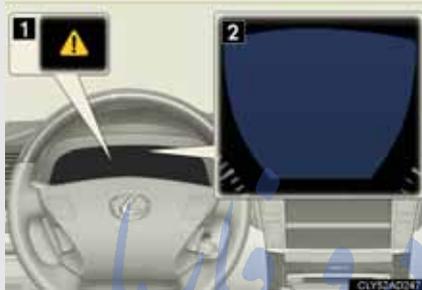
⚠ NOTICE**■ Precaution when installing a different tire**

When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, or shows messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



1 Master warning light

The master warning light comes on or flashes when a message is being shown on the multi-information display.

2 Multi-information display

If any of the warning messages is shown again after its correction procedure has been performed, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected immediately by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the system shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ System warning lights

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on or flash along with the message shown on the multi-information display.

- Malfunction of the AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System)
The “AFS OFF” indicator light flashes. (→P. 216)
- Malfunction of the brake system
The brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on. (→P. 687)
- Malfunction of the electronically controlled brake system or electric parking brake
The brake system warning light (yellow indicator) comes on. (→P. 688)
- Malfunction of the ABS
The ABS warning light comes on. (→P. 688)
- Malfunction of the charging system
The charging system warning light comes on. (→P. 687)
- High engine coolant temperature
The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone. (→P. 203)

■ When “Electrical equipment operation is limited” is shown

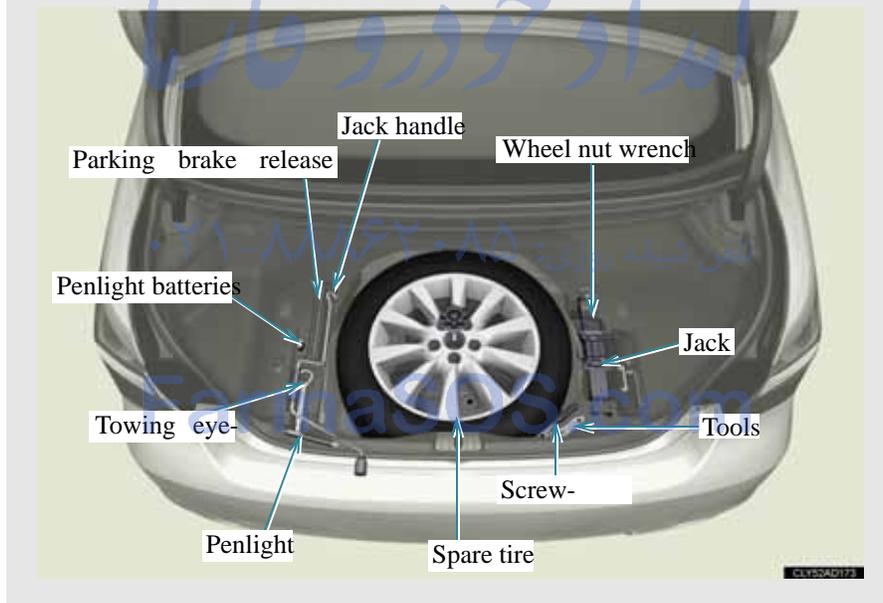
This message indicates that the battery is low. When the message is shown, operation of electrical equipment that uses a large amount of electric power, such as the air conditioning system, may be limited temporarily. This does not indicate a malfunction. Operation of electrical equipment will be restored after the battery is charged.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If you have a flat tire (with a spare tire)

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

- Before jacking up the vehicle
 - Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
 - Set the parking brake.
 - Shift the shift lever to “P”.
 - Stop the engine.
 - Turn on the emergency flashers.
- Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Penlight

The vehicle is equipped with a penlight, located inside the trunk. The penlight is provided in case it is necessary to perform an unexpected service operation at night, such as installation of the spare tire.

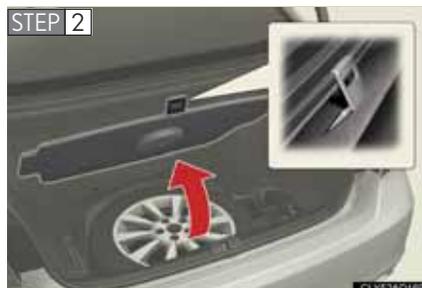


- 1 Turn the top portion to remove it.
- 2 Insert batteries.
- 3 Install the top portion.
- 4 On/off

Taking out the jack and spare tire



Lift up the hook of the panel on the trunk floor.

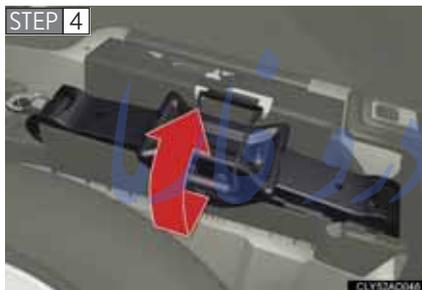


Secure the panel using the hook provided.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Remove the tool tray.



Remove the jack after removing the hook.



Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

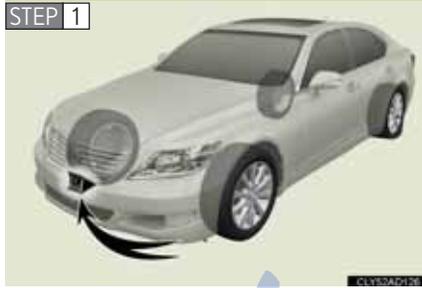
If the center fastener cannot be turned by hand, use the wrench that is stored in the trunk. (To secure the tire, tighten the center fastener by hand. Do not use the wrench or other tools.)

5

When trouble arises

Replacing a flat tire

STEP 1



Chock the tires.

Flat tire		Wheel chock posi-
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand

STEP 2



Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

STEP 3



Turn the tire jack portion "A" by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

Installing the spare tire



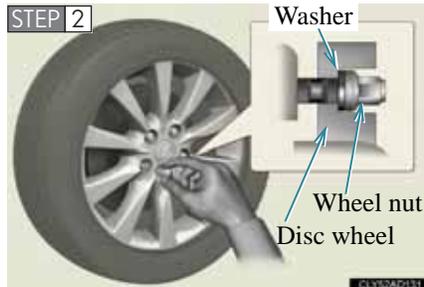
Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

5

When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

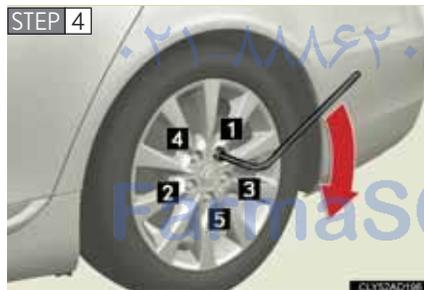


Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

Turn the lug nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel.



Lower the vehicle.



Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103 ft•lbf)

STEP 5] Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 645)

■ Certification for the jack

CE

Manufacturer's Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer:
Kawasaki Industrial Co., Ltd.
4618 Mukajijima Shimada, Shizuoka, Japan

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration
2006/42/EC Machinery Directive

The product covered by this declaration
JACK SUB-ASSY,PANTOGRAPH
model
0.8ton , 1.1ton , 1.35ton , 1.5ton

The basis on which conformity is being declared
The product identified above complies with the requirements of the Machinery Directive
Directive above by meeting following standards
JIS D 8103

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirement the Machinery Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer

Technical File No: KSF-201-00-01

The CE mark was first applied in:2010

Done at Shizuoka, Japan

Signature: 
Koji Kawasaki
PRESIDENT ,Kawasaki Industrial Co., Ltd.
Date of Issue: 25 December,2009

 CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or serious injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

 CAUTION

■ Replacing a flat tire

- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
 - Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
 - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
 - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
 - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

 NOTICE

- Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire
Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.
- When closing the trunk
Do not leave the luggage mat hook hooked on the edge of the trunk.
The luggage mat may get damaged.

 NOTICE

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 644)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

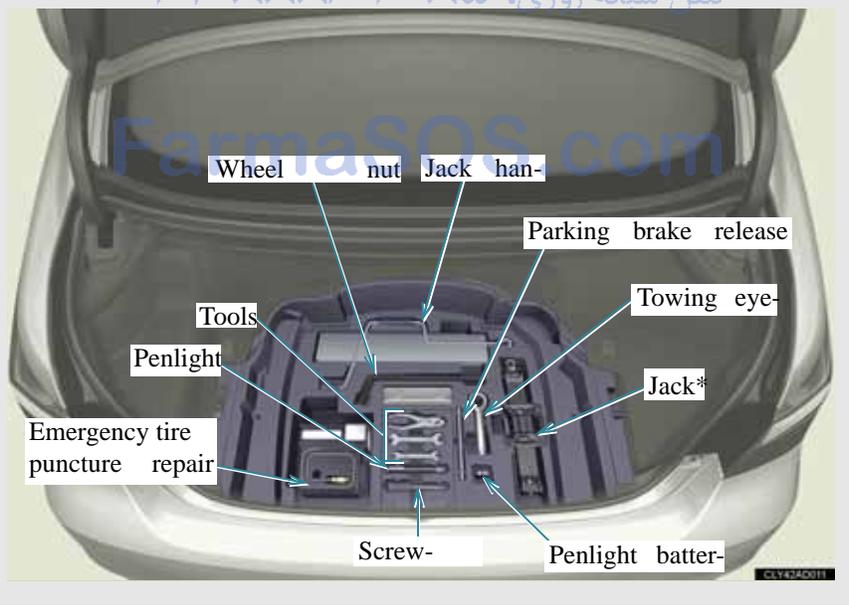
If you have a flat tire (with an emergency tire puncture repair kit)

A puncture caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread can be repaired temporarily using the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (The kit contains a bottle of sealant. The sealant can be used only once to temporarily repair one tire without removing the nail or screw from the tire.) After temporarily repairing the tire with the kit, have the tire repaired or replaced by any authorized Lexus dealer, tire dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Before repairing the tire

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to “P”.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

■ Location of the emergency tire puncture repair kit, jack and tools



5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ Emergency tire puncture repair kit components



■ Penlight

The vehicle is equipped with a penlight, located inside the trunk. The penlight is provided in case it is necessary to perform an unexpected service operation at night.



- 1 Turn the top portion to remove it.
- 2 Insert batteries.
- 3 Install the top portion.
- 4 On/off

Taking out the emergency tire puncture repair kit



Lift up the handle and fold the trunk floor back.



Remove the tool tray cover.

STEP 3 Take out the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

FarmaSOS.com

Before performing emergency repair

Check the degree of the tire damage.



A tire should only be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit if the damage is caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread.

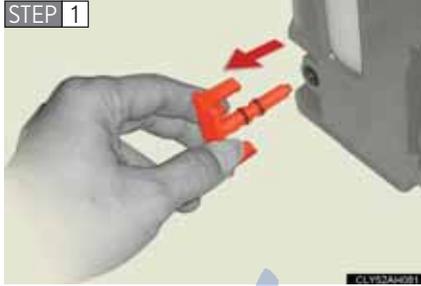
- Do not remove the nail or screw from the tire. Removing the object may widen the opening and disenable emergency repair with the kit.
- To avoid sealant leakage, move the vehicle until the area of the puncture, if known, is positioned at the top of the tire.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

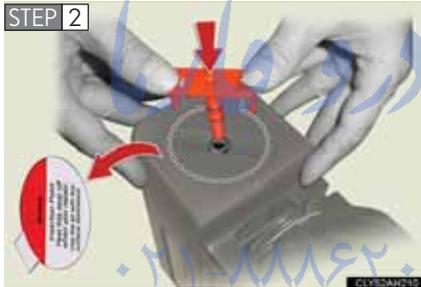
Emergency repair method

STEP 1



Pull the insertion key out of the kit.

STEP 2



Place the kit with the bottom facing upward.

Peel off the label, and push in the insertion key until a click is heard.

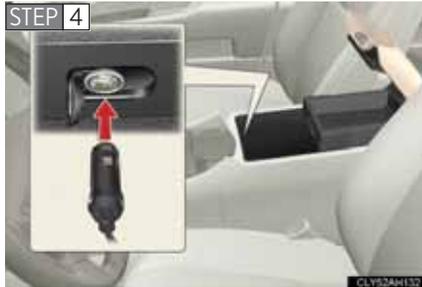
STEP 3



Return the kit to an upright position and make sure that the compressor switch is off.

Use the kit with the top facing upward.

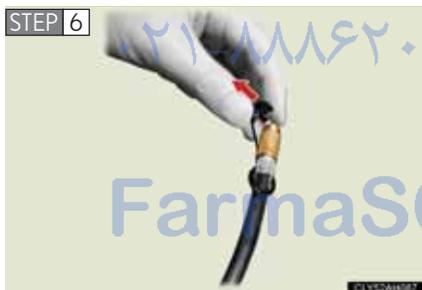
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Connect the power plug to the power outlet socket. (→P. 591)



Remove the valve cap from the valve of the punctured tire.



Remove the air release cap from the hose.



Connect the hose to the valve.
Screw the end of the hose clockwise as far as possible.



STEP 8 Check the specified tire inflation pressure.

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label on the driver's side pillar as shown. (→P. 757)

STEP 9 Start the engine.



STEP 10 To inject the sealant and inflate the tire, turn the compressor switch on.

Use the kit with the top facing upward.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Inflate the tire until the recommended pressure is reached.

1 The sealant will be injected and the pressure will spike to 300 kPa (3.0 kgf/cm² or bar, 44 psi) or 450 kPa (4.5 kgf/cm² or bar, 65 psi), then gradually decrease.

2 The air pressure gauge will display the actual tire inflation pressure about 1 minute after the switch is turned on.

- Turn the compressor switch off and then check the tire inflation pressure. Being careful not to over inflate, check and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached.

- If the needle of the air pressure gauge reaches the red zone (450 kPa [4.5 kgf/cm² or bar, 65 psi] or more), there may be a malfunction in the tire or in the kit itself. Stop operation immediately.

- If the tire inflation pressure is still lower than the recommended level after inflating for 10 minutes with the switch on, the tire is too damaged to be repaired. Turn the compressor switch off and contact any authorized Lexus dealer, tire dealer or repairer, or another

duly qualified and equipped professional.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

- If the tire inflation pressure exceeds the recommended level, let out some air to adjust the tire inflation pressure. (→P. 721)

STEP 12 Disconnect the hose from the valve on the tire and then pull out the power plug from the power outlet socket.

STEP 13 To spread the liquid sealant evenly within the tire, immediately drive for about 5 km (3 miles).



After driving for about 5 km (3 miles), stop your vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface and reconnect the compressor.



Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check the tire inflation pressure.

1 If the tire inflation pressure is below 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 19 psi): The puncture cannot be repaired. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer, tire dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

2 If the tire inflation pressure is between 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 19 psi) and a point below the recommended level: The tire can be

repaired. Proceed to “STEP 16”.

- 3 If the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level: Proceed to “STEP 17”.

STEP 16 Turn the compressor switch on to inflate the tire until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached. Drive for about 5 km (3 miles) and then perform “STEP 14”.



Store the kit and then attach the 2 stickers as shown.

Taking precautions to avoid sudden braking and sharp turns, drive carefully at under 80 km/h (50 mph) to the nearest authorized Lexus dealer, tire dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for tire repair or replacement.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۶۲۰۸۱-۲۱

-
- In the following cases, the tire cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer, tire dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
 - When the tire is damaged due to driving without sufficient air pressure
 - When the tire lost air pressure due to a crack or damage in the tire sidewall
 - When the tire is visibly separated from the wheel
 - When the cut or damage to the tread is 4 mm (0.16 in.) long or more
 - When the wheel is damaged
 - When two or more tires have been punctured
 - When there is more than one hole or cut in the damaged tire
 - Emergency tire puncture repair kit
 - The sealant has a limited lifespan. The expiry date is marked on the bottle. The sealant should be replaced before the expiry date. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer, tire dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for replacement.
 - The sealant stored in the emergency tire puncture repair kit can be used only once to temporarily repair a single tire. If the sealant in the bottle and other parts of the kit have been used and need to be replaced, contact any authorized Lexus dealer, tire dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
 - The sealant can be used when the outside temperature is from -30°C (-22°F) to 60°C (140°F).
 - The kit is exclusively designed for size and type of tires originally installed on your vehicle. Do not use it for tires that a different size than the original ones, or for any other purposes.
 - If the sealant gets on your clothes, it may stain.
 - If the sealant adheres to a wheel or the surface of the vehicle body, the stain may not be removable if it is not cleaned at once. Immediately wipe away the sealant with a wet cloth.
 - During operation of the kit, a loud operation noise is produced. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ If the tire is inflated to more than the recommended level

STEP 1 Disconnect the hose from the valve.



STEP 2 Install the air release cap to the end of the hose and push the protrusion on the air release cap into the tire valve to let some air out.

STEP 3 Disconnect the hose from the valve, remove the air release cap from the hose and then reconnect the hose.

STEP 4 Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check that the air pressure indicator shows the recommended level (→P. 757).

If the air pressure is lower than the recommended level, turn the compressor switch on again and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended pressure is reached.

■ The valve of a tire that has been repaired

- After a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit, the valve/tire pressure warning valve and transmitter should be replaced.
- After a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit, even if the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level, the tire pressure warning light may come on/flash.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Precautions for use of the sealant

- Ingesting the sealant is hazardous to your health. If you ingest sealant, consume as much water as possible, then immediately consult a doctor.
- If sealant gets in eyes or adheres to skin, immediately wash it off with water. If discomfort persists, consult a doctor.

 CAUTION

- When fixing the flat tire
 - Stop your vehicle in a safe and flat area.
 - Connect the valve and hose securely with the tire installed on the vehicle.
 - If the hose is not properly connected to the valve, air leakage may occur or sealant may be sprayed out.
 - If the hose comes off the valve while inflating the tire, there is a risk that the hose will move abruptly due to air pressure.
 - After inflation of the tire has completed, the sealant may splatter when the hose is disconnected or some air is let out of the tire.
 - Keep back from the tire while it is being repaired, as there is a chance of it bursting while the repair operation is being performed. If you notice any cracks or deformation of the tire, turn off the compressor switch and stop the repair operation immediately.
 - The kit may overheat if operated for a long period of time. Do not operate the compressor continuously for more than 10 minutes.
 - Parts of the kit become hot during operation. Be careful handling the kit during and after operation.
 - Do not attach the vehicle speed warning sticker to an area other than the one indicated. If the sticker is attached to an area where an SRS airbag is located, such as the pad of the steering wheel, it may prevent the SRS airbag from operating properly.
- Driving to spread the liquid sealant evenly
 - Drive the vehicle carefully at a low speed. Be especially careful when turning and cornering.
 - If the vehicle does not drive straight or you feel a pull through the steering wheel, stop the vehicle and check the following:
 - Tire condition. The tire may have separated from the wheel.
 - Tire inflation pressure. If tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kg/cm² or bar, 19 psi) or below, this may indicate severe tire damage.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

NOTICE

- Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire
Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.
- When performing an emergency repair
 - Perform the emergency repair without removing the nail or screw that has punctured the tread of the tire. If the object that has punctured the tire is removed, repair by the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be possible.
 - The kit is not waterproof. Make sure that the kit is not exposed to water, such as when it is being used in the rain.
 - Do not put the kit directly onto dusty ground such as sand at the side of the road. If the kit vacuums up dust etc., a malfunction may occur.
 - Use the kit with the top facing upward. The kit cannot work properly if it is laid on its side.
- Handling the emergency tire puncture repair kit
 - The compressor power source should be 12 V DC suitable for vehicle use. Do not connect the compressor to any other source.
 - If gasoline splatters on the kit, the kit may deteriorate. Take care not to allow gasoline to contact it.
 - Store the kit in its assigned place out of reach of children.
 - Do not disassemble or modify the kit. Do not subject parts such as the air pressure indicator to impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 180), consider each of the following points.

- The engine will not start, even when the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 180)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system.
(→P. 119)

- The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 737)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

- The starter motor does not turn over.

The following may be the cause of the problem:

- The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

- The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.
One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 737)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is functioning normally:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to “P”.

STEP 3 Set the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Press and hold the “ENGINE START STOP” switch about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P”

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, immediately.

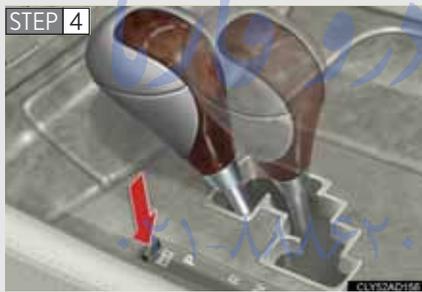
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Start the engine.

STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.

STEP 4



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

FarmaSOS.com

If the parking brake cannot be released even when operated, the parking brake system may be malfunctioning. If this occurs, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

The procedure below can be used to release the parking brake manually. This procedure should only be used in an emergency.

■ Before releasing the parking brake manually

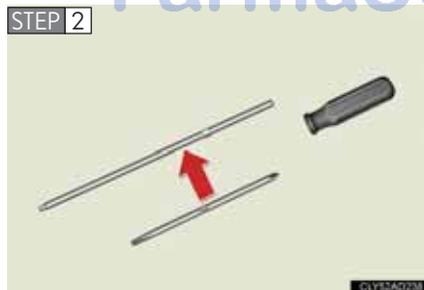
- Shift the shift lever to “P”.
- Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.
- Check that the parking brake indicator is off.
- Chock the tires.

Releasing the parking brake manually: تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۴۴۲۰۱۱۴۲

► With a spare tire

STEP 1 Take out the parking brake release tool and the screwdriver from the trunk. (→P. 699)

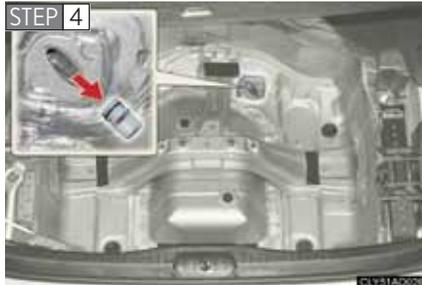
STEP 2



Install the parking brake release tool into the screwdriver handle.

STEP 3 Take out the spare tire. (→P. 700)

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



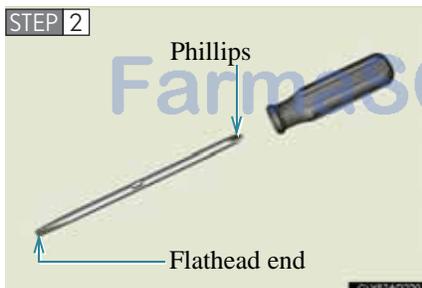
Remove the plug.



Insert the tool and press it down firmly while turning it counter-clockwise until it stops.

► With an emergency tire puncture repair kit

STEP 1 Take out the parking brake release tool and the screwdriver from the trunk. (→P. 709)



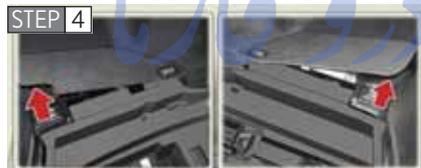
Check that the flathead end of the screwdriver is exposed.

If the Phillips end is exposed, reinsert the screwdriver shaft so the flathead end is exposed.

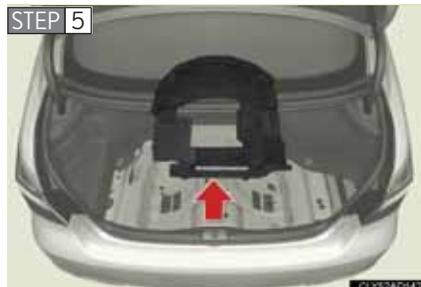
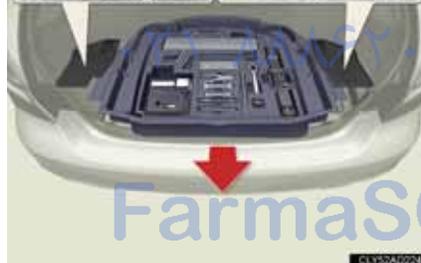


Using the flathead end of the screwdriver, remove the clips.

When installing the clips, refer to page 731.

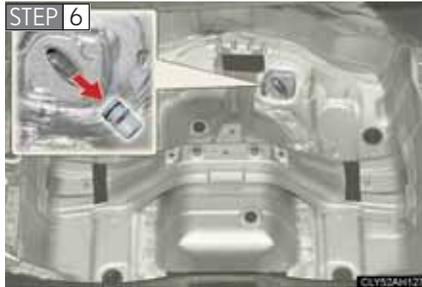


While lifting the inner corners of the right and left side deck boards, pull out the tool tray.

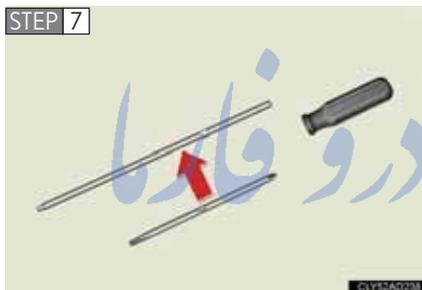


Take out the tool tray guard.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Remove the plug.



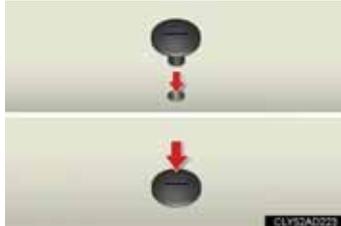
Replace the screwdriver head with the parking brake release tool.



Insert the tool and press it down firmly while turning it counter-clockwise until it stops.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ When installing the tool tray clips



Install the clips as shown in the illustration.

■ After the parking brake has been manually released

The parking brake cannot be set. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When releasing the parking brake manually

- Shift the shift lever to “P”, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and chock the tires.
Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move and cause an accident.
- Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and check that the parking brake indicator is off.
Failure to do so may cause the system to operate and turn the parking brake release tool that is inserted, resulting in an injury.

5

When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→ P. 46) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk and key linked functions

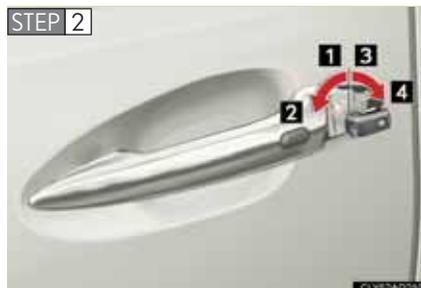
Use the mechanical key built in to the electronic keys to operate the doors. (→ P. 35)

An alarm will sound if the alarm is set when the trunk or doors are unlocked. (→ P. 124)

► Doors



Remove the cover on the driver's door handle.



- 1** Locks all doors
- 2** Closes the windows (turn and hold)
The moon roof will also close.
(if equipped)
- 3** Unlocks all doors

- 4 Opens the windows (turn and hold)

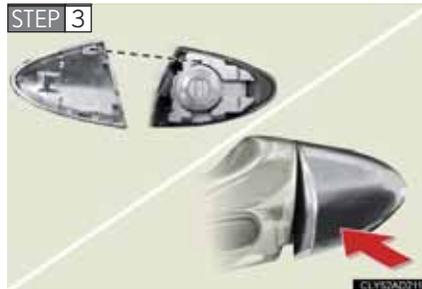
The moon roof will also open.
(if equipped)

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



After the operation is completed, reinstall the cover.

Hook the upper claw of the cover onto the upper catch on the vehicle side, and then push on the lower side of the cover.

Make sure that the lower claw of the cover is securely fastened to the lower catch on the vehicle side. If the cover is not securely attached, it may fall off while driving.

► Trunk



Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes and starting the engine

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to “P” and apply the brakes.



Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

If any of the doors is opened or closed after the key was touched to the switch to start the vehicle, an alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the key.



STEP 3 To change the “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes:
Within 5 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch. Modes can be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 181)

To start the engine: Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch within 10 seconds after the buzzer sounds, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Stopping the engine

Shift the shift lever to “P” and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P. 661)

■ Alarm

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system. If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P. 124)

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.

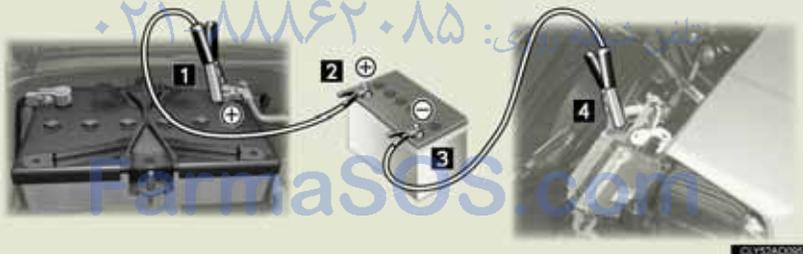
You can call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

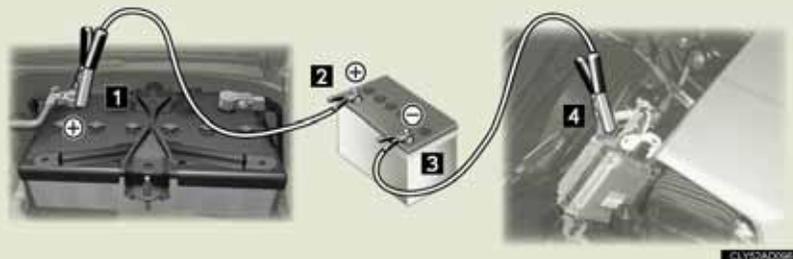
STEP 1 Remove the engine compartment covers and battery cover. (→P. 630, 631)

STEP 2 Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

- 1** Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
 - 2** Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
 - 3** Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
 - 4** Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.
- STEP 3** Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.
- STEP 4** Open and close any of the doors with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.
- STEP 5** Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode, then start the engine.
- STEP 6** Once the engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.
- Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible.

FarmaSOS.com

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is turned off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ Charging the battery

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ If the battery is discharged

The information stored in the computer will be deleted.

If the battery is discharged, have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

CAUTION

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the “+” and “-” terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

 NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or belt when connecting or disconnecting the cables.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle overheats

If your engine overheats:

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from the engine area.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Check if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fans are operating:

Wait until the temperature of the engine (shown on the instrument cluster) begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fans are not operating:

Stop the engine and call any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

STEP 4



After the engine has cooled down, check the engine coolant level and inspect the cooling system for leaks.

If the engine compartment cover needs to be removed:
→P. 630

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

STEP 5



Add engine coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 753)

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

■ Overheating

The following symptoms may occur when your vehicle is overheating:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from the engine area.

5

When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

- To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle
 - If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injury such as burns.
 - Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and other belts while the engine is running.
 - Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot.
Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

NOTICE

- When adding engine coolant

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant. When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

FarmaSOS.com

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow:

- STEP 1** Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and put the shift lever in “P”.
 - STEP 2** Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.
 - STEP 3** Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.
 - STEP 4** Restart the engine.
 - STEP 5** Shift the shift lever to the “D” or “R” position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.
- Turn off TRC/VSC if these functions are hampering your



CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the transmission and other components
 - Avoid spinning the wheels and do not rev the engine.
 - If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۸۶۲۰۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

STEP 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to “N”.

► If the shift lever is shifted to “N”

STEP 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

STEP 4 Stop the engine.

► If the shift lever cannot be shifted to “N”

STEP 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

STEP 4



Stop the engine by pressing and holding the “ENGINE START STOP” switch for 3 consecutive seconds or more.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

5

When trouble arises

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data
(fuel, oil level, etc.)..... 746
Fuel information 760

6-2. Customization

Customizable features..... 762

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weights

► Dimensions

Overall length		5060 mm (199.2 in.)	
Overall width		1875 mm (73.8 in.)	
Overall height* ¹	2WD models	1465 mm (57.7 in.)	
	AWD models	1475 mm (58.1 in.)	
Wheelbase		2970 mm (116.9 in.)	
Tread	Front	2WD models	1615 mm (63.6 in.)* ² 1610 mm (63.4 in.)* ³
		AWD models	1615 mm (63.6 in.)
	Rear	2WD models	1620 mm (63.8 in.)* ² 1615 mm (63.6 in.)* ³
		AWD models	1615 mm (63.6 in.)

► Weights

Gross vehicle mass		2495 kg (5501 lb.)* ⁴ 2640 kg (5820 lb.)* ⁵
Maximum permissible axle capacity	Front	1235 kg (2723 lb.)* ⁴ 1385 kg (3053 lb.)* ⁵
	Rear	1365 kg (3009 lb.)* ⁴ 1385 kg (3053 lb.)* ⁵

*¹:Unladen vehicles

*²:Vehicles with 18-inch tires

*³:Vehicles with 19-inch tires

*⁴:2WD models

*⁵:AWD models

Vehicle identification

■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.



This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and in the engine compartment.

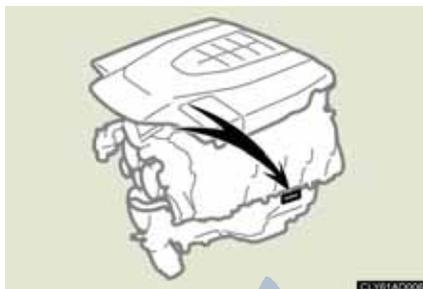


This number is also on the manufacturer's label.

6-1. Specifications

■ Engine number

▶ 2WD models



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

▶ AWD models



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵
FarmaSOS.com

Engine

Model	1UR-FSE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	94.0 × 83.0 mm (3.70 × 3.27 in.)
Displacement	4608 cm ³ (281.2 cu.in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	EU area: Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only Except EU area: Unleaded gasoline only
Research octane number	95 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	84 L (22.2 gal., 18.4 Imp. gal.)

6-1. Specifications

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*) with filter	
2WD models	8.6 L (9.1 qt., 7.6 Imp. qt.)
AWD models	9.0 L (9.5 qt., 7.9 Imp. qt.)
without filter	8.4 L (8.9 qt., 7.4 Imp. qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is used in your Lexus vehicle. Lexus recommends the use of approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil”. Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

Oil grade: FarmaSOS.com تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۸۵-۸۸۶۲۰۸۵-۲۱

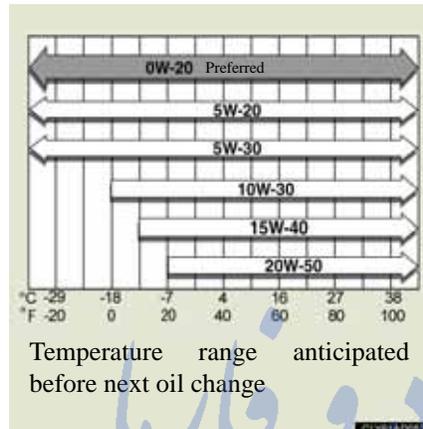
0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:

API grade SL “Energy-Conserving”, SM “Energy-Conserving”, SN “Resource-Conserving” or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

15W-40 and 20W-50:

API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):



SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 or lower viscosity engine oil is recommended.

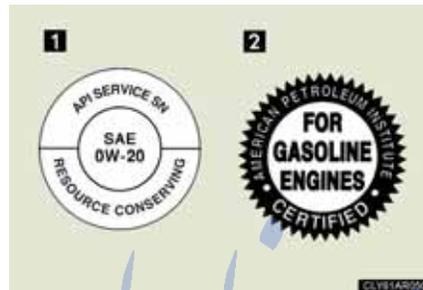
Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

6-1. Specifications

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



1 API Service Symbol

Top portion: The oil quality designation by API (American Petroleum Institute) (SN)

Center portion: The SAE viscosity grade (SAE 0W-20)

Lower portion: “Resource-Conserving” means that the oil has fuel saving and environmental protection.

2 ILSAC Certification Mark

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

FarmaSOS.com

Cooling system

Capacity	2WD models	11.8 L (12.5 qt., 10.4 Imp. qt.)
	AWD models	11.1 L (11.7 qt., 9.8 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.	

Ignition system

Model	1UR-FSE
Spark plug	
Make	DENSO FK20HBR11
Gap	1.1 mm (0.043 in.)

 NOTICE

 Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust spark plug gap.

6-1. Specifications

Electrical system

Battery	
Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.250 — 1.290 Fully charged 1.160 — 1.200 Half charged 1.060 — 1.100 Discharged
Charging rates	5 A max.

Transfer (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.70 L (0.74 qt., 0.62 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Transfer gear oil LL 80 (preferred), Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LX 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with Toyota genuine gear oil at the factory. Use Lexus approved Toyota genuine gear oil or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

FarmaSOS.com

Front differential (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.75 L (0.79 qt., 0.66 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” at the factory. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

Rear differential

▶ 2WD models

Oil capacity	1.35 L (1.42 qt., 1.19 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

▶ AWD models

Oil capacity	1.35 L (1.42 qt., 1.19 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LX 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” at the factory. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

6-1. Specifications

Automatic Transmission

Fluid capacity*	2WD models	10.3 L (10.9 qt., 9.1 Imp. qt.)
	AWD models	10.7 L (11.3 qt., 9.4 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS	

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity. If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

■ Automatic transmission fluid type

Using automatic transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*	95.0 mm (3.7 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	1.0 — 2.0 mm (0.04 — 0.08 in.)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3

*: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 200 N (20 kgf, 50 lbf).

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)
-----------	---------------------------

Tires and wheels

► 18-inch tires

Tire size	235/50R18 97W		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)
	More than 210 km/h (130 mph)	330 (3.3, 48) ^{*1} 300 (3.0, 44) ^{*2}	330 (3.3, 48) ^{*1} 320 (3.2, 46) ^{*2}
	From 160 km/ h (100 mph) to 210 km/h (130 mph)	280 (2.8, 41) ^{*1} 250 (2.5, 36) ^{*2}	280 (2.8, 41) ^{*1} 260 (2.6, 38) ^{*2}
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	250 (2.5, 36) ^{*1} 230 (2.3, 33) ^{*2}	240 (2.4, 35) ^{*1} 230 (2.3, 33) ^{*2}
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2 J		
Wheel nut torque	140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103 ft•lbf)		

*1: For all loads including full rated loads

*2: For reduced loads (1 to 4 passengers only)

6-1. Specifications

► 19-inch tires

Tire size	245/45R19 98Y		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)
	More than 210 km/h (130 mph)	280 (2.8, 41) ^{*1} 260 (2.6, 38) ^{*2}	290 (2.9, 42) ^{*1} 260 (2.6, 38) ^{*2}
	From 160 km/ h (100 mph) to 210 km/h (130 mph)	250 (2.5, 36) ^{*1} 230 (2.3, 33) ^{*2}	260 (2.6, 38) ^{*1} 230 (2.3, 33) ^{*2}
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	240 (2.4, 35) ^{*1} 230 (2.3, 33) ^{*2}	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	19 × 8 J		
Wheel nut torque	140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103 ft•lbf)		

*1: For all loads including full rated loads

*2: For reduced loads (1 to 4 passengers only)

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights		
	High beam	65	A
	Low/high beam	35	B
	Front turn signal lights	21	C
	Front fog lights	51	E
	Trunk lid light	3.8	F
	Trunk light	3.8	D
	Rear turn signal lights	21	D
	Back-up lights	16	D
Interior	Rear fog lights	21	D
	Outer foot lights	5	D
	Vanity lights		
	Front	8	D
	Rear	3	F
	Interior lights		
	Front	8	D
	Rear	8	F
	Rear personal lights (with rear seat entertainment system)	10	G
Door courtesy lights	5	D	

A: H9 halogen bulbs

C: Wedge base bulbs (amber)

E: HB4 halogen bulbs

G: Single end bulbs

B: D4S discharge bulbs

D: Wedge base bulbs (clear)

F: Double end bulbs

6-1. Specifications

Fuel information

EU area:

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228.

For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.

Except EU area:

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ If premium gasoline is not available

If this premium type cannot be obtained, you can use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91.

The use of such gasoline may cause the engine to knock or drastically reduce output to protect itself while driving with a heavy load. To avoid this, refill the tank with premium unleaded gasoline as soon as possible.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

 NOTICE

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
Leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly.
- EU area: Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. The use of these fuels will damage the vehicle's fuel system. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Except EU area: Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. Your vehicle can use gasoline mixed with 10% max ethanol. The use of fuel with more than 10% ethanol content (E10) will damage the vehicle's fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

FarmaSOS.com

6-2. Customization

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by any authorized Lexus dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact any authorized Lexus dealer or

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart entry & start system (→P. 41)	Smart entry & start system	On	Off
	Door unlock function	All the doors	Driver's door
			Each door
			Same side doors
Wireless remote control (→P. 63)	Wireless remote control	On	Off
	Unlocking operation	All doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps
			60 seconds
	Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	120 seconds
			Trunk unlocking operation
One short push			

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P. 41, 63)	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off
	Open door warning buzzer	On	Off
Door lock (→P. 69, 732)	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	On	Off
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors.	Off	On
	Shifting gears to "P" unlocks all doors.	Off	On
	Shifting gears to position other than "P" locks all doors.	Off	On
	Unlocking using a mechanical key	All doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps
Trunk (→P. 75)	Power trunk lid function	On	Off
Power easy access system (→P. 88)	Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle	Full	Off
			Partial
	Steering wheel auto away and return function	On	Off

6-2. Customization

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	
Power windows (→P. 109)	One-touch close operation using the power window switches on the front passenger door and each rear door	On	Off	
	One-touch front passenger window or rear window close operation using the power window switch on the driver's door	On	Off	
	Mechanical key linked operation	Open and close	Off	Off
				Open only
				Close only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	Off	Open only
Close only				
Linked entry function	On	Off	Open and close	

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Moon roof (→P. 113)	Mechanical key linked operation	Open and close	Off
			Open only
			Close only
	Linked operation of components when mechanical key is used	Slide only	Tilt only
			Open only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	Close only
Open and close			
Linked operation of components when wireless remote control is used	Slide only	Tilt only	
		Off	
Turn signal lever (→P. 199)	Times of flashing of the lane change signal flashers	3	Off
			5
			7
			9
			11
Automatic light control system (→P. 215)	Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2
	Automatic high beam system	On	Off

6-2. Customization

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Air conditioning system (→P. 387)	Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to “AUTO” switch operation	Auto	Manual
	A/C Auto switch operation	Auto	Manual
	Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity	Standard	-3 to 3
	Air conditioning control of Eco drive mode	On	Off
Illumination (→P. 569)	Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off
			7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Time elapsed before the exterior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off
			7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for dimming the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for brightening the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Illumination (→P. 569)	Operation after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF	On	Off
	Footwell lighting	On	Off
	Shift lever lighting	On	Off

Multi-information display (→P. 210)

Vehicle	Available languages	
Left-hand drive vehicles	Israel, Turkey and Morocco	American English, French, Ger- man, Spanish and Italian
	Except Israel, Turkey and Morocco	British English, French, German, Spanish and Italian
Right-hand drive vehicles	British English, French, German, Spanish and Italian	

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Index

Abbreviation list.....	770
Alphabetical index.....	772
What to do if... ..	785

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual” for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Audio/video system

تلفن شماره ۲۰۸۵-۸۸۶۲-۲۱

FarmaSOS.com

Abbreviation list
Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
2WD	2 Wheel Drive
A/C	Air Conditioning
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
AFS	Adaptive Front-lighting System
AI-SHIFT	Artificial Intelligence Shift control
AWD	All Wheel Drive
CRS	Child Restraint System
DISP	Display
ECO	Economy/Ecology
ECT	Electronic Controlled Transmission
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
EPS	Electric Power Steering
INFO	Information
IPA	Intelligent Parking Assist
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LKA	Lane-Keeping Assist
PCS	Pre-Crash Safety system
PWR	Power
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TRC	Traction Control
VDIM	Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
VGRS	Variable Gear Ratio Steering
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

Alphabetical index

Alphabetical index

A	A/C	
	Air conditioning filter.....	657
	Front air conditioning system.....	387
	Rear air conditioning system.....	403
	A/V input port	515
	ABS	345
	ACCESSORY mode	180
	Adaptive cruise control with full-speed range.....	246
	Adaptive front-lighting system	216
	AFS	216
	Air conditioning filter	657
	Air conditioning system	
	Air conditioning filter.....	657
	Front air conditioning system.....	387
	Rear air conditioning system.....	403
	Airbags	
	Airbag manual on/off system.....	165
	Airbag operating conditions	139
	Airbag precautions for your child.....	144
	Airbag warning light	688
	Curtain shield airbag operating conditions	141
	Curtain shield airbag precautions	144
	General airbag precautions	144
	Locations of airbags	137
	Modification and disposal of airbags	147
	Proper driving posture	135, 144
	Side airbag operating conditions	141
	Side airbag precautions.....	144
	SRS airbags.....	137
	Alarm.....	124
	Antenna	419
	Anti-lock brake system.....	345
	Armrest.....	598
	Ashtrays.....	588
	Audio input.....	484
	Audio system	
	A/V input port.....	515
	Antenna.....	419
	Audio input.....	484
	Audio visual input	515
	AUX port	484
	CD player/changer*	424
	DVD player*.....	420, 489
	iPod.....	471
	MP3/WMA disc.....	424, 498
	Optimal use.....	482
	Portable music player	484
	Radio.....	415
	Rear seat audio system	485
	Rear seat entertainment system.....	489
	Steering wheel audio switch	489
	USB memory	471
	Audio visual input	515

Automatic air conditioning system	
Air conditioning filter.....657	
Front air conditioning system.....387	
Rear air conditioning system.....403	
Automatic headlight leveling system217	
Automatic high beam218	
Automatic light control system215	
Automatic transmission	
Automatic transmission 184, 190	
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P”726	
“M” mode195	
“S” mode187	
AUX port.....484	
Auxiliary box	
Auxiliary box.....581	
Non smokers box.....578	
	B
	Back-up lights
	Replacing light bulbs 669
	Wattage..... 759
	Battery
	Checking 638
	If the vehicle has a discharged battery..... 737
	Preparing and checking before winter..... 366
	Bluetooth® audio* 457
	Bluetooth® phone* 526
	Brake
	Brake hold..... 204
	Emergency brake signal..... 346
	Parking brake 200
	Brake assist..... 345
	Brake hold 204
	Break-in tips 170

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to “Navigation System Owner’s

C	Care	
	Exterior.....	612
	Interior.....	616
	Seat belts.....	617
	Cargo hooks.....	610
	CD changer*.....	424
	CD player*.....	424
	Chains.....	366
	Child restraint system	
	Baby seats, definition.....	148
	Baby seats, installation.....	157
	Child seats, definition.....	148
	Child seats, installation.....	157
	Installing CRS with ISOFIX	
	rigid anchor.....	161
	Installing CRS with seat belts ...	158
	Installing CRS with top straps.....	161
	Junior seats, definition.....	148
	Junior seats, installation.....	157
	Child safety	
	Airbag precautions.....	144
	Battery precautions.....	640, 740
	Child restraint system.....	148
	Child-protectors.....	70
	Heated steering wheel	
	precautions.....	594
	How your child should wear	
	the seat belt.....	102
	Installing child restraints.....	157
	Moon roof precautions.....	117
	Power window lock switch...	109
	Power window precautions...	112
	Removed electronic key battery	
	precautions.....	663
	Seat belt comfort guide.....	100
	Seat belt precautions.....	103
	Seat heater precautions.....	597
	Trunk precautions.....	78
	Child-protectors.....	70
	Cigarette lighter.....	589
	Cleaning	
	Exterior.....	612
	Interior.....	616
	Seat belts.....	617
	Climate control seat.....	595
	Climate control seat filter.....	657
	Clock.....	585
	Coat hooks.....	607
	Coin holder.....	575
	Condenser.....	638
	Console box.....	577
	Cool box.....	579
	Cooling system	
	Engine overheating.....	742
	Cornering assist sensors.....	265
	Cruise control	
	Adaptive cruise control with	
	full-speed range.....	246
	Cruise control.....	228
	Dynamic radar cruise control ...	232
	Cup holders.....	576
	Curtain shield airbags.....	137
	Customizable features.....	762

<p>D Daytime running light system ...216</p> <p>Defogger</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Rear window.....409</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Side mirror.....409</p> <p>Dimensions.....746</p> <p>Display</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Dynamic radar cruise control 232</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Multi-information display210</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Touch screen.....374</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Trip information211</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Warning message.....696</p> <p>Do-it-yourself maintenance.....622</p> <p>Door courtesy lights</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Door courtesy lights569</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Wattage.....759</p> <p>Door pockets575</p> <p>Doors</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Door lock.....41, 63, 69</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Door windows109</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Double locking system123</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Side mirrors108</p> <p>Driver's seat belt reminder light 691</p> <p>Driving</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Break-in tips170</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Correct posture135</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Procedures168</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Winter driving tips.....366</p> <p>Driving position memory88</p> <p>DVD player*420, 489</p>	<p>E Eco drive mode..... 186, 192</p> <p>Electric power steering..... 345</p> <p>Electronic key</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If the electronic key does not operate properly 732</p> <p>Electronically modulated air suspension 281</p> <p>Emergency brake signal 345</p> <p>Emergency flashers</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Switch 678</p> <p>Emergency tire puncture repair kit 709</p> <p>Emergency, in case of</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If a warning buzzer sounds .. 687</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If a warning light turns on ... 687</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If a warning message is displayed 696</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If the electronic key does not operate properly 732</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If the engine will not start.... 724</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If the parking brake cannot be released..... 727</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P” 726</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If the vehicle has a discharged battery..... 737</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If you have a flat tire ... 699, 709</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If you lose your keys 41</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">If you think something is wrong..... 685</p>
---	--

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to “Navigation System Owner’s

Alphabetical index

If your vehicle becomes stuck 745	F First-aid kit storage belt..... 610
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency747	Floor mat 608
If your vehicle needs to be towed.....679	Fluid
If your vehicle overheats742	Washer..... 642
Engine	Fog lights
Accessory mode.....180	Replacing light bulbs 669
Compartment628	Switch 223
Engine switch180	Wattage..... 759
Hood625	Footwell lighting 569
How to start the engine.....180	Front fog lights
Identification number747	Replacing light bulbs 669
If the engine will not start.....724	Switch 223
Ignition switch180	Wattage..... 759
Overheating742	Front passenger's seat belt
Engine compartment cover.....630	reminder light..... 691
Engine coolant	Front position lights
Capacity753	Switch 215
Checking.....636	Front seats
Preparing and checking before	Adjustment..... 79
winter366	Driving position memory..... 88
Engine coolant temperature	Power easy access system..... 91
gauge203	Seat position memory 88
Engine immobilizer system.....119	Front turn signal lights
Engine oil	Replacing light bulbs 669
Capacity750	Wattage..... 759
Checking.....632	Fuel
Preparing and checking before	Capacity 749
winter366	Fuel gauge..... 203
Engine switch180	Fuel pump shut off system... 686
EPS345	Information 760
	Refueling 116
	Type 749

Fuel door	116	Heaters	
Fuel filler door.....	116	Seat heaters	595
Fuel pump shut off system	686	Side mirror.....	409
Fuses.....	664	Steering wheel	593
G Gauges.....	203	Height control	
Glove box	574	Electronically modulated air	
		suspension	281
		Hill-start assist control.....	345
		Hood	625
H Hands-free system		Hooks	
(for cellular phone)	519	Cargo	610
Hazard lights		Coat.....	607
Switch.....	678	Shopping bag	610
Head restraints		Horn.....	207
Active head restraint.....	80		
Adjustment	96	I Identification	
Pre-crash intelligent		Engine.....	747
head restraint	80	Vehicle.....	747
Headlight cleaner.....	227	Ignition switch.....	180
Headlights		Illuminated entry system	569
Automatic high beam	218	Indicator lights.....	206
Discharge headlight		Inside rear view mirror	106
precautions	678	Intelligent parking assist.....	283
Replacing light bulbs.....	669	Interior lights	
Switch.....	215	Switch	570
Wattage.....	759	Wattage.....	759

Alphabetical index

J	Jack		L	Lane keeping assist.....	274
	Positioning a floor jack.....	626		Lexus parking assist monitor....	283
	Vehicle-equipped jack..	699, 709		Light bulbs	
	Jack handle	699, 709		Replacing	669
				Wattage.....	759
K	Keyless entry	63		Lights	
	Keys			Door courtesy light	569
	Electronic key	34		Emergency flasher switch....	678
	Engine switch	180		Fog light switch	223
	If the electronic key does not			Hazard light switch.....	678
	operate properly	732		Headlights switch	215
	If you lose your keys	41		Interior light switch	570
	Ignition switch	180		Outer foot lights.....	569
	Key number	34		Overhead courtesy light.....	569
	Keyless entry	63		Personal light switch.....	571
	Keys.....	34		Replacing light bulbs	669
	Mechanical key.....	34		Shift lever lighting	569
	Wireless remote control key...63			Turn signal lever.....	199
				Vanity lights	584
				Wattage.....	759
				LKA.....	274

<p>M Maintenance</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do-it-yourself maintenance..622 Maintenance data.....746 Maintenance requirements...619 <p>Meter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Instrument panel light control 205 Meters203 <p>Mirrors</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inside rear view mirror106 Side mirror heater409 Side mirrors108 Vanity mirrors584 <p>Moon roof.....113</p> <p>MP3 disc.....424, 498</p> <p>Multi-information display210</p>	<p>O Odometer..... 203</p> <p>Oil</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engine oil..... 632 <p>Opener</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fuel filler door 116 Hood 625 Trunk 75 <p>Outer foot lights</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Outer foot lights..... 569 Wattage..... 759 <p>Outside rear view mirrors</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjusting and folding 108 Mirror position memory 88 <p>Outside temperature</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> display 210, 587 <p>Overhead console 581</p> <p>Overhead courtesy lights</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Overhead courtesy lights 569 Wattage..... 759 <p>Overheating, Engine..... 742</p>
--	--

FarmaSOS.com

Alphabetical index

P	Paddle shift switches 193, 195	R	Radar cruise control..... 232
	Parking assist sensors265		Radiator 638
	Parking brake200		Radio 415
	PCS.....353, 369		Radio data system..... 417
	Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator.....84		RDS 417
	Penlight700, 710		Rear fog lights Replacing light bulbs 669
	Personal lights Switch571		Switch 223
	Wattage.....759		Wattage..... 759
	Pollen removal mode.....397		Rear seat Adjustment..... 83
	Power easy access system91		Seat position memory 94
	Power outlet591		Rear seat entertainment system 489
	Power windows109		Rear sunshade..... 599
	Pre-crash safety system353, 369		Rear turn signal lights Replacing light bulbs 669
			Wattage..... 759
			Rear window defogger 409
			Replacing Electronic key battery 661
			Fuses 664
			Light bulbs 669
			Tires 699

<p>S Seat belts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjusting the seat belt99 Child restraint system <ul style="list-style-type: none"> installation157 Cleaning and maintaining <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the seat belts617 Emergency locking retractor 101 How to wear your seat belt99 How your child should wear <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the seat belt.....102 Pregnant women, proper seat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> belt use101 Reminder light691 Seat belt pretensioners100 <p>Seat heaters.....595</p> <p>Seat position memory88, 94</p> <p>Seats</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjustment79, 83 Adjustment precautions81, 93 Child seats/child restraint <ul style="list-style-type: none"> system installation.....157 Cleaning.....616 Climate control595 Driver's seat position memory ... <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 88 Front passenger's seat <ul style="list-style-type: none"> position memory88 Head restraint.....96 Pelvic support seat with <ul style="list-style-type: none"> seat vibrator.....84 Power easy access system91 Properly sitting in the seat ...135 Rear seat position memory94 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Seat heaters 595 Seat position memory 88, 94 Service reminder indicators 206 Shift lever <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatic transmission 184, 190 If the shift lever cannot <ul style="list-style-type: none"> be shifted from "P" 726 Shift lever lighting..... 569 Shift lock system 726 Shopping bag hooks 610 Side airbags 137 Side mirror <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjusting and folding 108 Mirror position memory 88 Smart entry & start system <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Entry function 41 Starting the engine 180 Spare tire <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inflation pressure 757 Storage location 699 Spark plug..... 753 Specifications 746 Speedometer 203 Steering wheel <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjustment..... 105 Audio switches 489 Heated steering wheel..... 593 Lock release..... 182 Power easy access system..... 91 Steering wheel position <ul style="list-style-type: none"> memory 88 Storage feature..... 573
--	---

Alphabetical index

Stuck vehicle	
If your vehicle becomes stuck	
745	
Sun visors583	
Sunshades	
Rear599	
Rear door602	
Roof114	
Switch	
Airbag manual on/off switch 165	
Automatic high beam218	
“ECO MODE” switch ..186, 192	
ECT switch186, 192	
Emergency flasher switch.....678	
Engine switch180	
Fog light switch223	
Hazard light switch.....678	
Heated steering wheel switch.....	
593	
Ignition switch180	
IPA pre-support switch.....289	
Light switches.....215	
Paddle shift switches193, 195	
Parking brake switch200	
Power door lock switch69	
Power trunk lid75	
Power window switch109	
Window lock switch109	
Wiper and washer switch.....224	
	T
	Tachometer 203
	Tail lights
	Switch 215
	Theft deterrent system
	Alarm 124
	Double locking system 123
	Engine immobilizer system . 119
	Tire inflation pressure 653
	Tires
	Chains 366
	Checking 643
	Emergency tire puncture
	repair kit 709
	If you have a flat tire.... 699, 709
	Inflation pressure 653
	Replacing 699
	Rotating tires..... 643
	Size 757
	Snow tires 366
	Spare tire..... 699
	Tire pressure warning system
	691
	Tools 699, 709
	Touch screen..... 374
	Towing
	Emergency towing..... 679
	Trailer towing 370
	Traction control 345
	TRC 345
	Trip meter 203

Trunk		W	Warning buzzers	
Closer.....	76		Master warning.....	691
Extending a space.....	605		Open door	691
Opener	75		Seat belt reminder.....	691
Trunk light			Warning lights	
Wattage.....	759		Anti-lock brake system.....	688
Turn signal lights			Brake assist system.....	688
Replacing light bulbs.....	669		Brake system.....	687, 688
Switch	199		Charging system	687
Wattage.....	759		Electric power steering	688
			Electronic engine control	
V	Vanity lights		system.....	688
	Vanity lights	584	Low fuel level.....	691
	Wattage.....	759	Malfunction indicator lamp .	688
	Vanity mirrors	584	Master warning	691
	Variable gear ratio steering	345	Open door	691
	VDIM	345	Pre-crash safety system	688
	Vehicle dynamics integrated		Pretensioners.....	688
	management.....	345	Seat belt reminder.....	691
	Vehicle identification number...747		Slip indicator.....	688
	Vehicle stability control	345	SRS airbags.....	688
	VGRS	345	Tire pressure	691
	VSC	345	Warning messages.....	696

Alphabetical index

Washer	
Checking	642
Preparing and checking	
before winter	366
Switch	224
Washing and waxing	612
Weight	746
Wheels	655
Window lock switch	109
Windows	
Power windows	109
Rear window defogger	409
Washer	224
Windshield wiper de-icer	410
Windshield wipers	224
Wireless remote control key	
Replacing the battery	661
Wireless remote control	63
WMA disc	424, 498

What to do if...
What to do if...

	A tire punctures	P. 699 P. 709	If you have a flat tire
	The engine does not start	P. 724 P. 119 P. 737	If the engine will not start Engine immobilizer system If the battery is discharged
	The shift lever cannot be moved out	P. 726	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"
	The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone	P. 742	If your vehicle overheats
	Steam can be seen coming from under the hood		
	The key is lost	P. 41	If you lose your keys
	The battery runs out	P. 737	If the battery is discharged
	The doors cannot be locked	P. 69	Doors
	The horn begins to sound	P. 124	Alarm
	The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand	P. 745	If the vehicle becomes stuck

What to do if...



A warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 687

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...



■ Warning lights



Brake system warning light

P. 687



Charging system warning light

P. 687



ABS warning light

P. 688



Driver's seat belt reminder light

P. 691



Brake system warning light

P. 688



Front passenger's seat belt reminder light

P. 691



Low fuel level warning light

P. 691



Master warning light

P. 691



SRS warning light

P. 688



Electric power steering system warning light

P. 688



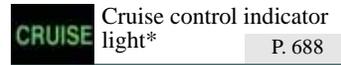
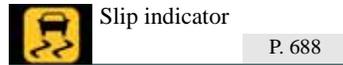
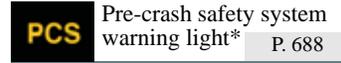
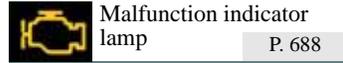
Open door warning light

P. 691



Tire pressure warning light

P. 691



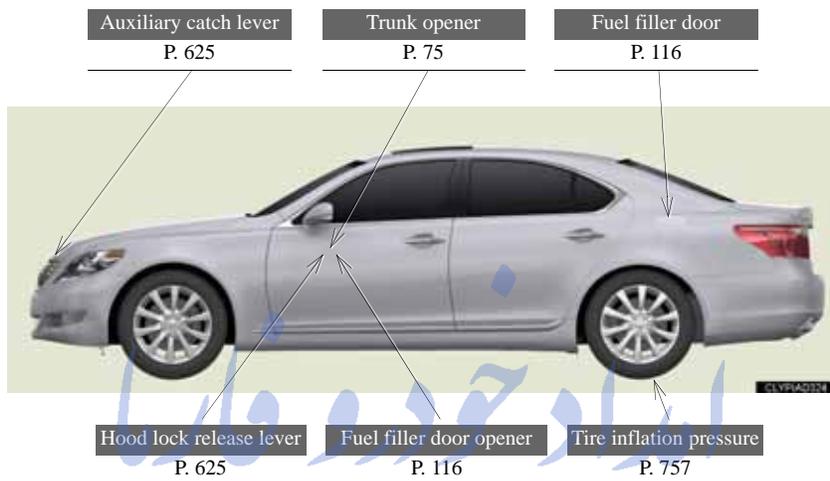
*: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

امداد خودرو فارما

تلفن شبانه روزی: ۰۲۱-۸۸۸۶۲۰۸۵

FarmaSOS.com

GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	84 L (22.2 gal., 18.4 Imp. gal.)	
Fuel type	P. 117, 749	
Cold tire inflation pressure	P. 757	
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)	L (qt., Imp. qt.)	
	With filter	
	2WD models	8.6 (9.1, 7.6)
AWD models	9.0 (9.5, 7.9)	
Without filter	8.4 (8.9, 7.4)	
Engine oil type	Toyota Genuine Motor Oil or equivalent	
	Oil grade:	P. 750
	0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30: API grade SL “Energy-Conserving”, SM “Energy-Conserving”, SN “Resource-Conserving” or ILSAC multigrade engine oil	
	15W-40 and 20W-50: API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil	
	Recommended oil viscosity: SAE-0W-20	